
AL ADWAA
Gem
CONNECT
2025
5
PRIM
SECON
A
E

Table of contents

Unit 7 Homes in Egypt منازل فى مصر

Lesson 1: Vocabulary 7
Practice on Lesson 1 10
Lesson 2: Language Focus 14
Practice on Lesson 2 19
Lesson 3: Ancient Egyptian Homes 21
Practice on Lesson 3 25
Lessons 4 & 5: Writing 27
Practice on Lessons 4 & 5 30
Unit 7 Review 32
Check Your Vocabulary 33
Writing Time 34
Student's Book Corner 35
Test Yourself on Unit 7 36
Al-Azhar Corner 38

Unit 8 At the doctor's فى عيادة الطبيب

Lesson 1: Vocabulary 40
Practice on Lesson 1 43
Lesson 2: Language Focus 48
Practice on Lesson 2 51
Lesson 3: The Power of Honey 53
Practice on Lesson 3 59
Lessons 4 & 5: Writing & Project 61
Practice on Lessons 4 & 5 63
Unit 8 Review 65
Check Your Vocabulary 66
Writing Time 67
Student's Book Corner 68
Test Yourself on Unit 8 69
Al-Azhar Corner 71

Unit 9 My favorite animal حيوانى المفضل

Lesson 1: Vocabulary 73
Practice on Lesson 1 77
Lesson 2: Language Focus 79
Story 81
Practice on Lesson 2 84
Lesson 3: Language Focus 86
Pronunciation 88
Practice on Lesson 3 90
Lessons 4 & 5: Writing & Project 92
Practice on Lessons 4 & 5 96
Unit 9 Review 98
Check Your Vocabulary 99
Writing Time 100
Student's Book Corner 101
Test Yourself on Unit 9 102
Al-Azhar Corner 104
March Revision 105



Unit 10 Let's visit Egypt الاعتناء بعالمنا

Lesson 1: Vocabulary 109
Practice on Lesson 1 113
Lesson 2: Language Focus 118
Practice on Lesson 2 120
Lesson 3: Story 122
Practice on Lesson 3 127
Lessons 4 & 5: Writing & Project 129
Practice on Lessons 4 & 5 133
Unit 10 Review 135
Check Your Vocabulary 136
Writing Time 137
Student's Book Corner 138
Test Yourself on Unit 10 139
Al-Azhar Corner 141

Unit 11 Vacations الإجازات

Lesson 1: Vocabulary 143
Practice on Lesson 1 147
Lesson 2: Language Focus 155
Practice on Lesson 2 157
Lesson 3: Story 159
Practice on Lesson 3 164
Lessons 4 & 5: Writing & Project 166
Practice on Lessons 4 & 5 170
Unit 11 Review 172
Check Your Vocabulary 173
Writing Time 174
Student's Book Corner 175
Test Yourself on Unit 11 176
Al-Azhar Corner 178
April Revision 179

Unit 12 A Fantastic Family Adventure مغامرة عائلية رائعة

Warm-up 183
Vocabulary 184
Story Elements 187
The Beginning 189
The Middle 194
The End 198
Practice on Story 201

Final Revision & Exams

Revision on Units 7 & 8 204
Revision on Units 9 & 10 211
Revision on Units 11 & 12 218
Conjugation of Verbs 224
Final Exams 226
امتحانات الأزهر الشريف 246
امتحانات خاصه بطلاب الدمج 250

Tapescripts 252
Writing Answers 255

منازل فى مصر



Unit Objectives

- **By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:**
- **بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:**

- listen, read, research, and write about Egyptian homes now and in Ancient Egypt.
  - يستمع، يقرأ، يبحث، ويكتب عن المنازل المصرية الآن وفى مصر القديمة.
- talk about the home and furniture.
  - يتحدث عن المنزل والأثاث.
- read, understand, and listen to a short dialog about different homes.
  - يقرأ، يفهم، ويستمع إلى محادثة قصيرة عن منازل مختلفة.
- understand and use the simple past to talk about past events.
  - يفهم ويستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط ليتحدث عن أحداث فى الماضى.
- learn how to say double vowels.
  - يتعلم كيف ينطق أصوات حروف متحركة مزدوجة.
- write a simple blog about an unusual home.
  - يكتب مدونة بسيطة عن منزل غير عادى.
- research and make a presentation about an Ancient Egyptian home.
  - يبحث ويقدم عرضًا تقديميًا عن منزل مصرى قديم.

Did you know?

- In Ancient Egypt, *mud bricks kept the inside of the house cool in hot weather. Small windows and *vents on the roof let air into the house.

Find out!

- There were different types of houses in Ancient Egypt. The "*reed huts" were *constructed from papyrus, reeds, and animals' skin. The "mud brick house" is a simple *structure for poorer people. The "*merchant home" was constructed of mud, but it was larger.

*mud bricks	طوب طينى	* vents	فتحات تهوية	*reed huts	أكواخ القصب
* constructed	تم بناؤها	* structure	بناء	* merchant	تاجر





1. Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:



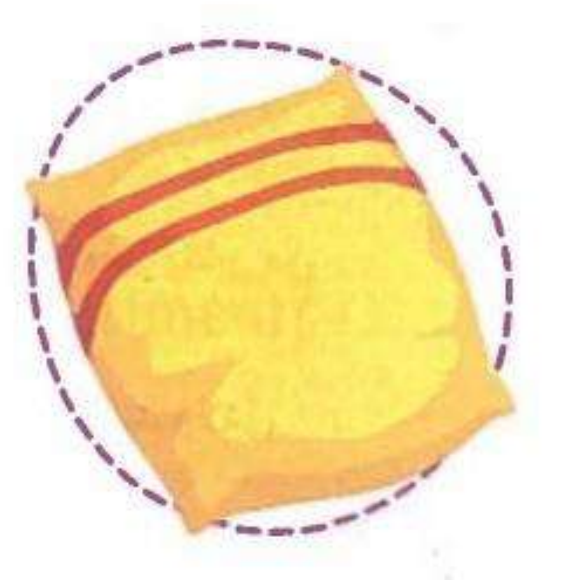
Main vocabulary



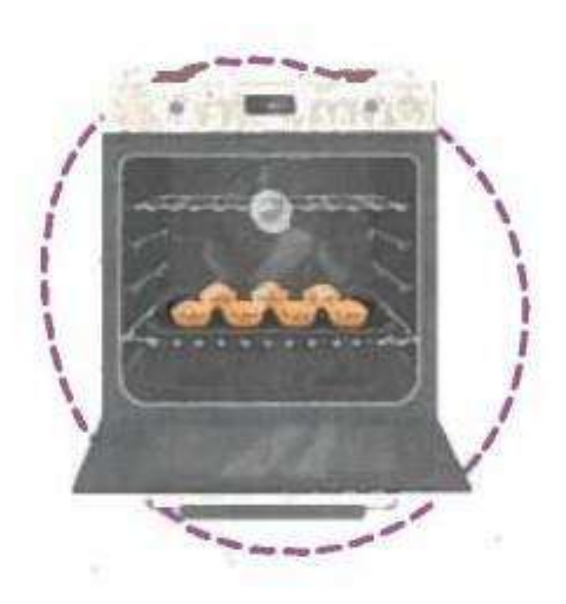
elevator
مصعد



closet
خزانة



cushion
وسادة



oven
فرن



balcony
بلكونة



armchair
كرسى ذو ذراعين



television
تلفاز



shower
دش

Extra vocabulary

home / house	منزل	apartment	شقة	modern (adj.)	حديث
old (adj.)	قديم	bed	سرير	living room	حجرة المعيشة
bedroom	حجرة النوم	kitchen	مطبخ	bathroom	حمام
part	جزء	closer (adj.)	أقرب	better (adj.)	أفضل
easier (adj.)	أسهل	space	مساحة	traditional (adj.)	تقليدى
gift	هدية	lovely (adj.)	لطيف/ جميل	fantastic (adj.)	رائع
view	منظر	own (adj.)	خاص	mind map	خريطة ذهنية

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
live	يعيش	lived	move	ينتقل	moved
share	يشارك	shared	prefer	يفضل	preferred

Irregular verbs أفعـال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
see	يرى	saw	say	يقول	said

Expressions and Phrases

welcome to ...	مرحبًا بك في ...	Come in!	تفضل بالدخول!
much bigger than	أكبر بكثير من	How long ...?	كم المدة ...؟ (للسؤال عن فترة زمنية)
since I was born	منذ ولادتي	have to + (inf.) ...	يضطر إلى ...
What's better about ...?	ما هو الأفضل في ...؟	as you can see	كما ترى
What about ...?	ماذا عن ...؟	What a great view!	يا له من منظر رائع!

Important sentences جمل هامة

* Fareeda moved to a new apartment. انتقلت فريدة إلى شقة جديدة.
* The new kitchen is bigger, and the oven is more modern. المطبخ الجديد أكبر، والفرن أكثر حداثة.
* They have three bedrooms now. لديهم ثلاث غرف نوم الآن.
* Fareeda shares the bedroom with her sister. تشارك فريدة غرفة النوم مع أختها.

Check

Choose the correct answer: **اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:**

1 I share the (living room – bathroom – bedroom – kitchen) with my brother. There are two beds for us.

2 They always take the (oven – elevator – cushion – closet) to their apartment on the 7th floor.

3 I put my clothes in the (oven – living room – closet – kitchen) to keep them clean.

4 There are two colorful (TVs – showers – ovens – cushions) on the couch.

5 We watch television in the (bathroom – kitchen – balcony – living room).

6 There's a/an (oven – shower – closet – armchair) in the bathroom.





2. Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:

Why is Fareeda happy? لماذا فريدة سعيدة؟



Fareeda: Hi Dina, welcome to my new apartment! Come in!

أهلًا دينا، مرحبًا بك فى شقتى الجديدة! تفضلى بالدخول!



Dina: Thanks! Do you like living here?

شكرًا ! هل تحبين العيش هنا؟



Fareeda: I love it! It's a great apartment! I like this part of town and it's much bigger than our old apartment.

أحبها! إنها شقة رائعة! أحب هذا الجزء من المدينة وهى أكبر من شقتنا القديمة.



Dina: How long did you live in your old apartment?

كم المدة التى عِشتِها بشقتك القديمة؟



Fareeda: Twelve years, since I was born. Then my parents had to move to a new job, so we moved to a closer apartment.

اثنا عشر عامًا، منذ ولادتى. ثم كان على والدى الانتقال إلى وظيفة جديدة، ولذلك انتقلنا إلى شقة أقرب.



Dina: So, what's better about this new apartment?

إذًا، ما الأفضل بهذه الشقة الجديدة؟



Fareeda: Come and see. The new kitchen is bigger, and the oven is more modern. My mom says it's much easier to cook in.

تعالَىْ لترى. المطبخ الجديد أكبر، والفرن أكثر حداثة. تقول أمى إن الطهى فيه أسهل بكثير.



Dina: Very nice. And this is the living room?

لطيف جدًا. وهذه هى غرفة المعيشة؟



Fareeda: Yes, as you can see, there's more space so we can have a bigger television. Look at these traditional cushions. They were a gift from Grandma.

نعم، كما ترين، هناك مساحة أكبر ولذلك يمكننا أن نملك تلفازًا أكبر. انظرى إلى هذه الوسادات التقليدية. لقد كانت هدية من جدتى.



Dina: Oh, yes! What about the bedrooms?

أووه، نعم! ماذا عن غرف النوم؟



Fareeda: We have three bedrooms now. I share a room with my sister, Amira, but our bedroom is really big. And we have two bathrooms.

لدينا ثلاث غرف نوم الآن. أنا أتشارك غرفة مع أختى، أميرة، لكن غرفتنا كبيرة حقًا، ولدينا حمامان.



Dina: It's lovely! The balcony is fantastic, too – what a great view!

هذا لطيف! البلكونة رائعة أيضًا - ياله من منظر رائع!

Practice Lesson 1



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Fareeda's .... had a new job.
a) cousins b) parents c) aunts d) uncles

2 They have .... bedrooms now.
a) three b) two c) four d) five

3 There are two ....
a) living rooms b) kitchens c) bathrooms d) televisions

4 Fareeda relaxes and .... in the bedroom.
a) eats b) plays c) runs d) studies

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 There are two beautiful .... in my living room.
a) ovens b) showers c) tents d) cushions

2 This bag is a .... from my aunt. القاهرة - روض الفرج 2024
a) toy b) room c) gift d) closet

3 We can see a great view from our .... القاهرة - روض الفرج 2024
a) oven b) closet c) balcony d) ball

4 I .... a bedroom with my sister. القاهرة - روض الفرج 2024
a) do b) share c) watch d) work

5 There is a big oven in the .... القليوبية - إدارة غرب شبرا الخيمة 2024
a) kitchen b) bathroom c) living room d) bedroom

6 He lives in a big .... in Orabi Street.
a) tent b) boat c) mountain d) apartment

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

القاهرة - إدارة المرج 2024

desk – bedroom – clean – tall

We live in a small apartment. I like my apartment; it's ....(1)............ and tidy. I have a small bedroom. There is one white bed in my ....(2).................. . I have a wooden ....(3).................... to study on. There is a balcony where you can see an amazing view .



Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

الدقهلية - غرب شبرا الخيمة 2024

My name is Gana. I moved to a new apartment last week. I love living here in this new apartment, and it's much bigger than our old apartment. The new kitchen is bigger. The living room is bigger than the old one, so we can have a bigger television.
We have three bedrooms now. I share a big room with my sister Asmaa. I like our new apartment.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about Gana's new ....

a) school b) apartment c) friends d) class

2 The old apartment is .... than our new apartment.

a) smaller b) hotter c) bigger d) colder

B Answer the following questions:

3 When did Gana move to a new apartment?

....

4 How many bedrooms are there in the new apartment?

....

5 Who shares the room with Gana?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملًا:

1 share – room – sister – a – my – I – with.

....

2 more – oven – The – modern – is.

....

3 better – this – What's – about – apartment?

....

4 cushions – gift – a – from – were – These – Grandma.

....

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1 Why is fareeda happy

....

2 Does dina like her new apartment

القاهرة - حدائق القبة 2024

....



Lesson 2

My Perfect Room

غرفتى المثالية





1. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

poster	ملصق	scientist	عالم	howler monkeys	قرود العواء (قرود أمريكية)
local villager	قروى محلى	deep (adj.)	على عمق / عميق	path	ممر

Extra vocabulary

perfect (adj.)	مثالى	desk	مكتب	video games	ألعاب الفيديو
reason	سبب	alone	بمفرده	South America	أمريكا الجنوبية
frightening (adj.)	مخيف	research	بحث	nearby	قريب / مجاور
jungle	الأدغال	heavy rain	مطر غزير	frightened (adj.)	خائف
suddenly	فجأة	indeed	حقًّا	fantastic (adj.)	رائع
sculptures	منحوتات	garbage	قمامة	case	حقيبة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
die	يموت	died	miss	يفوت	missed
smile	يبتسم	smiled	shout	يصيح / يصرخ	shouted

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
sit	يجلس	sat	wear	يرتدى	wore
leave	يترك	left	meet	يقابل	met

Expressions and Phrases

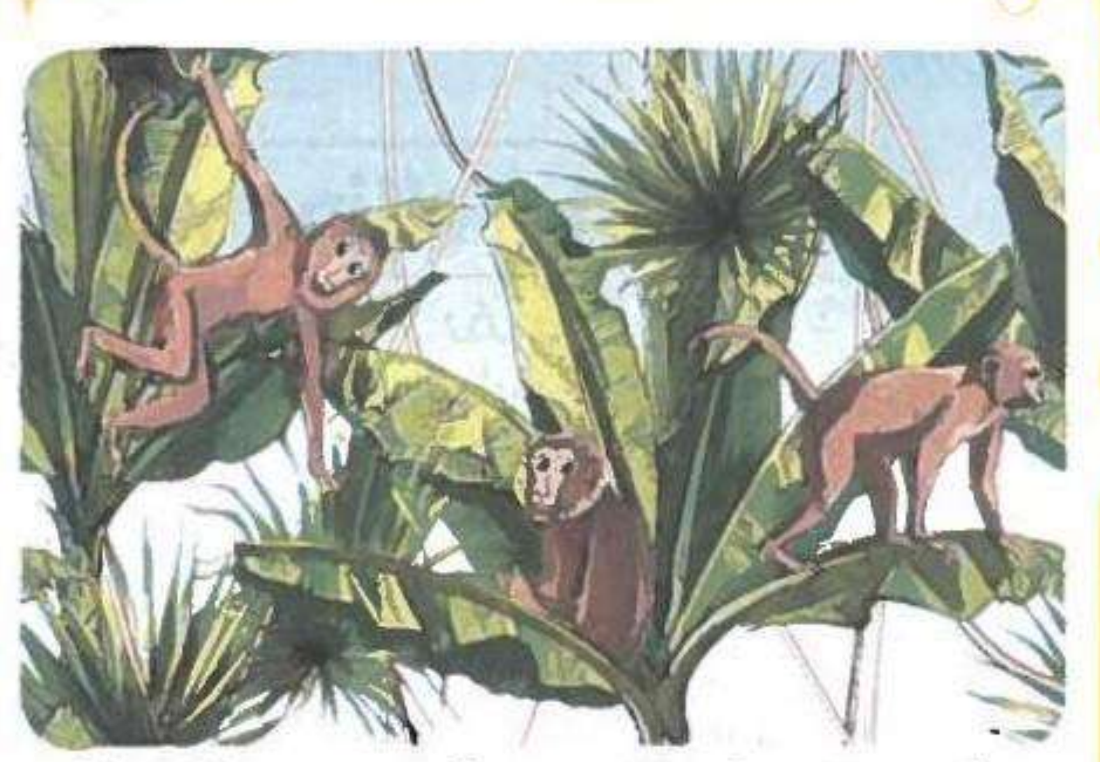
share ... with	يشارك (شيئًا ما) مع	on the right, ...	على اليمين، ...
on the left, ...	على الشمال	in the middle, ...	فى المنتصف
on the wall, ...	على الحائط	look unhappy	يبدو غير سعيد
feel nice	يعطى شعورًا بالراحة	morally right	أمر صائب أخلاقيًّا
go down the street	ينزل إلى الشارع	in the dark	فى الظلام
miss the bus	يفوته الأتوبيس	make friends	يكون صداقات
as a child	عندما كان طفلًا	tell about	يحكى عن
interested in	مهتم بـ	do research into	يقوم ببحث عن
family groups	مجموعات الحيوانات من نفس الفصيلة	set out	ينطلق
look for	يبحث عن	go forward or back	يتقدم للأمام أو للخلف
carry ... away	يحمل ... بعيدًا	all over Egypt	فى جميع أنحاء مصر



2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

My uncle is a scientist and loves animals. When he was younger, he traveled a lot in South America for work. He loved it there because the people were very friendly and helped him with his work. Then, about three years ago, something frightening happened to him and he was lucky he lived to tell me about it!



Howler monkeys in the jungle

عمى عالم ويحب الحيوانات. عندما كان أصغر، سافر كثيرًا فى أمريكا الجنوبية للعمل. لقد أحب المكان هناك لأن الناس كانوا ودودين للغاية وساعدوه فى عمله. ثم، منذ حوالى ثلاث سنوات، شيء ما مخيف حدث له وكان محظوظًا لأنه عاش ليخبرنى به!

He was very interested in howler monkeys and wanted to do some research into their family groups. A local villager told him where there was a howler monkey family nearby and he was very happy. But the villager also said, "Tomorrow, we are going to have a lot of rain so it could be unsafe."

كان عمى مهتمًا جدًّا بالقردة العواء «قردة أمريكية» وأراد القيام بعض الأبحاث على مجموعات عائلاتهم. أخبره قروى محلى بمكان عائلة قرد العواء فى مكان قريب وكان سعيدًا جدًّا. لكن القروى قال أيضًا: «غدًا، سوف تتساقط أمطار غزيرة لذا قد يكون الوضع غير آمن».

My uncle set out to look for the howler monkey family and soon he was deep in the jungle. He could hear the monkeys and he looked up. He knew he was very close to them. Then the rain started. It was very heavy rain. Soon, there was water everywhere and he couldn't see the path to go forward or back. Suddenly, lots of water came toward him and carried him away down to the river. He was very frightened.

Suddenly, he saw a hand and someone was shouting. It was the villager. He took Uncle's hand and said, "Now you are safe!" My uncle was very happy indeed!

انطلق عمى فى البحث عن عائلة قرد العواء وسرعان ما أصبح فى العمق فى الأدغال. كان يسمع القرود ونظر إلى الأعلى. وعلم أنه قريب جدًّا منها. ثم بدأ المطر. كانت أمطارًا غزيرة جدًّا. سرعان ما أصبح الماء فى كل مكان ولم يستطع رؤية الطريق حتى يتقدم للأمام أو للخلف. فجأة، تدفق الكثير من الماء حاملًا إياه للأسفل إلى النهر. كان خائفًا جدًّا. فجأة، رأى يدًا و كان شخص ما يصيح. كان القروى. أخذ يد العم وقال: «الآن أنت بأمان!» كان عمى سعيدًا جدًّا حقًّا!

Check

Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 The uncle is a (doctor – scientist – teacher – vet).

2 My uncle was very interested in (howler monkeys – fruits – local villagers – jungles).

3 The howler monkeys live in the (sea – beach – jungle – desert).

Language Focus



3. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

1. Telling where things are الإخبار عن أماكن الأشياء

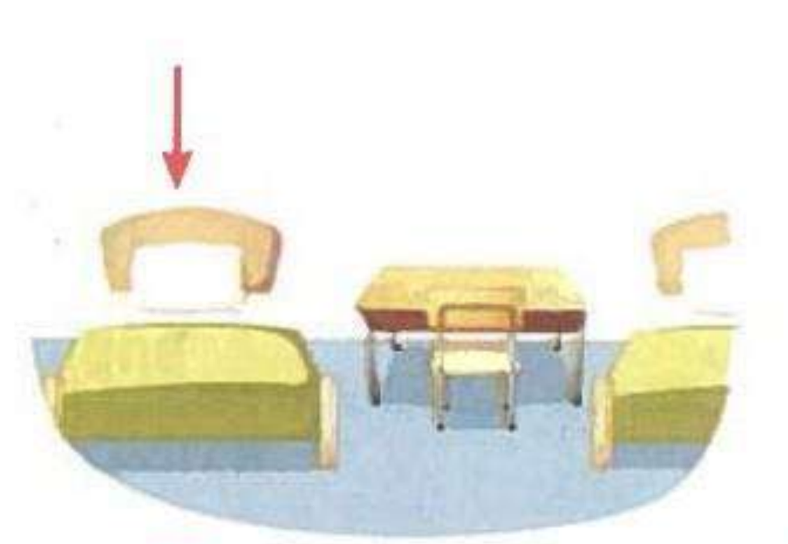
Use these phrases when telling where things are:

استخدم هذه العبارات عند الإخبار بمكان الأشياء:



On the right, ...

على اليمين، ...



On the left, ...

على اليسار، ...



In the middle of the room, ...

في منتصف الحجرة، ...



On the wall, ...

على الحائط، ...

I love my bedroom. I share it with my sister. On the right, there is my bed with a desk next to it. On the left, there is my sister's bed. In the middle of the room, there is an armchair with two cushions and a big closet. On the wall, there are lots of posters of animals.

أنا أحب غرفة نومى. أشارك الغرفة مع أختى. على اليمين، يوجد سريرى بجانبه مكتب. على اليسار، هناك سرير أختى. يوجد فى منتصف الغرفة كرسى بذراعين مع وسادتين وخزانة كبيرة. على الحائط، هناك الكثير من ملصقات الحيوانات.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 On the (right – wall – desk – middle), there is my bed.

2 There is an armchair (in – on – at – by) the middle.

3 There are lots of posters (in – on – at – by) the wall.

4 (In – On – At – By) the left, there's a desk next to the wall.

5 (On – In – At – By) the middle of the room, there is an armchair.



4. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



2. The prefix "un-" البادئة "-un"

Adjective الصفة	Opposite with "un" عكس الصفة بـ "un"	Definition التعريف
friendly ودود	unfriendly غير ودود	not kind to someone غير طيب مع شخص ما
comfortable مريح	uncomfortable غير مريح	something that doesn't feel nice to sit on or wear on your body شيء لا يعطى شعورًا بالراحة عندما تجلس عليه أو ترتديه
lucky محظوظ	unlucky غير محظوظ	something bad happens to you without a reason شيء سيئ يحدث لك بدون سبب
safe آمن	unsafe غير آمن	dangerous خطير
happy سعيد	unhappy غير سعيد	sad حزين
fair عادل	unfair غير عادل	something that happens that isn't morally right or fair شيء يحدث غير صحيح أخلاقيًّا أو عادلًا

Check

Choose the correct answer: **اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:**

1 Omar lost the match last week; he was (unfriendly – unhappy – unfair – unsafe).

2 It's (unhappy – unsafe – unfair – unlucky) that I have to clean my room when my brother doesn't.

3 I don't like sitting on that armchair; it's (unfriendly – unlucky – uncomfortable – unhappy).

4 He doesn't like being with people. He is always (unfair – unfriendly – happy – friendly).

5 It rained on the day of the picnic. That's (lucky – safe – fair – unlucky)!

6 Don't go down the street in the dark alone. It's (unhappy – unsafe – unlucky – unfair). SB

3. The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط

Usage: الاستخدام

Something that happened once: شيء ما حدث لمرة واحدة:

e.g. I visited her house when I was five.

Something that happened several times in the past: شيء ما حدث لعدة مرات فى الماضى:

e.g. We went to my aunt's house at the beach every summer.

Something that was true for some time in the past: شيء ما كان حقيقة لفترة من الزمن فى الماضى:

e.g. He loved living in his grandmother's apartment as a child.

Expressions with "ago": التعبيرات مع "ago":

e.g. I met her in Zagazig two years ago.

Form: التكوين

١. يتكون الفعل فى الماضى بإضافة ied/ ed/ d للفعل وتسمى الأفعال المنتظمة «Regular verbs»:

1. Regular Verbs
أفعال منتظمة

- معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (ed): want → wanted
- الأفعال المنتهية بـ (e) يضاف لها (d): die → died
- الأفعال المنتهية بحرف ساكن + (y) ، يحذف الـ (y) ويضاف إليها الـ (ied). carry → carried
- الأفعال المنتهية بحرف متحرك + حرف ساكن، يضاف لها (ed) مع مضاعفة الحرف الساكن. stop → stopped

٢. بعض الأفعال لا تقبل بالإضافات وتتغير عند استخدامها فى زمن الماضى وتسمى الأفعال الغير منتظمة "Irregular verbs":

2. Irregular Verbs
أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past	Present		Past
come	يأتى	came	eat	يأكل	ate	go	يذهب	went
know	يعرف	knew	meet	يقابل	met	tell	يخبر	told
set	يجهز	set	am/is	يكون (للمفرد)	was	are	يكون (للجمع)	were
do	يفعل	did	have	يملك	had	say	يقول	said
can	يستطيع	could	see	يرى	saw	take	يأخذ	took

Affirmative Form: صيغة الأثبات:

Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثانى للفعل ... .

e.g.
1 He traveled all over Egypt.
2 He ate Om Ali in Tanta.

Negative Form: صيغة النفى:

Subject (الفاعل) + didn't + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ... .

e.g. I didn't know the answer to the teacher's question.

Yes/No Question: السؤال بـ (هل):

Question السؤال

A: Did + subject (الفاعل) + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ... ?

Answer الإجابة

B: Yes,	subject (الفاعل)	did.
B: No,		didn't.

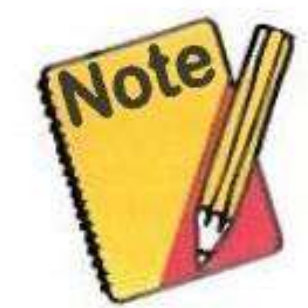
e.g.
1 A: Did you travel all over Egypt?
B: Yes, I did.
2 A: Did you eat Om Ali yesterday?
B: No, I didn't.

Wh- Question: السؤال باستخدام أدوات الاستفهام :

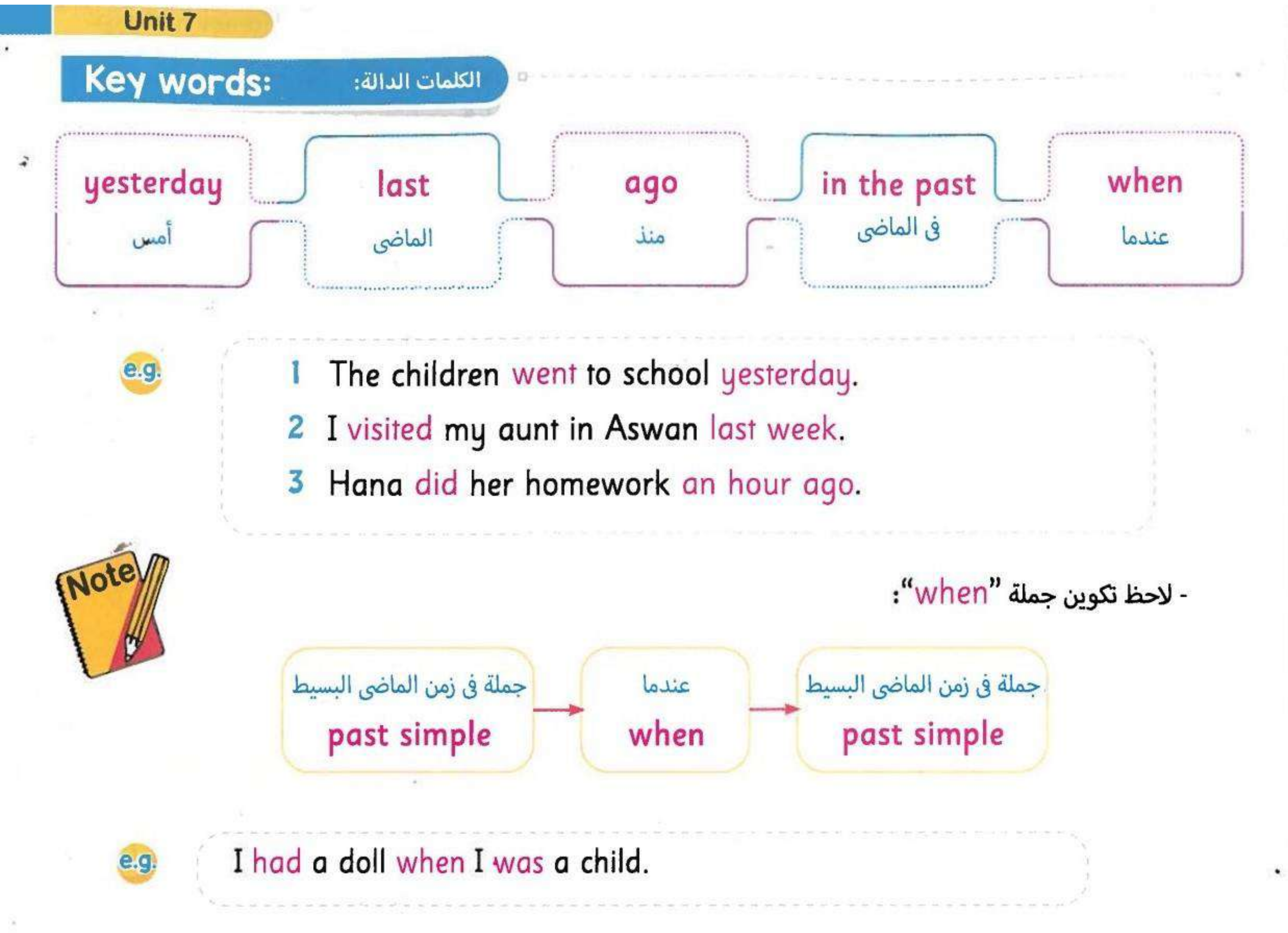
A: Wh-word (كلمة الأستفهام)	did	subject (الفاعل)	(inf.) الفعل فى المصدر...?

B: Subject + التصريف الثانى للفعل ... .

e.g.
A: When did it rain?
B: It rained yesterday.



- عند الإجابة تحول "you" فى السؤال إلى "I" أو "We".



Check

Choose the correct answer: **اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:**

1 I (help – helped – am helping – helping) my mom carry the heavy bags yesterday.

2 Ali (don't – didn't – wasn't – doesn't) travel to America when he was a child.

3 Did you (visit – visited – visiting – visits) your grandma last holiday?

4 I went to Luxor when I (am – is – was – were) 10 years old.

5 (Do – Does – Did – Are) your brother go swimming last week?

6 The students (write – wrote – writes – writing) stories for homework yesterday.

7 We (see – saw – sees – seeing) Ali in town last week.

8 He had an accident two weeks (often – ago – now – last).

9 My mother didn't (went – going – go – goes) to work because she was ill.

10 I (have – has – having – had) a toy car when I was young.



Lesson 2



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 His cat died last week. He was very .... القاهرة - المطرية 2024
a) unfair b) unhappy c) dangerous d) happy

2 My favorite actor is Ahmed Helmy. I have .... for him on the wall.
a) clothes b) posters c) sunglasses d) desks

3 My uncle is a scientist. He likes doing .... into animals.
a) journey b) job c) homework d) research

4 Local .... are very friendly and helpful.
a) villagers b) posters c) jungles d) rains

5 My brother won the match. He's ....
a) safe b) fair c) comfortable d) lucky

6 The electrical wire looks very .... Don't touch it. القليوبية - غرب شبرا الخيمة 2024
a) healthy b) unsafe c) dirty d) nice

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

friends – younger – loved – interested

القاهرة - روض الفرج 2024

My uncle is a scientist and loves animals. When he was ....(1).................., he traveled a lot in South America for work. He ....(2).................. it, because the people were very friendly and helped him with his work. He was very ....(3).................. in howler monkeys and wanted to do some research into their family groups.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

My uncle is a scientist and loves animals. He is very interested in howler monkeys and does research into their family groups. Howler monkeys are the loudest of all monkeys. After one group of howlers calls, another group answers. Each family group is generally made up of 15 to 20 howlers. These monkeys live in Central and South America. Howlers mainly eat leaves, as well as fruits, nuts, and flowers. Howler monkeys get almost all the water they need from the food they eat.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Howler monkeys are the .... of all monkeys.
a) fastest b) tallest c) shortest d) loudest

2 The underlined words "does research" mean ....
a) gets information b) plays c) travels d) helps

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where do howler monkeys live?

....

4 What do howler monkeys eat?

....

5 Where does howler monkeys get water?

....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملًا:

1 didn't – She – school – yesterday – come – to.

....

2 interested – science – very – in – am – I. القاهرة - حدائق القبة 2024

....

3 did – last – What – you – weekend – do?

....

4 poster – a – the – on – There – wall – is.

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة (الكلمات) الموجودة بين قوسين:

1 Dad .... (go) to Aswan last week. القاهرة - إدارة الوايلى 2024
2 The film .... (start) at nine yesterday. القاهرة - روض الفرج 2024
3 I .... (not) travel to London when I was young. الجيزة - إدارة الهرم 2024
4 It .... (rains) heavily yesterday.
5 Be careful! This knife is .... (safe). القليوبية - إدارة الخانكة 2024
6 What .... (do) you study yesterday?
7 .... (On) the middle, there is an armchair.
8 When something isn't morally right or fair, it is .... (fair).
9 She didn't .... (eats) all the cookies. القاهرة - روض الفرج 2024
10 Did you .... (visited) her house? القاهرة - المطرية 2024
11 The spider is moving .... (at) the wall. القاهرة - هليوبليس 2024
12 She was ....(happy) because she didn't find her cat. القاهرة - حدائق القبة 2024
13 He .... (don't) meet his uncle last week. القاهرة - إدارة الساحل 2024
14 Rana didn't .... (cleaned) the floor yesterday. القاهرة - إدارة بدر 2024

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1 He traveled a lot in South america for work ....

2 where did you go yesterday ....



Lesson 3





A Ancient Egyptian Homes المنازل المصرية القديمة



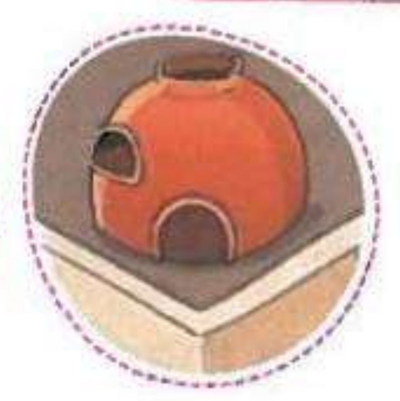
1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary


mud bricks
الطوب الطينى


gate
بوابة


oven
فرن


pot
إناء (حلة)


roof
سطح


sleeping area
منطقة للنوم


reed mat
حصيرة مصنوعة من القصب

Extra vocabulary

Ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	near	بالقرب من	mud	طين
bricks	طوب	strong (adj.)	قوى	cooler (adj.)	أكثر برودة
flat (adj.)	مسطح/مستوٍ	furniture	أثاث	papyrus	ورق البردى
insects	حشرات	outside	بالخارج	large (adj.)	كبير الحجم
wooden boxes	صناديق خشبية	floor	طابق (دور)	the countryside	الريف
bank	ضفة النهر	special (adj.)	متميز / خاص	style	طراز

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
use	يستخدم	used	paint	يدهن	painted
relax	يسترخى (يستريح)	relaxed	cover	يغطى	covered
store	يخزن	stored	join	يلتحق بـ	joined

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
sit	يجلس	sat	keep	يحافظ على	kept
blow	يهب	blew	fall	يسقط	fell

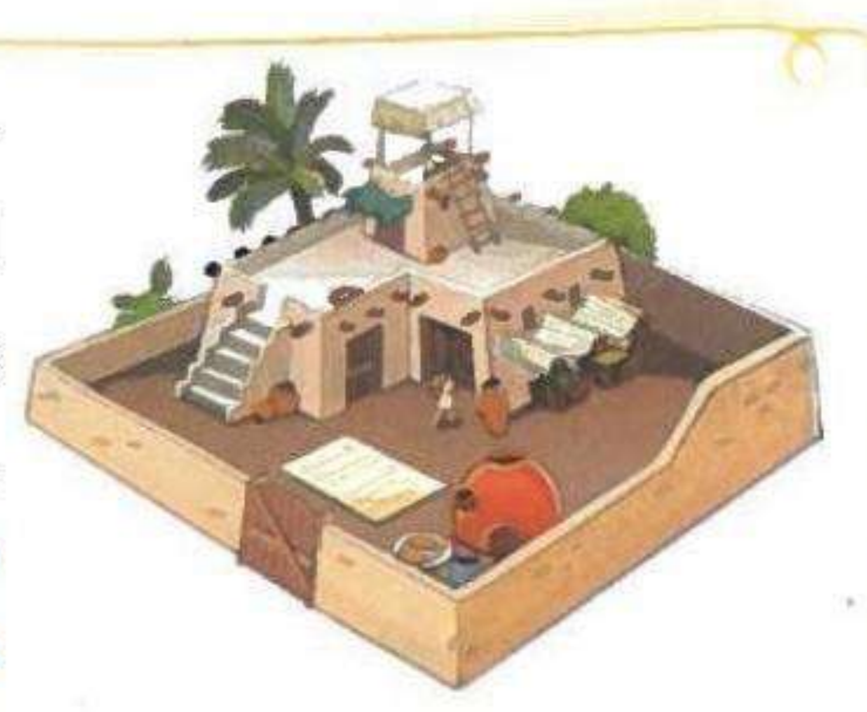
Expressions and Phrases

use ... for	يستخدم (شيئًا ما) من أجل	keep ... cool	يبقى (مكان) باردًا	on hot nights	فى الليالى الحارة
the coolest part of	الجزء الأكثر برودة	close together	قريبون من بعضهم	save space	يوفر مساحة
join together	يندمج معًا	just like	تمامًا مثل	never to fall	غير قابل للسقوط أبدًا
feel all right	يشعر أنه على مايرام	different from	مختلف عن	keep ... outside	يبقى ... فى الخارج



2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the Nile. They used its water for drinking, cooking, and washing. They also used mud from the river to make bricks for their houses. The mud bricks made very strong walls.

فى مصر القديمة، بنى الكثير من الناس منازلهم بالقرب من النيل. فكانوا يستخدمون مياهه للشرب والطبخ والغسيل. كما استخدموا أيضًا الطين من النهر لصنع الطوب لبناء منازلهم. الطوب الطينى يصنع حوائط قوية للغاية.

Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes cool. The mud bricks helped do this. Some people also painted their homes white to make them cooler. Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat roofs, which were the coolest part of the house. Families often cooked, ate, relaxed, and slept there on hot nights.

أراد المصريون القدماء الحفاظ على برودة منازلهم. ساعد الطوب الطينى فى فعل هذا. قام بعض الناس أيضًا بطلاء منازلهم باللون الأبيض لجعلها أكثر برودة. كانت جميع المنازل المصرية القديمة تحتوى على أسطح مستوية، والتى كانت أكثر جزء بارد فى المنزل. غالبًا ما كانت تطبخ العائلات، ويتناولون الطعام، ويسترخون، وينامون هناك فى الليالى الحارة.

The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today. There were reed mats to sit and sleep on. They used papyrus to cover the windows and doors. This kept the insects outside. In every home, there were large pots and baskets for storing crops and wooden boxes for clothes. Not many people had beds or chairs.

كان الأثاث فى المنازل المصرية القديمة مختلفًا تمامًا عن اليوم. كانت هناك حصائر مصنوعة من القصب للجلوس والنوم عليها. استخدموا أوراق البردى لتغطية النوافذ والأبواب. كان هذا يبقى الحشرات فى الخارج. فى كل بيت كانت هناك أوان وسلال كبيرة لتخزين المحاصيل وصناديق خشبية للملابس. لم يكن لدى الكثير من الناس أسرّة أو كراسى.

In cities, people lived very close together, and so they built their houses taller, with two floors. This saved space. So they could build more houses. City houses joined together, just like today. In the countryside, houses usually only had one floor, and they also had a garden. They grew vegetables and kept chickens there.

فى المدن، كان الناس يعيشون قريبين جدًّا من بعضهم، ولذلك قاموا ببناء منازلهم أطول، مكونة من طابقين. هذا يوفر مساحة. ولذلك تمكنوا من بناء منازل أكثر. انضمت منازل المدينة معًا، تمامًا كما هو الحال اليوم. فى الريف، عادة ما تحتوى المنازل على طابق واحد فقط، كما تحتوى أيضًا على حديقة. كانوا يزرعون الخضار ويربون الدجاج بها.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Ancient Egyptians covered the windows with (pots – mats – papyrus – wood).
2. Some people painted their homes (pink – yellow – black – white) to make them cooler.
3. The mud bricks made very (strong – weak – tiny – pale) walls.



3. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

By the banks of the ancient River Nile,
على ضفاف نهر النيل القديم،

Egyptian houses had a special style:
كان للبيوت المصرية أسلوب خاص:

Dark inside with small windows,
مظلمة من الداخل مع النوافذ الصغيرة،

Reed mats on the roof where the cool wind blows,
حصائر القصب على السطح حيث تهب الرياح الباردة،

Outside under the stars at night,
فى الخارج تحت النجوم ليلًا،

One family together, feeling all right.
عائلة واحدة معًا، يشعرون أنهم على ما يرام.

Mud from the Nile made their walls
جعل الطين من النيل جدرانهم

Safe and strong, and never to fall.
آمنة وقوية ولا تسقط أبدًا.



Rhyme is used at the end of lines of poetry. Each two lines rhyme together. They end with the same sound.

القافية: تستخدم فى نهاية سطور الشعر. كل سطرين بينهما قافية، ينتهيان بنفس الصوت.

e.g. night, right



B Pronunciation

1. Double “e” /i:/ and double “o” /u:/



4. Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:



In English, there are words with double vowels, like pool and sheep.

A) When there is a double ‘e’ in a word, the sound is long.

عندما يكون هناك حرف "e" مزدوجً في الكلمة، يكون الصوت طويلًا.

ee /i:/ →	three	keep	cheese	tree	sheep	seed	queen
	ثلاثة	يحافظ على	جبن	شجرة	خروف	بذرة	ملكة

B) When there is a double ‘o’ in a word, the sound is long.

عندما يكون هناك حرف "o" مزدوجً في الكلمة، يكون الصوت طويلًا.

oo /u:/ →	school	tool	spoon	roof	pool
	مدرسة	أداة	ملعقة	سطح	حمام سباحة

2. Saying ‘oo’ in words

When you see “oo” in a word, you can say /u:/, as in pool and spoon. We can also pronounce “oo” as a shorter sound, /ʊ/, as in words like good, or as /ʌ/, as in a word like blood.

عندما ترى "oo" في كلمة، يمكنك قول /u:/، كما في pool and spoon. يمكننا أيضًا نطق "oo" كصوت أقصر، /ʊ/، كما في كلمات مثل good أو /ʌ/ كما في كلمة blood.



/u:/ →	school	smooth	zoo	food	noon	spoon	pool
	مدرسة	ناعم	حديقة حيوان	طعام	مساء	ملعقة	حوض سباحة

/ʊ/ →	book	cook	wood	good	wool
	كتاب	طباخ	خشب	جيد	صوف

/ʌ/ →	flood	blood
	فيضان	دم





Lesson 3



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Salma is doing research about Ancient Egyptian ....
a) homes b) mats c) roofs d) schools

2 Many people made their homes near the ....
a) sea b) Nile c) lake d) pond

3 They used .... from the Nile to make bricks.
a) water b) fish c) mud d) ships

4 Mud bricks made very .... walls.
a) weak b) tall c) short d) strong

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 I cooked meat in the ....
a) brick b) roof c) pot d) mat

2 Ancient Egyptians used .... to make strong walls. الدقهلية - إدارة شرق المنصورة 2024
a) pots b) reed mats c) mud bricks d) boxes

3 In Ancient Egyptian homes, there were .... to sit and sleep on.
a) wooden chairs b) reed mats c) papyrus d) showers

4 The mud bricks helped to keep the homes ....
a) dark b) cool c) hot d) big

5 Ancient Egyptians used .... to write on.
a) pots b) mats c) papyrus d) wood

6 We have a big .... outside our house. We close it at night.
a) roof b) gate c) mat d) brick

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرا وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

papyrus – pots – mats – plastic

القليوبية - إدارة الخانكة 2024

The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today. There were reed ....(1)............ to sit and sleep on. They used ....(2)............ to cover the windows and doors. This kept the insects outside. There were large ....(3)............ and baskets for storing crops. The wooden boxes were used for clothes. Not many people had beds or chairs.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

هر تق لغة 2024

In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the Nile. They used its water for drinking, cooking, and washing. Ancient Egyptian houses had a special style. The houses were made of mud bricks. The walls were very strong. Ancient Egyptians painted their houses white to make them cooler. Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat roofs, which were the coolest part of the house. Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to cover the windows and doors to keep the insects outside.

A Choose t e correc answer from a, b, c, or d:

The general idea of the text is about ....

a) Ancient Egyptian homes b) bricks
c) flat roofs d) papyrus

2 The houses were made of .... bricks.

a) wood b) gold c) metal d) mud

B Answer the following questions:

3 Why did Ancient Egyptians make their homes near the Nile?

....

4 Why did Ancient Egyptians paint their houses white?

....

5 What did Ancient Egyptians use papyrus for?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملًا:

1 near – their – the – homes – Nile – They – made. لقلوبية - د رة غرب سر لخيمه 4 0

....

2 cities, – people – together – In lived – close.

....

3 houses – a special – Egyptian style – Ancient – had. لملوبيه - دارة غرب سبر لخيمة 4 0

....

4 did – people – build – What use – to – their homes?

....

6 Punctuate the following: علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1 where did people build their homes in ancient Egypt?

....

2 Ancient egyptians wanted to keep their homes cool

....





Lessons 4 & 5



Writing



1. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:



Main vocabulary

blog	مدونة	farmhouse	بيت ريفى	landscape	منظر طبيعى	ecological (adj.)	بيئى

Extra vocabulary

blog home	صفحة المدونة الرئيسية	links	روابط	archive	سجل
unusual (adj.)	غير عادى	topic	موضوع	interesting (adj.)	مثير / شيق
architect	مهندس معمارى	brilliant (adj.)	رائع	awesome (adj.)	مذهل
the Netherlands	هولندا	online	عبر الإنترنت	upside down	رأسًا على عقب
actually	بالفعل	modern (adj.)	حديث	light	ضوء
local (adj.)	محلى	fields	حقول	air	هواء

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـــة

Present		Past	Present		Past
change	يغير	changed	fit	يلائم	fitted
heat	يسخن	heated	use	يستخدم	used

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
write	يكتب	wrote	take	يأخذ	took
find	يجد	found	get	يحصل على	got

Expressions and Phrases

works very well	تعمل بشكل جيد للغاية	at the top	فى القمة
fits in very well with ...	يتلاءم جيدًا مع ...	make energy	ينتج الطاقة
ecologically friendly	صديقة للبيئة	That's so cool!	هذا رائع جدًّا!!
What do you think of ...?	ما رأيك فى ..؟	related to	مرتبط بـ

Definitions

blogging	التدوين	to write about something in an online blog أن تكتب عن شىء ما فى مدونة عبر الإنترنت
ecological	بيئى	related to living things and their environments تتعلق بالكائنات الحية وبيئاتها



2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Dalida BLOG HOME ABOUT ME LINKS ARCHIVE 

Wednesday, 8th November

Unusual homes ●منازل غير عادية

Hi! My name's Dalida and I like blogging about different things. This week I'm writing about unusual homes. This topic is very interesting for me because my mom's an architect, so she sometimes takes me to see some brilliant places. It's really awesome!

أهلًا! اسمى داليدا وأنا أحب التدوين عن أشياء مختلفة.
أكتب هذا الأسبوع عن منازل غير عادية. هذا الموضوع ممتع للغاية بالنسبة لى لأن أمى مهندسة معمارية،
لذلك تأخذنى أحيانًا لرؤية بعض الأماكن الرائعة. إنه رائع حقًا!



Upside down house in the Netherlands

I found this unusual house in the Netherlands online – it's upside down! It is actually an old farmhouse which people are changing to make it modern. This works very well because all the windows are at the top, so you get a lot of light. Local people like it because it fits in very well with the local landscape, which is farms and fields. It is also very ecological because they use air, water, and sun to heat and make energy for the house. That's so cool! 🙂

What do you think of it? Do you like it?

لقد وجدت هذا المنزل غير العادى فى هولندا عبر الإنترنت - وكانت قمته للأسفل! إنه فى الواقع منزل ريفى قديم يغيره الناس لجعله حديثًا. يعمل المنزل بشكل جيد للغاية لأن جميع النوافذ فى الأعلى، وبالتالى تحصل على الكثير من الضوء. يحبه السكان المحليون لأنه يتلاءم جيدًا مع المناظر الطبيعية المحلية، وهى المزارع والحقول. كما أنه صديق للبيئة لأنه يستخدم الهواء والماء والشمس للتدفئة وتوليد الطاقة للمنزل. هذا رائع جدًّا!
ما رأيك فى ذلك؟ هل يعجبك ذلك؟

Important sentences جمل هامة

* There is an unusual home in the Netherlands. هناك بيت غير عادى فى هولندا.
* It's upside down. إنه مقلوب رأسًا على عقب.
* All the windows are at the top, so you get a lot of light. كل المنافذ فى هذا المنزل فى الأعلى، لذلك يمكنك الحصول على الكثير من الإضاءة.
* It fits in very well with the local landscape. إنه يتلاءم جيدًا مع المناظر الطبيعية المحلية.
* The house is also ecological. المنزل صديق للبيئة أيضًا.



3. Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ :

Steps of writing a blog خطوات كتابة المدونة

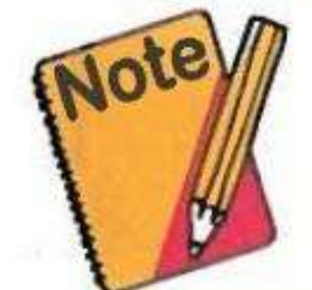
A Write about something you like and enjoy.
اكتب عن شىء تحبه وتستمتع به

B Write to your readers as if you are speaking to them. Use contractions (I'm, it's) and words like "awesome" and "cool".
اكتب لقرائك كما لو أنك تتحدث إليهم. استخدم الاختصارات مثل «it's / I'm» وكلمات مثل «رائع ولطيف».

C Use exclamation points (!) and emojis:  .
استخدم علامات التعجب (!) الرموز التعبيرية.

D Give your opinion and invite your readers to give theirs.
أبدِ رأيك ودعْ قراءك يبدون آراءهم.

E Check that your spelling is correct.
تأكد من أن هجاءك صحيح.



Using adjectives in a blog makes it interesting.
استخدام الصفات فى المدونة يجعلها ممتعة أكثر.

Positive adjectives صفات إيجابية		Negative adjectives صفات سلبية	
funny	مضحك	awful	قبيح
awesome	مذهل	annoying	مزعج
brilliant	ذكى / رائع	boring	ممل
cool	رائع	frightening	مخيف
friendly	ودود	unfriendly	غير ودود
interesting	ممتع	uncomfortable	غير مريح

e.g. **Write a blog of THIRTY (30) words about "Ancient Egyptian homes":**

Dalida BLOG HOME ABOUT ME LINKS ARCHIVE

اسم كاتب المدونة

Monday, 7th July

تاريخ كتابة المدونة

Ancient Egyptian homes

موضوع المدونة

The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today. There were reed mats to sit and sleep on. Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to cover the windows and doors. In every home, there were large pots and baskets for storing crops and wooden boxes for clothes. That's so cool!

What do you think of it? Do you like it?

خاتمة المدونة

Practice Lessons 4 & 5



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 "..................................." means to write about something in an online blog.

a) Ecological b) Blogging c) Unusual d) Farmhouse

2 I found a/an .... house in the Netherlands - it's upside down!

a) annoying b) boring c) unusual d) usual

3 This week, I'm .... about unusual homes in my blog.

a) traveling b) writing c) sleeping d) finding

4 My father is a famous .... He designs buildings. القليوبية - إدارة القناطر 2024

a) nurse b) architect c) teacher d) doctor

5 My aunt lives in a/an .... where she raises animals and grows crops.

a) apartment b) farmhouse c) tent d) boat

6 We see mountains, trees, and rivers in the ....

a) blog b) landscape c) farmhouse d) air

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

farmhouse – ecological – upside down – usual

I like blogging about unusual homes. The ....(1).................. house is in the Netherlands. It is actually an old ....(2)............ which people are changing to make it modern. All the windows are at the top, so you get a lot of light. It is also very ....(3)............ because they use air, water, and sun to heat and make energy for the house.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

القاهرة - إدارة الساحل 2024

I'm Nada. I'm interested in unusual things around the world. One day, I found an unusual house in the Netherlands online - it's upside down! It is an old farmhouse which people are changing to make it modern. This works well because all the windows are at the top, so the house gets a lot of light. Local people like it because it fits in very well with the local landscape. It is also very ecological because they use air, water, and sun to heat and make energy for the house.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about " .... " .
a) a landscape b) search online
c) an unusual house d) the Netherlands

2 The underlined word "modern" means ....
a) old b) new c) usual d) awful

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where is the unusual house? ....

4 Why do local people like the unusual house? ....

5 Why is the unusual house ecological? ....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملًا:

1 mom – architect – My – an – is.

....

2 you – What – do – it – of – think?

....

3 blogging – I – different – things – about – like.

....

4 is – upside down – the Netherlands – in – The – house.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم الآتى:

1 this topic is very interesting for me ....

2 They use air water, and sun ....

6 Write a blog of about THIRTY (30) words about "An unusual home" using the following guiding elements:

الإسكندرية - إدارة شرق 2024

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب صفحة 255

"Where is it? – Why is it unusual?"

.... BLOG HOME ABOUT ME LINKS ARCHIVE

....

....

....

....

....



REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التى وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

elevator	مصعد	closet	خزانة
cushion	وسادة	oven	فرن
balcony	بلكونة	armchair	كرسى ذو ذراعين
television	تلفاز	shower	دش
bedroom	حجرة النوم	living room	حجرة المعيشة
kitchen	مطبخ	bathroom	حمام
apartment	شقة	gift	هدية

Lesson (2)

poster	ملصق	scientist	عالم
howler monkeys	قرود العواء (قرود أمريكية)	local villager	قروى محلى
deep	على عمق / عميق	path	ممر
jungle	أدغال	research	بحث
unfriendly	غير ودود	uncomfortable	غير مريح
unlucky	غير محظوظ	unsafe	غير آمن
sculptures	منحوتات	garbage	قمامة

Lesson (3)

mud bricks	الطوب الطينى	gate	بوابة
pot	إناء (حلة)	roof	سطح
sleeping area	منطقة للنوم	reed mat	حصيرة مصنوعة من القصب
flat	مسطح / مستو	furniture	أثاث
papyrus	ورق البردى	wooden boxes	صناديق خشبية
floor	طابق (دور)	style	طراز
spoon	ملعقة	wool	صوف

Lessons (4 & 5)

blog	مدونة	farmhouse	بيت ريفى
landscape	منظر طبيعى	ecological	بيئى
topic	موضوع	architect	مهندس معمارى
brilliant	رائع	interesting	مثير / شيق
awesome	مذهل	online	عبر الإنترنت
the Netherlands	هولندا	upside down	رأسًا على عقب
local	محلى	fields	حقول

Language Focus

The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات:

Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثانى للفعل ... .

e.g.
1. He traveled all over Egypt.
2. He ate Om Ali in Tanta.

Negative Form: صيغة النفى:

Subject (الفاعل) + didn't + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ... .

e.g. I didn't know the answer to the teacher's question.

Yes/No Question: السؤال بـ (هل):

Question السؤال: A: Did + subject (الفاعل) + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ... ?

Answer الإجابة: B: Yes, / B: No, | subject (الفاعل) | did. / didn't.

e.g.
1. A: Did you travel all over Egypt?
   B: Yes, I did.
2. A: Did you eat Om Ali yesterday?
   B: No, I didn't.

Wh- Question: السؤال باستخدام أدوات الاستفهام:

A: Wh-word (كلمة الاستفهام) | did | subject (الفاعل) | (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ...?

B: Subject + التصريف الثانى للفعل ... .

e.g.
A: When did it rain?
B: It rained yesterday.

Key words: الكلمات الدالة:

yesterday أمس – last الماضى – ago منذ – in the past فى الماضى – when عندما

e.g.
1. The children went to school yesterday.
2. I visited my aunt in Aswan last week.
3. Hana did her homework an hour ago.

Note

- لاحظ تكوين جملة "when":

جملة فى زمن الماضى البسيط past simple → عندما when → جملة فى زمن الماضى البسيط past simple

e.g. I had a doll when I was a child.



CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

مصعد	....	خزانة	....
وسادة	....	فرن	....
بلكونة	....	كرسى ذو ذراعين	....
تلفاز	....	دش	....
سرير	....	حجرة النوم	....
حجرة المعيشة	....	مطبخ	....
حمام	....	منظر	....
هدية	....	شقة	....

Lesson 2

ملصق	....	مثالى	....
عالم	....	مكتب	....
قردة العواء	....	أمريكا الجنوبية	....
ممر	....	خائف	....
عميق / على عمق	....	مخيف	....
قروى محلى	....	بمفرده	....

Lesson 3

الطوب الطينى	....	بوابة	....
سطح	....	إناء	....
منطقة للنوم	....	حصيرة مصنوعة من القصب	....
بذرة	....	ورق البردى	....
ملعقة	....	صناديق خشبية	....

Lessons 4 & 5

مدونة	....	حقول	....
بيت ريفى	....	عبر الإنترنت	....
بيئى	....	مهندس معمارى	....
منظر طبيعى	....	حديث	....
غير عادى	....	هولندا	....
رأسًا على عقب	....	محلى	....

WRITING TIME





لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about your new apartment:

- I moved into a new (اسم المكان) ... .
- It is (صفة للمكان) ... .
- We have/ There are (عدد الغرف) ... .
- My favorite room is (اسم الحجرة المفضلة) ... .
- There is (اسم شيء موجود بالحجرة المفضلة) ... .
- I also like (اسم حجرة أخرى مفضلة) ... .
- I (ما تقوم به فى المكان) ... .

"My new apartment"

I moved into a new apartment with my family. It is very big. We have three bedrooms now. There are two bathrooms and a fantastic balcony. My favorite room is the living room. There is a big television in the living room. I also like my bedroom. I relax and study in it.

How to write a description of your favorite room:

- I love (اسم الغرفة) ... .
- On the right, (محتويات الغرفة) ... .
- On the left, (محتويات الغرفة) ... .
- In the middle of the room, (الأثاث الموجود بالغرفة فى هذا المكان) ... .
- On the wall, (أسماء الأشياء المعلقة على الحائط) ... .

"My bedroom"

I love my bedroom. On the right, there is my bed with a desk next to it. On the left, there is my sister's bed. In the middle of the room, there is an armchair with two cushions and a big closet. On the wall, there are lots of posters of animals.

How to write a blog about unusual homes:

- I like blogging about (موضوع المدونة) ... .
- This week, I'm writing about (اسم الموضوع).
- It's (المميز فى المنزل) ... .
- It is (تاريخ المنزل) ... .
- This works very well because (سبب إعجاب الناس بالمنزل) ... .

Dalida | BLOG HOME ABOUT ME LINKS ARCHIVE



Unusual homes
I like blogging about different things.
This week, I'm writing about unusual homes. I found this unusual home in the Netherlands online – it's upside down! It is actually an old farmhouse which people are changing to make it modern. This works very well because all the windows are at the top, so you get a lot of light. What do you think of it? Do you like it?



STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

يتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التى وردت بكتاب الوزارة.

1 Complete the sentences with the words in the box:

unfriendly – uncomfortable – unlucky – unsafe – unhappy – unfair

1 His cat died last week. He was very ....

2 I never sit in that green armchair – it's very ....

3 Don't go down the street in the dark alone – it's very ....

4 That's very .... – you ate everything and didn't leave any for us!

5 He's very .... because he missed the bus.

6 She's very .... – she never smiles or tries to make friends.

2 Complete the sentences with the verbs in brackets in the past simple:

1 When we went to Sharm El-Sheikh on holiday, we .... (meet) some new friends.

2 She .... (create) a fantastic sculpture from the garbage.

3 We .... (carry) our heavy cases to the car.

4 His grandma .... (go) to Aswan last year.

5 Yesterday, my cousin .... (come) to visit us.

3 Make the sentences negative:

1 He traveled all over Egypt.

....

2 He ate Om Ali in Tanta.

....

3 It rained yesterday.

....

4 They came here by airplane.

....





Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 4

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes ....

a) hot b) light c) cool d) dark

2 Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat ....

a) rooms b) gates c) roofs d) walls

3 The roofs were the .... part of the house.

a) hottest b) coolest c) smallest d) biggest

4 Families often cooked, relaxed, and .... there on hot nights.

a) studied b) read c) played d) slept

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 1.5

1 If something bad happens to you without a reason, you are ....

a) unfair b) unhappy c) unlucky d) unsafe

2 The .... bricks made the Egyptian homes strong and cool.

a) wool b) mud c) wood d) papyrus

3 There is a comfortable .... on the armchair. القليوبية - إدارة الخانكة 2024

a) cushion b) bed c) shower d) television

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة: 1.5



mats – mud – walls – white

إدارة القاهرة الجديدة 2024

Ancient Egyptians used the Nile's water for drinking, cooking, and washing. They also used ....(1)........... from the river to make bricks for their houses. The mud bricks made very strong ....(2)........... . Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes cool so some people painted their homes ....(3)........... to make them cooler. Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat roofs, which were the coolest part of the house.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 7

My name is Reem and I live with my family in a nice apartment. It is big and tidy. We have many rooms. The kitchen is big and always clean. My bedroom is lovely. We have three bedrooms and I share a room with my sister. We have two bathrooms in our apartment. The balcony is really fantastic. There are four chairs in it. We can see a great view of the street. My parents sit on the balcony at night to drink coffee.

A **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1 The general idea of the text is about "..........................".

a) Reem's school
b) Reem's apartment
c) Reem's friend
d) Reem's books

2 The underlined word "parents" means ....

a) brother and sister
b) father and mother
c) uncle and aunt
d) grandpa and grandma

B **Answer the following questions:**

3 Where does Reem live? ....

4 How many chairs are there in the balcony? ....

5 Why do Reem's parents sit on the balcony? ....

Writing

5 **Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:** ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملًا: **1**

1 kept – grew – They – and – chickens – vegetables.

....

2 visited – was – when – five – I – her – I – house.

....

6 **Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:** **4**

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

1 It's .... (safe) to share your password with your friends.

2 I .... (not) visit my uncle last week.

7 **Punctuate the following:** ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى: **4**

1 what's better about this new apartment ....

2 what about the bedrooms ....

8 **Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:** **7**

اكتب نصًا من (٣٠) كلمة مستخدمًا العناصر الآتية:

"My new apartment"

الإسكندرية – إدارة المنتزه ثان 2024

مجاب عنه صفحة 255

three bedrooms – big balcony

....

....

....

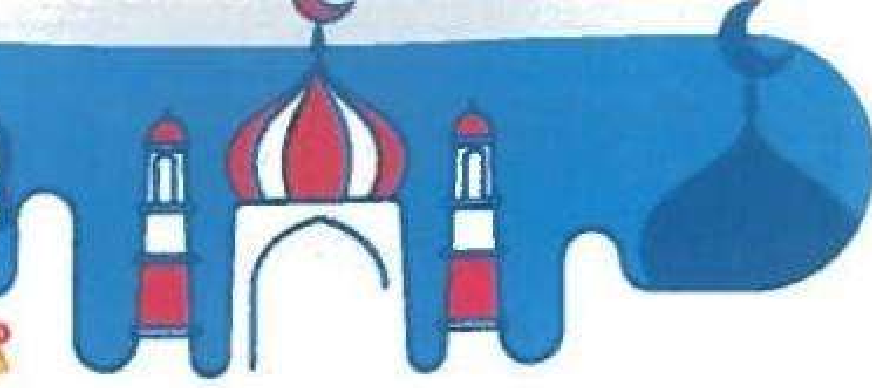
....



Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!





AL-AZHAR CORNER

تحتوى هذه الصفحة على أسئلة خاصة بمواصفات الأزهر.

1 Read and complete the dialogue: اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

born – great – living – old

Rana : Do you like .... here?

Salma : I love it! It's a .... apartment!

Rana : How long did you live in your .... apartment?

Salma : Twelve years, since I was ....

2 Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 Did you (visit – visited – visiting) your grandma last holiday?

2 Dalida likes (drawing – painting – blogging). She likes writing about different things.

3 A: When did it rain? B: It (rains – rained – rain) yesterday.

4 The bed was very (comfortable – unfriendly – uncomfortable). I didn't sleep very well.

5 After school, I have a long shower in the (living room – bathroom – bedroom).

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة:

1 to – new – Welcome – my – apartment.

....

2 lots of – animals – of – There – posters – are.

....

3 scientist – uncle – a – My – is.

....

4 did – you – yesterday – What – do?

....

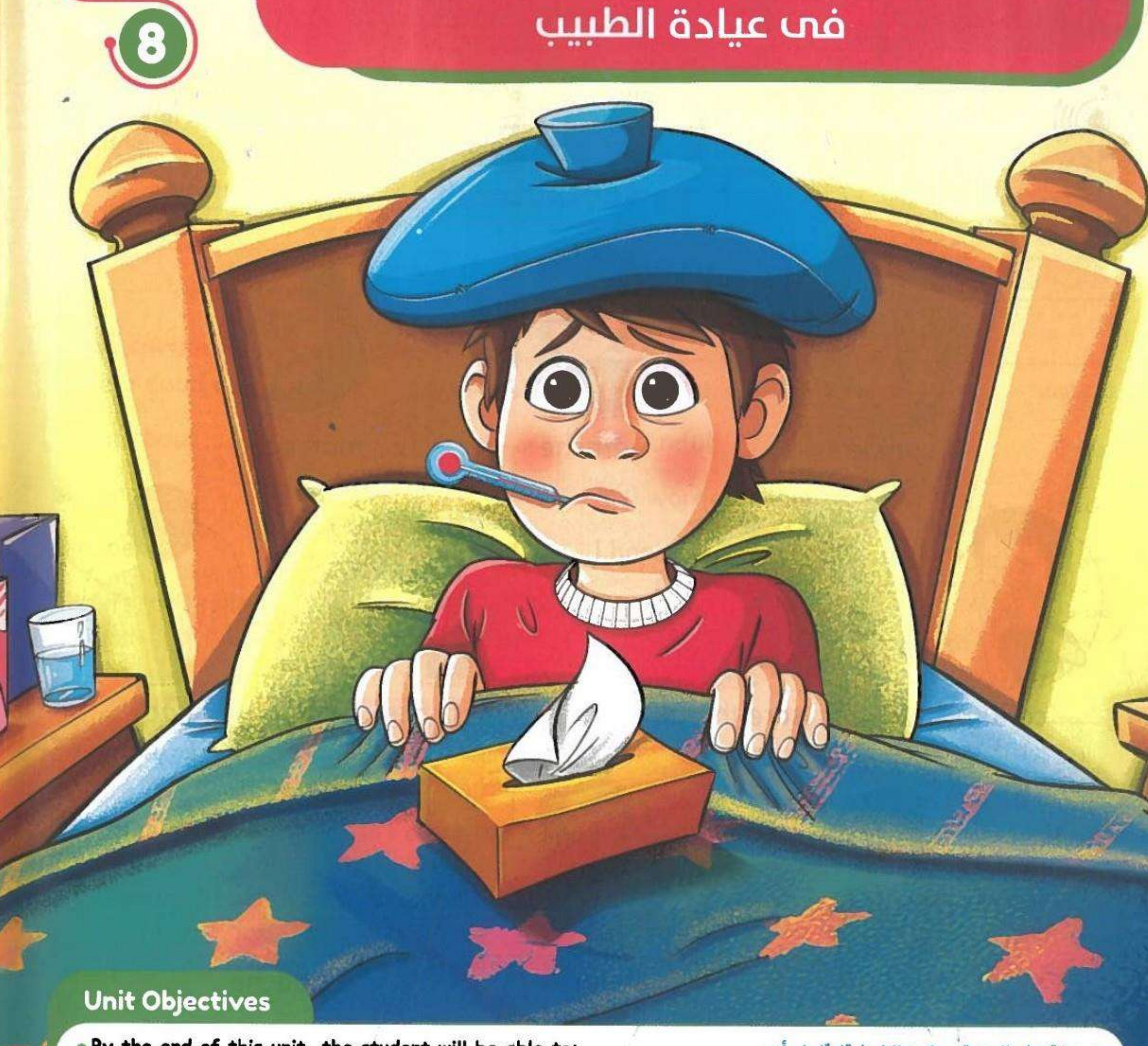
5 blogging – things – I – different – about – like.

....

Unit 8

At the doctor's

فى عيادة الطبيب



Unit Objectives

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

- بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:

- listen, read, research, and write about different illnesses and treatments.
  - يستمع، يقرأ، يبحث، ويكتب عن الأنواع المختلفة من الأمراض والعلاجات.
- practice using "have" to talk about illnesses.
  - يتدرب على استخدام "have" للتحدث عن الأمراض.
- listen to and understand a conversation between a doctor and a patient.
  - يستمع ويفهم محادثة بين دكتور ومريض.
- learn about and use the prefixes "un, ir, il, and im".
  - يتعلم عن ويستخدم البادئة "un, ir, il, و im".
- understand the difference between /f/ and /v/ sounds.
  - يفهم الفرق بين الأصوات /f/ و /v/.
- write a short paragraph about staying healthy.
  - يكتب فقرة قصيرة عن البقاء بصحة جيدة.
- plan what to put in a first-aid kit and make a poster.
  - يخطط لما يجب وضعه فى حقيبة الإسعافات الأولية ويصمم ملصقًا.

Did you know?

- In Ancient Egypt, doctors often used honey as * medicine to help sick people.

Find out!

- There are different jobs at the hospital. People can be doctors, nurses, *surgeons, and *caregivers.

*medicine	دواء	* surgeons	جراحون	* caregivers	مقدمو الرعاية



Lesson 1
They Didn't Come To The Club!
لم يأتوا إلى النادى!



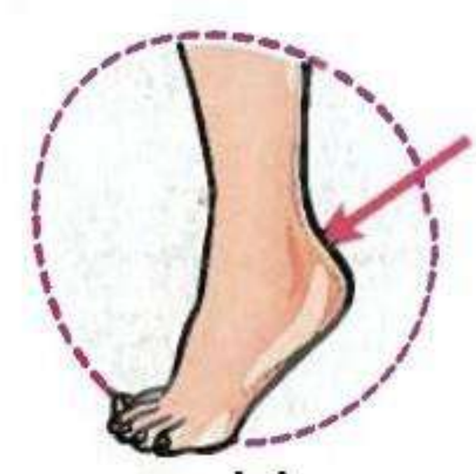


1.Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:



Main vocabulary



ankle
كاحل



earache
ألم الأذن



toothache
ألم الأسنان



cold



إنفلونزا (نزلة برد)



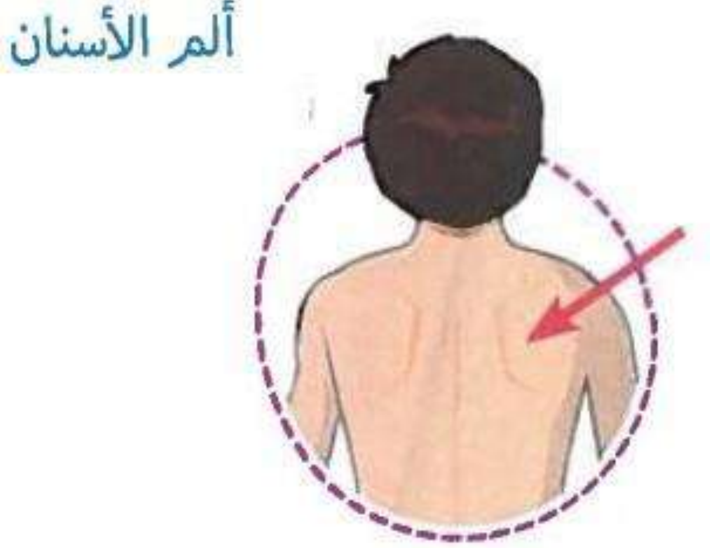
sore throat



التهاب الحلق



backache
ألم بالظهر



back
ظهر



cough
كحة



shoulder
كتف



headache
صداع

Extra vocabulary

club	نادى	problems	مشاكل	practice	تمرين / تدريب
cousin	ابن العم أو الخال	aunt	خالة / عمة	dentist	طبيب أسنان
coach	كابتن / مدرب	honey	عسل	stomach	معدة



Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (ch) فى كلمة (ache) ينطقان (k).
- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (gh) ينطقان (f) كما فى (cough).



ear + ache ألم = earache

tooth + ache ألم = toothache

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
stay	يبقى	stayed	hope	يتمنى	hoped

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
hurt	يؤذى/ يجرح	hurt	think	يعتقد	thought
tell	يخبر	told	feel	يشعر	felt

Expressions and Phrases

have a good day	يقضى يومًا سعيدًا	Not really.	ليس تمامًا.
What about ...?	ماذا عن ...؟	be careful	كن حذرًا
stay home	يبقى بالمنزل	(be) worried about	قلق بشأن
feel better	يتحسن	I hope so!	أتمنى ذلك!
What's the matter?	ما الأمر؟	Ouch!	هذا مؤلم!

Important sentences جمل هامة

* Fares was at the club today.
كان فارس فى النادى اليوم.

* Some of his friends didn't come; they had problems.
بعض أصدقائه لم يأتوا؛ كان لديهم مشاكل.

* The coach told them to be careful.
أخبرهم المدرب أن يكونوا حذرين.

* When they have a cough or a sore throat, they should stay home.
عندما يعانوا من السعال أو التهاب الحلق، يجب عليهم البقاء فى المنزل.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 I have a/an (earache – toothache – cold – headache). I need to go to the dentist.
2 She really can't talk. She has a/an (headache – backache – sore throat – earache).
3 It's very noisy here. I have a terrible (headache – sore throat – toothache – backache).
4 I can't walk well. My (arm – stomach – shoulder – ankle) hurts.
5 His (back – stomach – ears – head) hurt. He has an earache.
6 The (dentist – coach – cousin – aunt) was worried at the football practice.



2. Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



How does Fares feel today? كيف يشعر فارس اليوم؟



Mom

Hi Fares! Did you have a good day at the club?

أهلًا فارس! هل حظيت بيوم جيد فى النادى؟



Fares

Not really. Five people didn't come to the club today!

ليس تمامًا. خمسة أشخاص لم يأتوا إلى النادى اليوم!



Mom

Oh no! Are they OK?

أوه لا! هل هم بخير؟



Fares

No, they have problems. My friend Tarek hurt his ankle at football practice last night. And Amr has an earache from swimming.

لا، لديهم مشاكل. صديقى طارق جرح كاحله فى تدريب كرة القدم فى الليلة الماضية. وعمرو لديه ألم فى أذنه من السباحة.



Mom

What about your cousin Lama? Your aunt said she had a toothache.

ماذا عن ابنة خالتك لمى؟ قالت خالتك إنها كان لديها ألم بالأسنان.



Fares

No, she wasn't there. I think she went to the dentist. Two of my friends have a cold. The coach told us to be careful. When we have a cough or a sore throat, we should stay home!

لا، لم تكن هناك. أعتقد أنها ذهبت إلى طبيب الأسنان. اثنان من أصدقائى لديهم برد. أخبرنا المدرب أن نكون حذرين. عندما يكون لدينا كحة أو ألم بالحلق، يجب أن نبقى فى المنزل.



Mom

How do you feel?

كيف تشعر؟



Fares

Well, I have a backache and I'm worried about my friends. I hope they'll feel better tomorrow.

حسنًا، لدى ألم بالظهر، وأنا قلق على أصدقائى. أتمنى أن يتحسنوا غدًا.



Mom

I hope so, too!

أتمنى ذلك، أيضًا!



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 .... people didn't come to the club last night.
a) Three b) Four c) Five d) Six

2 Amr has a/an .... from swimming.
a) earache b) backache c) headache d) cold

3 Lama went to the ....
a) club b) dentist c) school d) football practice

4 Tarek hurt his .... at football practice last night.
a) shoulder b) ankle c) head d) ears

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 My head hurts. I have a/an .... القاهرة - حدائق القبة 2024
a) sore throat b) earache c) stomachache d) headache

2 Adel has a/an .... His ears hurt.
a) headache b) earache c) toothache d) sore throat

3 A .... helps the players practice well at the club. القاهرة - إدارة المرج 2024
a) doctor b) coach c) vet d) farmer

4 I have a backache. My .... hurts.
a) ear b) stomach c) back d) arm

5 My .... hurts when I carry heavy bags.
a) ankle b) tooth c) stomach d) shoulder

6 My brother hurt his ankle at football .... last night.
a) watch b) practice c) coach d) camera

7 Sama has a/an .... She needs to go to the dentist. القاهرة - حدائق القبة 2024
a) earache b) toothache c) headache d) backache

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

ankle – a headache – dentist – hurts

My name is Ahmed. Yesterday, I didn't go to school. I felt very ill. I told my mom, and she thought I hurt my ....(1).............. at the football practice, but I didn't. Then she thought I had ....(2).................., but I didn't. My teeth hurt. So, we went to the ....(3)................ . I feel fine now.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

It's Monday, and Ahmed is at home. He can't go to school because he has a cold. He must stay in bed. He has a cough and a sore throat, so he can't talk. The doctor says he must not run or play. He must sleep and drink a lot of water. All his family are worried about him. They hope he will get better soon.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Today is ....

a) Monday b) Sunday c) Tuesday d) Friday

2 Ahmed has a/an ....

a) earache b) toothache c) cold d) headache

B Answer the following questions:

3 Why can't Ahmed talk?

....

4 What must Ahmed do to get better?

....

5 How do Ahmed's family feel?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 have – a – headache – Do – you?

....

2 worried – about – I'm – friends – my.

....

3 I – milk – some – Can – honey – and – have?

....

4 I – a – toothache – don't – No, – have.

....

6 Punctuate the following:

1 what is the matter

....

2 five people didn t come to the club today.

....



Lesson 2





A How are you? كيف حالك؟



1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

medicine	دواء	bandage	ضمادة	patient	مريض
unwell (adj.)	مريض	relatives	أقارب	crowded (adj.)	مزدحم
staff	فريق العمل	injection	حقنة	corridor	ممر

Extra vocabulary

well (adj.)	بصحة جيدة	illness	مرض	stomachache	ألم فى المعدة
playground	ملعب	cut	جرح / قطع	arm	ذراع
throat	حلق	special (adj.)	خاص / مميز	hospital	مستشفى
country	دولة	Bangalore	بنغالور	southern India	جنوب الهند
family members	أفراد العائلة	unusual (adj.)	غير عادى / مختلف	sick (adj.)	مريض
alone	بمفرده	busy (adj.)	مشغول	classes	فصول / حصص
nurse	ممرضة	helpful (adj.)	متعاون	useful (adj.)	مفيد

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
worry	يقلق	worried	treat	يعالج	treated
care	يرعى	cared	return	يعود	returned

Irregular verbs أفعـال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
mean	يقصد	meant	teach	يُعلم	taught
learn	يتعلم	learnt	become	يصبح	became

Expressions and Phrases

feel well	يشعر بحالة جيدة	Oh, dear!	أوه، عزيزى! (للتعبير عن الشفقة)
come in	يدخل	fall over	يسقط على الأرض
from all over the country	من جميع أنحاء البلاد	instead of	بدلًا من
turn ... into	يحول ... إلى	look after = take care of	يعتنى بـ
for example	على سبيل المثال	learn how to	يتعلم كيف أن



2. Listen, point, and say: أستمع، أشر، وقل:

What's the matter with Ashraf? ما الأمر مع أشرف؟



Ashraf: Hello, Doctor. I don't feel well.

أهلًا، يا دكتور . أنا لا أشعر أننى بحالة جيدة .

Doctor: What's the matter, Ashraf? Do you have a headache?

ماذا بك، يا أشرف؟ هل لديك صداع؟

Ashraf: No, Doctor. I don't have a headache.

لا، يا دكتور. ليس لدى صداع.

Doctor: Do you have a stomachache?

هل لديك ألم فى المعدة؟

Ashraf: No, Doctor. I don't have a stomachache.

لا، يا دكتور، ليس لدى ألم فى المعدة.

Doctor: Do you have a toothache?

هل لديك ألم فى الأسنان؟

Ashraf: No, Doctor. I don't have a toothache. I have ... I have ... Achoo!

لا، يا دكتور. ليس لدى ألم فى الأسنان. أنا عندى.. أنا عندى... «صوت العطس» .

Doctor: Oh, dear! You have a cold. Stay home, sleep well, and take this medicine.

أوه، عزيزى! لديك نزلة برد. ابقَ فى المنزل، ونم جيدًا وتناول هذا الدواء.

What part of her body has Nahla hurt?
فى أى جزء من جسدها أصيبت نهلة؟

Nurse: Come in, Nahla. What's the matter?

أدخلى يا نهلة. ما الأمر؟

Nahla: I fell over in the playground. لقد وقعت فى الملعب.

Nurse: Oh, dear. Where does it hurt? أوه، عزيزتى! أين يؤلم؟

Nahla: Here. I have a cut on my arm. هنا. لدى جرح فى ذراعى.

Nurse: Oh, yes, I see. Don't worry. I'll clean it and put a bandage on it.

أوه ، نعم ، فهمت. لا تقلقى. سأنظفه وأضع ضمادة عليه.

Nahla: Thank you, nurse.

شكرًا لك، ممرضة.





3. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

A Special Hospital مستشفى مميزة



In a hospital in Bangalore, a city in southern India, there are many patients. The hospital treats patients from all over the country. With every patient, there are about ten family members. In India, it is unusual for a sick person to go to the hospital alone. Family usually go with their unwell relative.

This means that the hospital is often very crowded and busy.
But instead of telling family members that they can't visit their sick relatives, the staff at this hospital do something special. They turn a problem into something wonderful. They have classes to teach the family to look after the sick person. For example, some people learn how to change bandages and others learn how to give injections.

فى مستشفى فى بنغالور، مدينة فى جنوب الهند، هنالك الكثير من المرضى. يعالج المستشفى المرضى من جميع أنحاء البلاد.
مع كل مريض هناك حوالى عشرة أفراد من العائلة. فى الهند ليس من العادى أن يذهب شخص إلى المستشفى بمفرده. عادة ما تذهب العائلة مع قريبهم المريض.
هذا يعنى أن المستشفى غالبًا ما تكون مزدحمة ومشغولة للغاية. ولكن بدلًا من إخبار أفراد الأسرة بأنهم لا يستطيعون زيارة أقاربهم المرضى، فريق العاملين بالمستشفى يفعلون شيئًا مميزًا. إنهم يحولون المشكلة إلى شىء رائع. لديهم فصول لتعليم العائلة كيفية رعاية الشخص المريض. على سبيل المثال، يتعلم بعض الأشخاص كيفية تغيير الضمادات ويتعلم آخرون كيفية إعطاء الحقن.

Each afternoon, staff from the hospital turn the corridors into classrooms.
The nurses become teachers and the family members – and sometimes even the patients – become the students. Not only does this help the hospital staff, but it also helps the families to care for their relatives when they go home. The staff know that the lessons work because not as many patients return to the hospital now.

بعد ظهر كل يوم، يقوم موظفو المستشفى بتحويل الممرات إلى فصول دراسية. تصبح الممرضات معلمات، وأفراد العائلة - وأحيانًا حتى المرضى - يصبحون طلابًا. هذا لا يساعد فقط العاملين بالمستشفى، ولكنه أيضًا يساعد العائلات على رعاية أقاربهم عندما يعودون إلى البيت. يعرف الموظفون أن الدروس تعمل بشكل جيد لأنه ليس كثيرًا من المرضى يعودون إلى المستشفى الآن.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 Bangalore is a city in southern (Italy – Egypt – America – India).
2 The patients go to the (park – hospital – hotel – garden).
3 The hospital treats (relatives – nurses – patients – dentists) from all over the country.



Language Focus

We use "have" to talk about illness:

نستخدم الفعل «have» للتحدث عن المرض:

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات :

I/ You/ We/ They + have + a/an + illness (اسم المرض).



I have a headache.

He/ She/ It + has + a/an + illness (اسم المرض).



Hana has a cold.

Negative Form: صيغة النفي:

I/ You/ We/ They	don't	have + a/an + illness (اسم المرض).
He/ She/ It	doesn't	



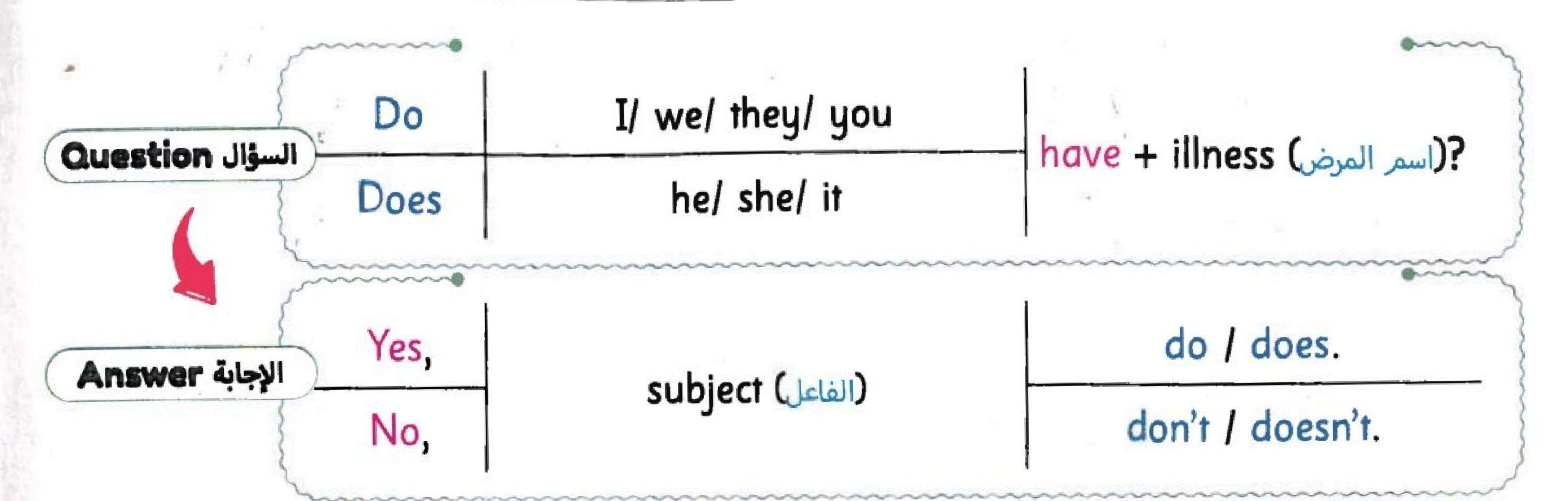
I don't have a sore throat. I have a backache.



She doesn't have an earache. She has a toothache.



Yes/ No Question: السؤال ب (هل):



Question السؤال

Do	I/ we/ they/ you	have + illness (اسم المرض)?
Does	he/ she/ it	

Answer الإجابة

Yes,	subject (الفاعل)	do / does.
No,		don't / doesn't.



A: Do you have an earache?
B: Yes, I do.



A: Does she have a toothache?
B: No, she doesn't.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1. Ola's teeth hurt. She (is – does – has – have) a toothache.
2. Mona and Laila (have – has – having – to have) a sore throat.
3. The children (have – has – having – to have) a cold.
4. We (aren't – don't – doesn't – weren't) have a headache.
5. Adel doesn't (have – having – has – had) a cold.
6. Does she (has – have – had – having) a stomachache?
7. (Do – Doing – Are – Does) your mom have an earache?
8. (Is – Are – Do – Does) you have an earache?

Prefixes البادئات

1 What is a prefix? ما هى البادئة؟
A prefix is a letter or a group of letters added to the beginning of a word to make a new word with a new meaning.
البادئة هى حرف أو مجموعة حروف تضاف إلى بداية الكلمة لتكوين كلمة جديدة ذات معنى جديد.

2 We can add the prefix "un-" to make the opposite of an adjective.
يمكننا إضافة البادئة «-un» لتكوين عكس الصفة.

3 Some other prefixes that are used to show the opposite are ir-, il-, and im-.
بعض البادئات الأخرى التى تستخدم لإظهار العكس هى -ir و-il و-im.

Prefix	Use	Root word	Opposite word
ir	when the word begins with r عندما تبدأ الكلمة بحرف r	responsible مسئول	irresponsible غير مسئول
		regular منتظم	irregular غير منتظم
il	when the word begins with l عندما تبدأ الكلمة بحرف l	legal قانونى	illegal غير قانونى
im	when the word begins with m or p عندما تبدأ الكلمة بحرف m أو p	possible محتمل / ممكن	impossible غير محتمل / غير ممكن
		moral أخلاقى	immoral غير أخلاقى
		polite مؤدب	impolite غير مؤدب
un		usual عادى	unusual غير عادى
		well بصحة جيدة	unwell مريض
		happy سعيد	unhappy حزين
		safe آمن	unsafe خطير
		fit لائق	unfit غير لائق

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 Talking on your cell phone while driving is (legal – unwell – illegal – polite).
2 I won the game. I feel (unhappy – unwell – happy – immoral).
3 It's (possible – responsible – fit – unsafe) to climb that mountain. It's very dangerous.
4 It's (unusual – moral – well – usual) to put on a coat when the weather is hot.
5 He's (polite – impolite – immoral – irresponsible). He always speaks carefully and shows respect.
6 She always forgets to feed her cat. She's (illegal – impossible – irresponsible – moral).



Lesson 2



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 I take some .... when I have a sore throat.
a) cola b) medicine c) ice cream d) coffee

2 Lama ate something bad. She has a/an .... الدقهلية - إدارة غرب المنصورة 2024
a) earache b) cough c) headache d) stomachache

3 When someone is ill, they're ....
a) well b) good c) fit d) unwell

4 I have a .... on my arm. It hurts.
a) medicine b) cut c) ring d) glove

5 It's .... to forget the house door open all night.
a) irresponsible b) well c) responsible d) good

6 When you have a cut, put a/an .... on it.
a) injection b) bandage c) illness d) milk

7 Doctors treat many .... They really do an important job.
a) relatives b) nurses c) patients d) dentists

8 You cannot park here. It's ....
a) legal b) illegal c) moral d) immoral

9 We use the prefix ".........................." to give the opposite of "possible". القاهرة - المطرية 2024
a) il- b) ir- c) un- d) im-

10 My mother is a nurse. She works in a .... القاهرة - حدائق القبة 2024
a) school b) hospital c) bank d) park

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

injections – sick – relatives – quiet

There is a city in southern India, called Bangalore. It has a very busy and crowded hospital. When a man is ....(1)............, his whole family goes with him. So, the hospital decided to teach the patients' ....(2)............ how to look after a sick person. The doctors and nurses taught the patients' relatives how to give ....(3)............ and change bandages.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 have – Do – a – Adel – stomachache, – you? القليوبية - غرب شبرا الخيمة 2024

....

2 fell – the – I – in – playground – over.

....

3 is – hospital – very – crowded – busy – The – and.

....

4 medicine – this – home – and – take – Stay.

....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 The kids .... (has) a toothache.
2 .... (Does) you have a stomachache?
3 Does Hany .... (has) a headache?
4 He .... (don't) have a sore throat. القاهرة - إدارة الزيتون 2024
5 A: .... (Is) he have a toothache? B: Yes, he does.
6 We ....(aren't) have a backache.
7 They .... (having) a cold.
8 Ola doesn't .... (has) a cut on her arm.
9 Talking on your cell phone while driving is ....(legal).
10 It's .... (safe) to go near the lions; it's very dangerous.
11 They .... (has) an earache. القاهرة - روض الفرج 2024
12 They .... (doesn't) have a toothache. القاهرة - المطرية 2024
13 Does he .... (has) a cough? القاهرة - هليوبوليس 2024
14 Mai .... (have) a headache.

5 Punctuate the following:

1 do you have a toothache القاهرة - إدارة الزيتون 2024

....

2 i don t have a backache

....

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

"A special hospital in India"

مجاب عنه صفحة 255

relatives – very crowded – a bandage

....
....
....
....
....



Lesson 3





The Power of Honey قوة العسل



1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

a cut knee	جرح / قطع في الركبة	sunburn	حرق شمسي	sunscreen	كريم واقٍ من الشمس
pills	أقراص / حبوب دواء	treatment	علاج	injuries	إصابات
wounds	جروح	healing	شفاء	bacteria	بكتيريا

Extra vocabulary

power	قوة	honey	عسل	way	طريقة
perhaps	ربما / يمكن	illnesses	أمراض	recently	حديثًا (مؤخرًا)
exactly	بالتحديد	careful (adj.)	حريص	jar	برطمان
cupboard	دولاب (خزانة)	substance	مادة	medical care	رعاية طبية

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
treat	يعالج	treated	heal	يشفي	healed
contain	يحتوي على	contained	kill	يقتل	killed
mix	يخلط	mixed	damage	يدمر	damaged

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
know	يعرف	knew	cut	يقطع / يجرح	cut

Expressions and Phrases

used as ...	يستخدم كـ ...	for thousands of years	لآلاف السنين
It was first used	استُخدم لأول مرة	find out	يكتشف
make your cough better	تحسن من حالة الكحة لديك	get better	يتحسن
good for	جيد لـ	safe to use	آمن للاستخدام



Definitions

treatment	علاج	medical care to help you get better	الرعاية الطبية لمساعدتك على التحسن
wound	جرح	an injury that damages your skin	إصابة تتلف جلدك
bacteria	بكتيريا	very small things that can make you ill	أشياء صغيرة جدًا تصيبك بالمرض
heal (v.)	يشفى	to get better	أن تصبح أفضل



2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Health Problems مشاكل صحية	Solution الحل
a sore throat التهاب الحلق	honey and lemon عسل وليمون
a cut knee جرح بالركبة	bandage ضمادة
sunburn حرق شمسى	sunscreen كريم واقٍ من الشمس
a headache صداع	pills أقراص / حبوب



3. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Do you like honey? Perhaps you enjoy eating it for breakfast. Or maybe you enjoy it in a sweet basbousa? But did you know that honey isn't only a food? It is also used as a treatment for some injuries and illnesses.



In some countries, honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years. It was first used to treat wounds by Egyptian doctors around 5,000 years ago. Recently, scientists have tried to find out exactly why honey is so good for healing wounds and treating illnesses.

هل تحب العسل؟ ربما تستمتع بتناوله على الإفطار. أو ربما تستمتع به فى البسبوسة الحلوة، لكن هل تعلم أن العسل ليس طعامًا فقط؟ أنه يستخدم أيضًا كعلاج لبعض الجروح والأمراض.

فى بعض البلدان، استخدم الأطباء العسل لآلاف السنين. تم استخدامه لأول مرة لعلاج الجروح من قِبل الأطباء المصريين منذ حوالى ٥٠٠٠ سنة. مؤخرًا، حاول العلماء معرفة بالتحديد لماذا العسل جيد جدًا فى شفاء الجروح وعلاج الأمراض.

Scientists know that some types of honey contain things that can help to kill bacteria. This helps wounds to heal more quickly. You must be careful, however. The honey that doctors use is a special honey only that is safe to use as a treatment. So, if you have a jar of honey in your cupboard, you can mix it with milk to make your cough better, but don't put it on your cut knee!

يعلم العلماء أن بعض أنواع العسل تحتوى على الأشياء التى يمكن أن تساعد فى قتل البكتيريا. وهذا يساعد على شفاء الجروح بشكل أسرع. يجب أن تكون حذرًا، برغم ذلك. العسل الذى يستخدمه الأطباء هو عسل خاص آمن للاستخدام كعلاج. لذا، إذا كان لديك وعاء من العسل فى خزانتك، يمكنك مزجه مع الحليب لجعل كحتك / سعالك أفضل، لكن لا تضعه على جرح بالركبة!



B Pronunciation





4. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

To make the /f/ sound, rest your top teeth on your lower lip. Blow, but don't use your voice.

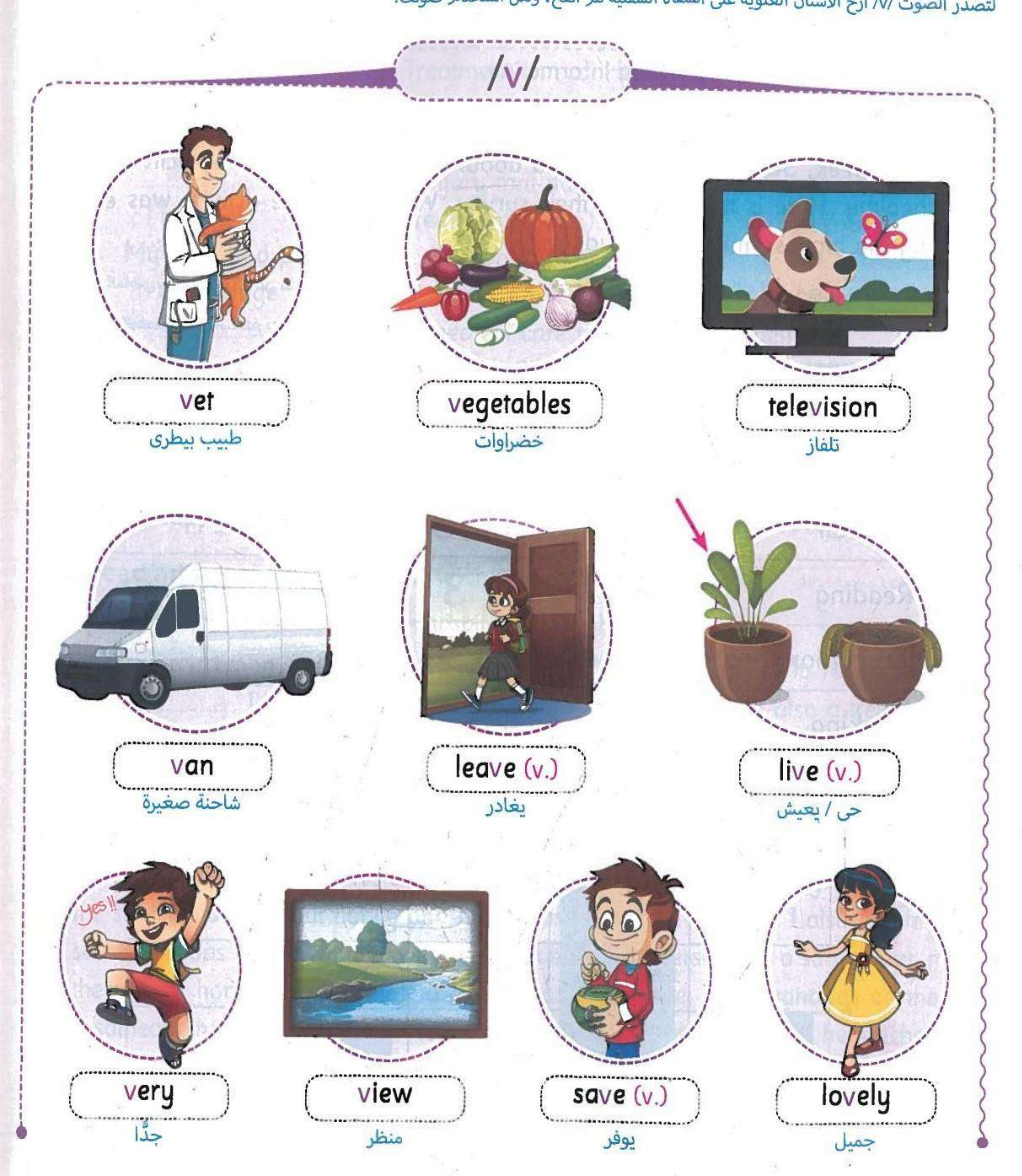
لتصدر الصوت /f/ أرح الأسنان العلوية على الشفاه السفلية ثم انفخ، ولكن لا تستخدم صوتك!

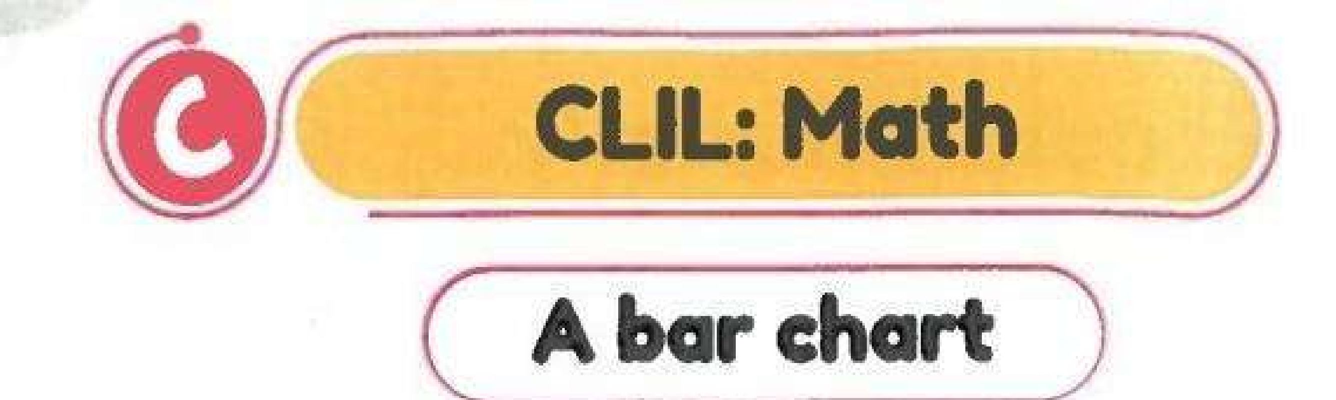
/f/

frog ضفدع	scarf وشاح / كوفية	fruit فاكهة
ferry معدية	few قليل	safe آمن
life حياة	fan مروحة	leaf ورقة شجر
friends أصدقاء	fast سريع	fine جيد

To make the /v/ sound, rest your top teeth on your lower lip. Blow, but do use your voice!

لتصدر الصوت /v/ أرح الأسنان العلوية على الشفاه السفلية ثم انفخ، ولكن استخدم صوتك!





A bar chart



5. Look, read, and notice: انظر، اقرأ، ولاحظ:

A bar chart is a way of showing information.

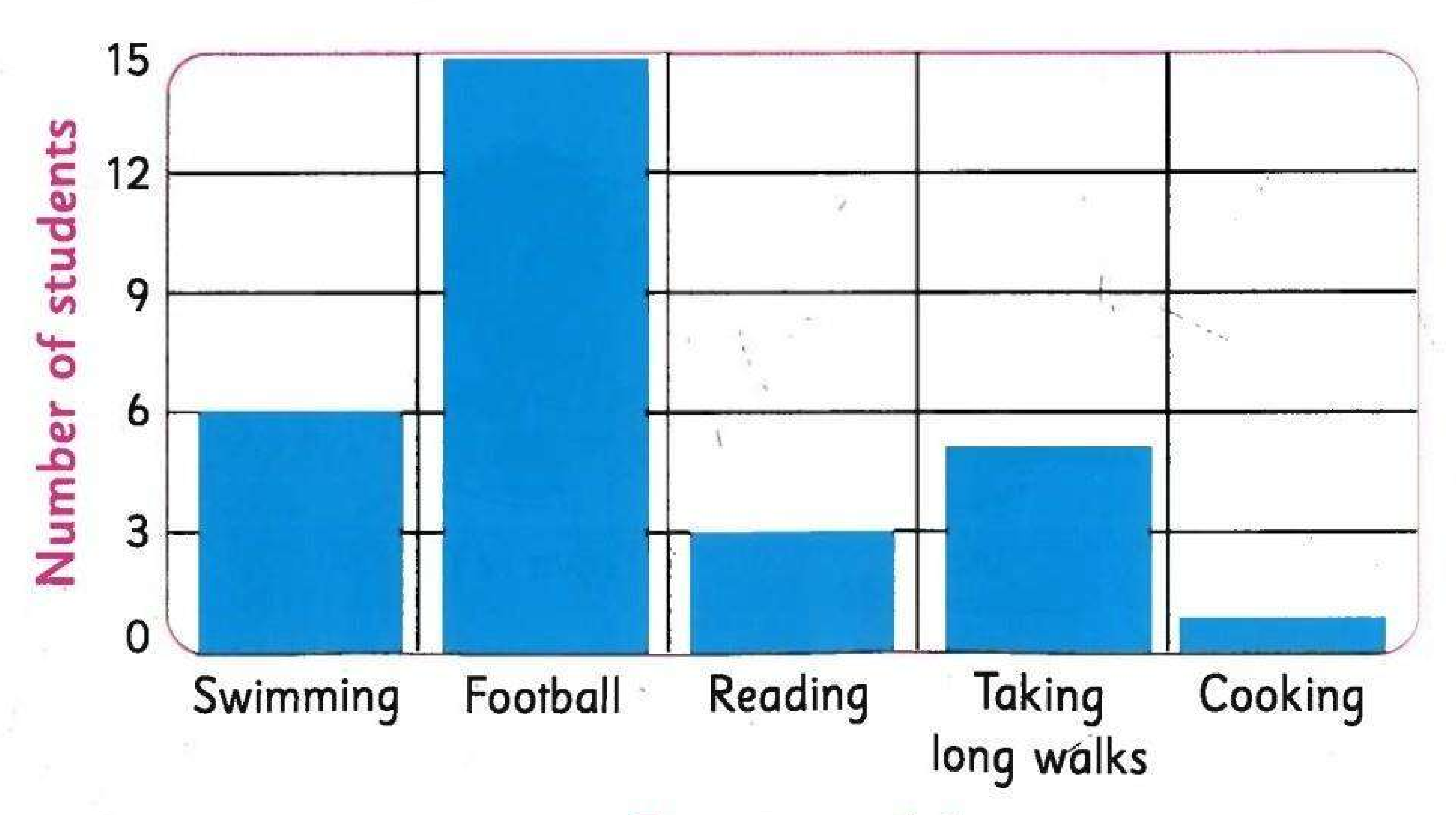
الرسم البيانى هو طريقة لعرض المعلومات.

e.g. Last week, 30 students were asked about their favorite free-time activity to stay healthy. Here is the result of their survey. Which favorite activity was enjoyed by the biggest number of students?

فى الأسبوع الماضى، سُئل ٣٠ طالبًا عن نشاط وقت الفراغ المفضل لديهم للبقاء بصحة جيدة. هنا نتيجة استطلاع الرأى الخاص بهم.

ما هو النشاط المفضل الذى استمتع به أكبر عدد من الطلاب؟

Favorite activity	Number of students
Swimming السباحة	6 students
Football كرة القدم	15 students
Reading القراءة	3 students
Taking long walks المشى لمسافات طويلة	5 students
Cooking الطبخ	1 student



Practice Lesson 3



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 "..............................." means the very small things that can make you ill.
a) Wound b) Treatment c) Heal d) Bacteria

2 You should have some .... to make your cough better. القاهرة - حدائق القبة 2024
a) bacteria b) chocolate c) honey d) cake

3 "..............................." means an injury that damages your skin.
a) Honey b) Treatment c) Heal d) Wound

4 My grandma put .... on my knee cut. القاهرة - المطرية 2024
a) a bandage b) scissors c) a sunscreen d) pills

5 "..............................." means the medical care to help you get better.
a) Treatment b) Heal c) Bacteria d) Wound

6 Bees make .... القاهرة - إدارة الزيتون 2024
a) milk b) funny c) honey d) sunny

7 Bacteria can make you .... القاهرة - إدارة بدر 2024
a) happy b) ill c) excited d) fast

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: الدقهلية - إدارة طلخا التعليمية 2024

school – hospital – special – honey

My name is Eman. I'm a doctor. I work in a ....(1).................. . My favorite food is ....(2)............... . I like honey because it's not only a food, but it's also a treatment for some injuries and illnesses. Honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years. I use honey too, but it's a ....(3)............ honey. Only doctors use it.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

I'm Asmaa. I'm a nurse. Yesterday, I had a visit to the school in my town. I taught the students a lot about honey and how to use it to treat illnesses. I also taught them some solutions to help anyone who has a problem. If a person has a sore throat, make them some honey and lemon. If a person has a cut knee, put a bandage on the cut. If someone has sunburn, they should use sunscreen. If someone has a headache, they should take some pills.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Asmaa is a ....
a) doctor b) firefighter c) nurse d) teacher

2 She had a visit to the .... in her town.
a) park b) office c) beach d) school

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where did Asmaa work?

....

4 What did Asmaa teach the students yesterday?

....

5 What do you do if someone has a sore throat?

....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 cut – honey – your – Don't – on – knee – put.

....

2 a very – have – scarf – long – I.

....

3 good – for – Honey – wounds – healing – is.

....

4 a cut – have – on – arm – I – my. القليوبية - إدارة الخانكة 2024

....

5 Punctuate the following:

1 can I have some honey, please القاهرة - روض الفرج 2024

....

2 egyptian doctors used honey around 5,000 years ago

....

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه صفحة 255

"The power of honey"

very useful – treat wounds – kill bacteria

....

....

....

....

....



Lessons 4 & 5

Writing & Project





1. Listen, point, and say:



استمع، أشر وقل:

Main vocabulary



bandages
ضمادات



sunscreen
كريم واقٍ من الشمس



scissors
مقص



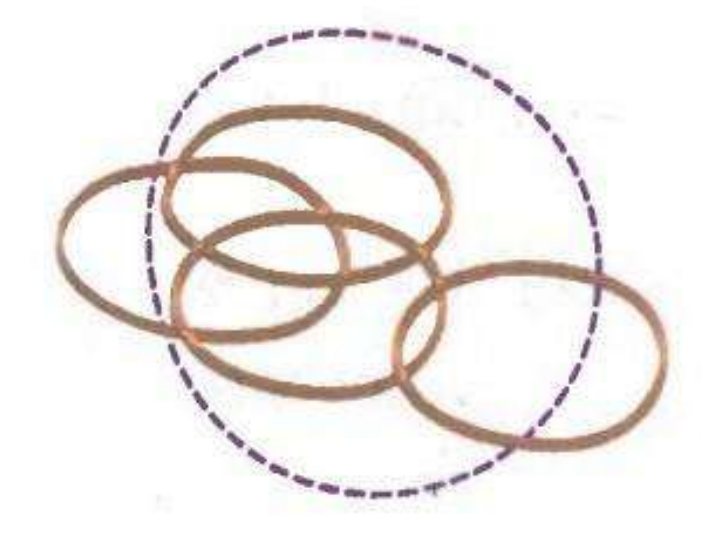
insect bite cream
كريم لدغة الحشرات



cleansing wipes
مناديل للتطهير



medical gloves
قفازات طبية



rubber bands
أربطة مطاطية



safety pins
دبابيس الأمان



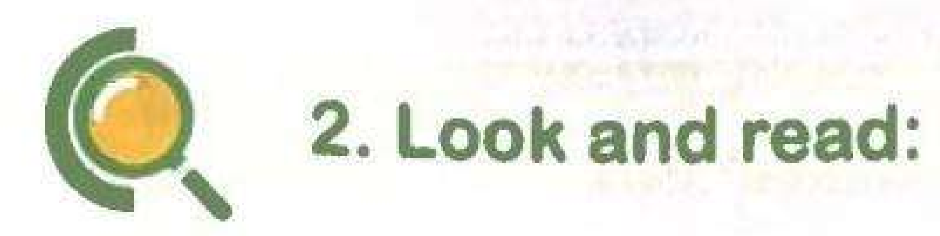
soap
صابون

Extra vocabulary

presentation	عرض تقديمي	way	طريقة	expert	خبير
exercise	تمرين	early	مبكرًا	great (adj.)	رائع

Expressions and Phrases

staying healthy	البقاء بصحة جيدة	balanced diet	نظام غذائي متوازن
look after	يعتنى بـ	keep your body moving	حافظ على حركة جسمك
enough sleep	قدر كافٍ من النوم	In addition, ...	بالإضافة إلى ذلك، ...
spend time	يقضى وقتًا	keep healthy	يبقى بصحة جيدة
make time	يدبر وقتًا	focus on	يركز على



2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



My presentation today is about staying healthy. It is really important to eat healthy foods like fruit and vegetables and to have a balanced diet. There are lots of other things that we can do to look after our health.

العرض التقديمي الخاص بي اليوم يتعلق بالبقاء بصحة جيدة. من المهم حقًا تناول الأطعمة الصحية مثل الفاكهة والخضراوات واتباع نظام غذائي متوازن. وهناك العديد من الأشياء الأخرى التي يمكننا القيام بها للعناية بصحتنا.

You should do some exercise every day. It's very important to keep your body moving. Playing sport at school or with friends is a good way to exercise.

يجب عليك القيام ببعض التمارين كل يوم. من المهم جدًّا أن تحافظ على تحرك جسمك. لعب الرياضة في المدرسة أو مع الأصدقاء هو طريقة جيدة للتمرين.

Another thing you can do is to go to bed early. It's important to get enough sleep. Experts think you should get between eight and nine hours of sleep every night.

In addition to this, one of the best ways to stay healthy is to spend time with your friends. It's not only your body that you need to keep healthy, you should make time to focus on being happy, too. Spending time with your family and friends is a great way to do this.

شيء آخر يمكنك القيام به وهو الذهاب إلى الفراش/السرير مبكرًا. من المهم أن تحصل على ما يكفي من النوم. يعتقد الخبراء أنك يجب أن تنام ما بين ثماني إلى تسع ساعات كل ليلة.

بالإضافة إلى ذلك، فإن أحد أفضل الطرق للبقاء بصحة جيدة هو قضاء الوقت مع أصدقائك. ليس جسمك فقط الذي تحتاج أن تبقيه بصحة جيدة. يجب أن تخصص وقتًا للتركيز على أن تكون سعيدًا أيضًا. قضاء الوقت مع العائلة والأصدقاء طريقة رائعة للقيام بذلك.

Check

1 What is the presentation about?

....

2 How many hours of sleep should we get every night?

....



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب).

1 Mazen has a presentation at .... today.

a) club b) school c) hospital d) park

2 The presentation is about being ....

a) clever b) active c) healthy d) perfect

3 It's really important to have a/an .... diet.

a) unhealthy b) balanced c) fast d) slow

4 Getting .... sleep, and drinking water are important too.

a) too much b) little c) enough d) a lot of

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

القاهرة - حدائق القبة 2024

healthy – some – important – balanced

It is important to eat ....(1)..................... food, like fruit and vegetables and to have a ....(2)............ diet. You should do ....(3)............ exercise every day. It is important to keep your body moving. Having enough sleep is good for your health, too.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

My name is Omar. My presentation today is about staying healthy. It is really important to eat healthy foods, like fruit and vegetables and to have a balanced diet. You should do some exercise every day. Playing sports at school or with friends is a good way to exercise. It's important to get enough sleep. Experts think you should get between eight and nine hours of sleep every night. You should make time to focus on being happy, too. Spending time with your family and friends is a great way to do this.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....

a) family and friends b) staying healthy
c) enough sleep d) playing sports

2 The underlined word "balanced" means to eat ....

a) only meat b) only vegetables
c) all types of food d) only fruit

B Answer the following questions:

3 How many hours should you sleep every night?

....

4 What should you do to be happy?

....

5 Summarize how to stay healthy in two sentences.

....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 have – a balanced – to – It's – important – diet.

....

2 do – we – to – What – stay – should – healthy?

....

3 bed – should – go – early – You – to.

....

4 sport – way – Playing – exercise – to – is – a good.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

1 it's really important to eat healthy food

....

2 you should do some exercise every day

....

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه صفحة 255

"What do you do to stay healthy?" القاهرة - إدارة هليوبوليس 2024

have a balanced diet – exercise every day – get enough sleep

....

....

....

....





REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التى وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

earache	ألم الأذن	toothache	ألم الأسنان
cold	إنفلونزا (برد)	cough	كحة
sore throat	التهاب الحلق	backache	ألم بالظهر
headache	صداع	ankle	كاحل
back	ظهر	shoulder	كتف
club	نادى	problems	مشاكل
practice	تمرين / تدريب	dentist	طبيب أسنان

Lesson (2)

medicine	دواء	unwell /patient	مريض
relatives	أقارب	crowded	مزدحم
staff	فريق العمل	injection	حقنة
throat	حلق	family members	أفراد العائلة
illness	مرض	cut	جرح
special	خاص / مميز	Bangalore	بنغالور
unusual	غير عادى / مختلف	helpful	متعاون

Lesson (3)

honey	عسل	injuries	إصابات
illnesses	أمراض	cupboard	(دولاب) خزانة
medical care	رعاية طبية	substance	مادة
wounds	جروح	treatment	علاج
healing	شفاء	bacteria	بكتيريا
sunburn	حرق شمسى	a cut knee	جرح بالركبة
power	قوة	pills	أقراص / حبوب

Lessons (4 & 5)

sunscreen	كريم واقٍ من الشمس	bandage	ضمادة
scissors	مقص	insect bite cream	كريم لدغة الحشرات
cleansing wipes	مناديل للتطهير	medical gloves	قفازات طبية
rubber bands	أربطة مطاطية	safety pins	دبابيس الأمان
soap	صابون	presentation	عرض تقديمى
expert	خبير	exercise	تمرين
early	مبكرًا	great	رائع



Language Focus

We use "have" to talk about illness:

Affirmative Form:

I/ You/ We/ They + have + a/an + illness (اسم المرض).



I have a headache.

He/ She/It + has + a/an + illness (اسم المرض).



Hana has a cold.

Negative Form:



I/ You/ We/ They	don't	have + a/an + illness (اسم المرض).
He/ She/ It	doesn't	



I don't have a sore throat. I have a backache.

She doesn't have an earache. She has a toothache.

Yes/ No Question: السؤال ب (هل):

Question السؤال	Do	I/ we/ they/ you	have + illness (اسم المرض)?
	Does	he/ she/ it	
Answer الإجابة	Yes,	subject (الفاعل)	do / does.
	No,		don't / doesn't.



A: Do you have an earache?
B: Yes, I do.



A: Does she have a toothache?
B: No, she doesn't.



Unit 8 CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

كاحل	....	ظهر	....
صداع	....	إنفلونزا/ برد	....
كتف	....	ألم الأذن	....
ألم الأسنان	....	كحة	....
ألم بالظهر	....	التهاب الحلق	....

Lesson 2

أفراد العائلة	....	بمفرده	....
مريض	....	أقارب	....
مزدحم	....	مشغول	....
فريق العمل	....	دولة	....
ضمادة	....	حقنة	....
ممر	....	دواء	....

Lesson 3

وشاح/ كوفية	....	طبيب بيطرى	....
منظر	....	معدية	....
يغادر	....	يوفر	....
عسل	....	إصابات	....
أمراض	....	خزانة (دولاب)	....
جروح	....	علاج	....
يشفى	....	بكتيريا	....
حرق شمسى	....	جرح/ قطع فى الركبة	....

Lessons 4 & 5

كريم واقٍ من الشمس	....	مقص	....
كريم لدغة الحشرات	....	مناديل للتطهير	....
قفازات طبية	....	أربطة مطاطية	....
دبابيس الأمان	....	صابون	....
عرض تقديمى	....	تمرين	....

WRITING TIME





لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about illnesses:

- Five people didn't come to the club today!
- My friend (اسم) has (مرض).
- My friend (اسم) hurt (جزء من أجزاء الجسم).
- I have (مرض).

Illnesses

Five people didn't come to the club today! My friend Amr has an earache from swimming. My friend Lama has a toothache. She went to the dentist. My friend Tarek hurt his ankle at football practice last night. I have a sore throat. I can't talk.

How to write about health problems and the solutions:

- If a person has (مرض), (علاج المرض).
- If a person has (مرض), (علاج المرض).
- If a person has (مرض), (علاج المرض).
- If a person has (مرض), (علاج المرض).

Health problems and the solutions

If a person has a sore throat, make them some honey and lemon. If a person has a cut knee, put bandage on the cut. If a person has sunburn, they should use sunscreen. If someone has a headache, they should take some pills.

How to write about the power of honey:

- I really like honey.
- I like to drink honey and lemon when I have (أسماء أمراض) ... .
- Some doctors use honey as (استخدامات العسل) ... .
- Doctors use (نوع العسل) ... .
- Honey contains things that can help to (فوائد العسل) ... .

The power of honey

I really like honey. I like to drink honey and lemon when I have a cough or sore throat. Some doctors use honey as a treatment for wounds. Doctors use a special kind of honey. Honey contains things that can help to kill bacteria and heal wounds.



STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

يتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التى وردت بكتاب الوزارة.

1 Rewrite these sentences so they mean the opposite. Use the prefix Un-:

1 Tarek is happy.

....

2 The bridge is safe.

....

3 Ramy is fit.

....

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences or questions:

1 you / an earache / Do / have / ?

....

2 sore / a / I / throat / have / .

....

3 a / has / He / cold / .

....

4 Nader / have / Does / headache / a / ?

....

5 he / No, / doesn't / .

....

3 Look at the words and match them to their meaning:

1 treatment	a. to get better
2 wound	b. very small things that can make you ill
3 bacteria	c. medical care to help you get better
4 heal	d. an injury that damages your skin





Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Mai felt very ....
a) happy b) sad c) sick d) well

2 The .... asked her if she had a stomachache.
a) vet b) nurse c) teacher d) driver

3 Mai had a/an ....
a) sore throat b) headache c) stomachache d) earache

4 She drank honey and ....
a) juice b) water c) lemon d) milk

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 1.5

1 I drink .... and lemon because I have a sore throat.
a) cola b) pills c) honey d) ice cream

2 Some types of honey can kill ....
a) injury b) animals c) bacteria d) birds

3 If you have a ...., put a bandage on it.
a) sore throat b) sunburn c) cut knee d) headache

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 1.5

don't – mix – treatment – wounds

Scientists know that some types of honey contain things that can help to kill bacteria.This helps ....(1).......... to heal more quickly. So, if you have a jar of honey in your cupboard, you can ....(2).......... it with milk to make your cough better, but ....(3).......... put it on your cut knee!

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 7

Honey is very useful. It isn't only a food; it is also used as a treatment for some injuries and illnesses. It was first used to treat wounds by Egyptian doctors around 5,000 years ago. Honey contains things that can help to kill bacteria. This helps wounds to heal more quickly. You must be careful, however. The honey that doctors use is a special honey only that is safe to use as a treatment. So, if you have a jar of honey in your cupboard, you can mix it with milk to make your cough better.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....

a) sunscreen b) honey c) bandages d) bacteria

2 The underlined word "wounds" means ....

a) foods b) drinks c) cuts d) ankles

B Answer the following questions:

3 What is the importance of honey? ....

4 Who first used honey to treat wounds? ....

5 How can you make your cough better? ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (1)

1 throat – Do – have – a – sore – you? القاهرة - حدائق القبة 2024

....

2 football – Tarek – practice – hurt – his – at – ankle.

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4)

1 ....(We) has a stomachache.

2 She doesn't .... (has) a headache. She has an earache.

7 Punctuate the following: (4)

1 what do you use honey for .... القاهرة - إدارة الساحل 2024

2 what's the matter ....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: (7)

مجاب عنه صفحة 255

"Health problems and the solutions"

- What do you do if a person has a cut knee?
- What do you do if a person has sunburn?

....

....

....

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

Unit 8 AL-AZHAR CORNER









تحتوى هذه الصفحة على أسئلة خاصة بمواصفات الأزهر.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Nahla fell over in the (class – bedroom – playground).

2 Nahla had a cut on her (ankle – arm – feet).

3 The nurse put a/an (bandage – sunscreen – injection) on the cut.

2 Choose the correct answer:

1 Does she (has – have – had) a headache?

2 (Treatment – Wound – Medicine) is an injury that damages your skin.

3 (Do – Is – Does) you have a cough?

4 My grandma puts (sunscreen – milk – a bandage) on the cut knee.

5 Bacteria are very small things that can make you (happy – ill – exciting).

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 to – enough – It's – sleep – important – get.

....

2 has – He – a – toothache.

....

3 doesn't – ankle – her – hurt – She.

....

4 does – Where – it – hurt?

....

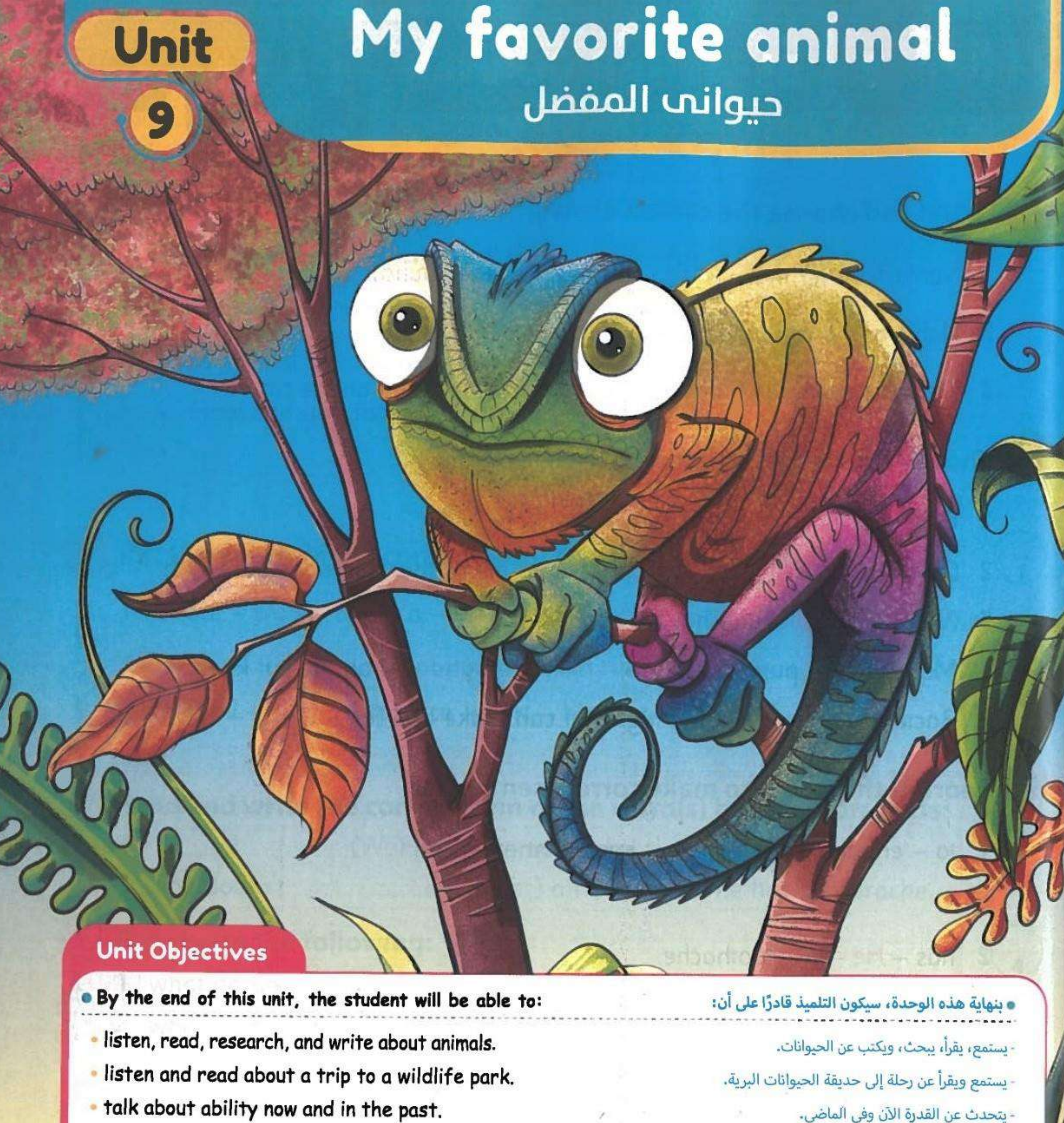
5 a sore – Do – throat – you – have?

....

Unit 9

My favorite animal

حيواني المفضل



Unit Objectives

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:
  - listen, read, research, and write about animals.
  - listen and read about a trip to a wildlife park.
  - talk about ability now and in the past.
  - learn how to say /w/ and /v/ sounds.
  - write an email about an unusual animal.
  - research and make an infographic about animals in a habitat.

- بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:
  - يستمع، يقرأ، يبحث، ويكتب عن الحيوانات.
  - يستمع ويقرأ عن رحلة إلى حديقة الحيوانات البرية.
  - يتحدث عن القدرة الآن وفى الماضى.
  - يتعلم كيف يقول أصوات /w/ و /v/.
  - يكتب بريدًا إلكترونيًا عن حيوان غير عادى.
  - يبحث ويقوم بعمل رسم بيانى عن الحيوانات فى أماكن المعيشة.

Did you know?

- Flamingos eat with their heads *upside down. They use their *tongue to catch their food.

Find out!

- Egypt is *home to many animals, such as camels, donkeys, horses, sheep, goats, gazelles, and desert foxes, that mainly live in the desert areas.

*upside down رأساً على عقب	* tongue لسان	* home to موطن لـ



Lesson 1

Wildlife الحياة البرية





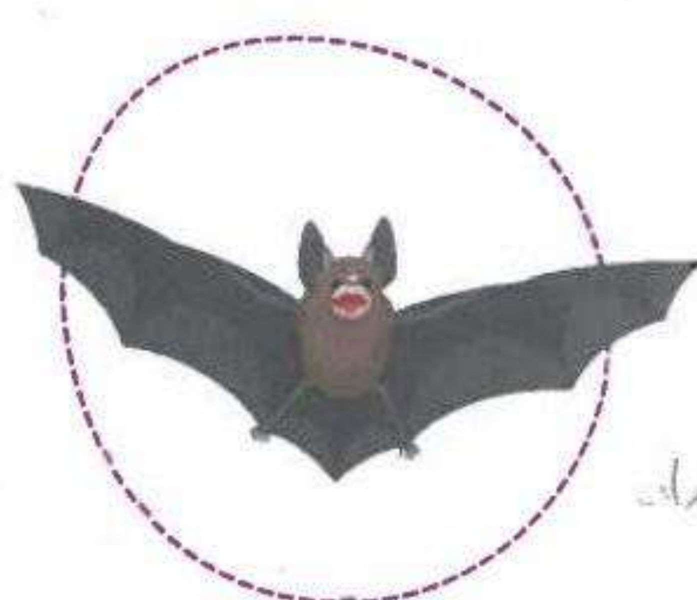
1. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر، وقل:

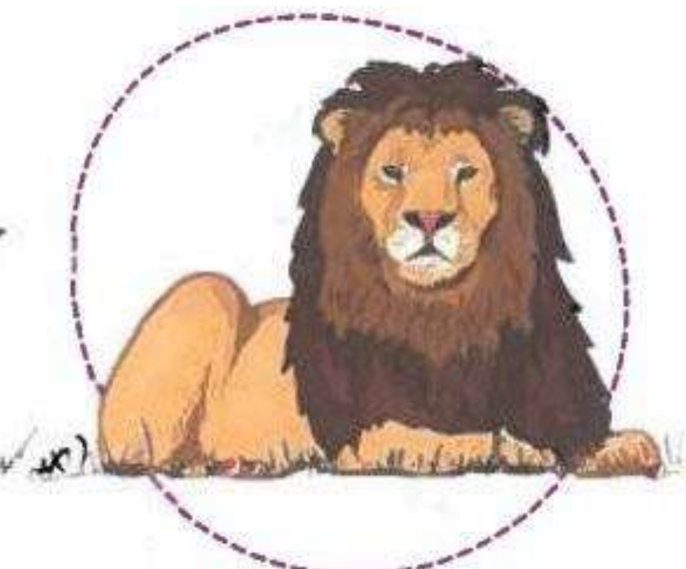


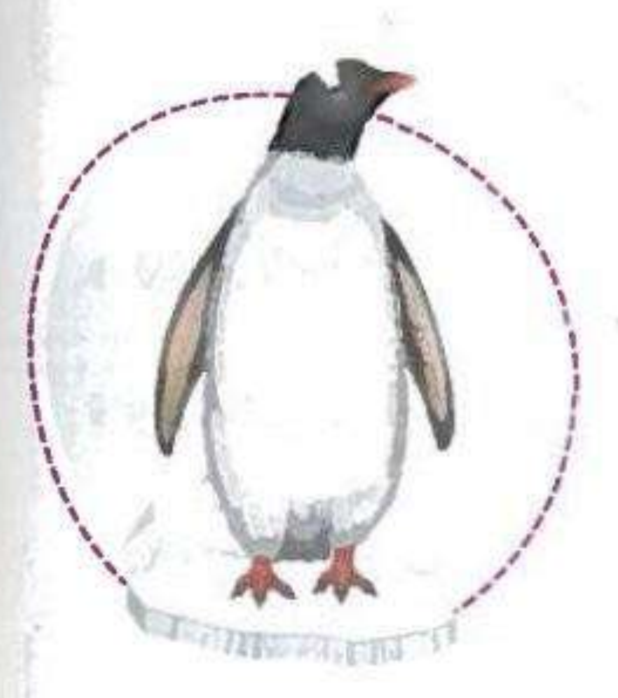
Main vocabulary

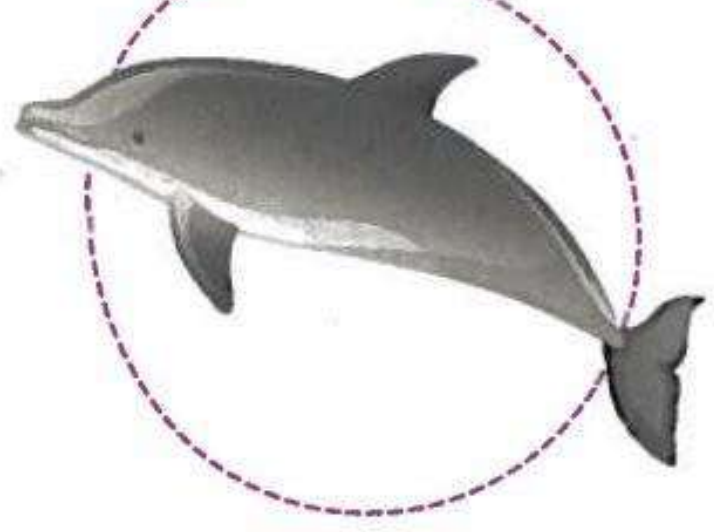

kangaroo
كنغر

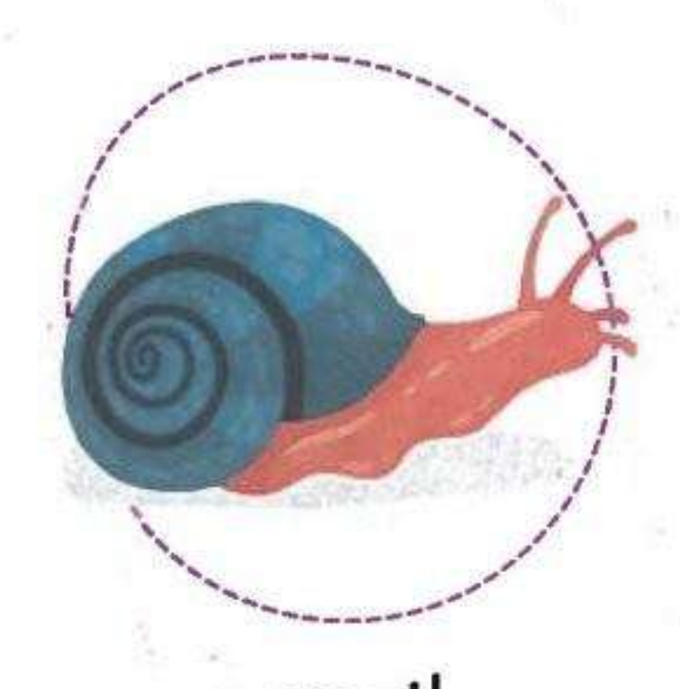

panda
باندا


bat
خفاش


lion
أسد


penguin
بطريق


dolphin
دلفين


snail
حلزون


parrot
ببغاء

Extra vocabulary

reptiles	زواحف	habitat	مكان المعيشة	wildlife	الحياة البرية
shell	صَدفة	Australia	أستراليا	ice	ثلج
snow	جليد	colorful (adj.)	ملون	rainforest	الغابة الاستوائية
Africa	إفريقيا	strong (adj.)	قوى	friendly (adj.)	ودود
ocean	محيط	China	الصين	bamboo	نبات الخيزران
wonderful (adj.)	رائع	wildlife park	حديقة الحيوانات البرية	awesome (adj.)	رائع
little (adj.)	صغير السن	pouch	جراب	sweet (adj.)	لطيف
special (adj.)	خاص/مميز	fridge	ثلاجة	project	مشروع

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
stay	يبقى / يمكث	stayed	repeat	يكرر	repeated

Irregular verbs أفعــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
fly	يطير	flew	sleep	ينام	slept
can	يستطيع	could	swim	يسبح/ يعوم	swam
eat	يأكل	ate	sit	يجلس	sat
feed	يطعم	fed	hide	يختبئ	hid

Expressions and Phrases

at night	في الليل	sleep upside down	ينام رأسًا على عقب	day out	يوم بالخارج
go near	يقترب	like a fridge	مثل الثلاجة	sit inside	يجلس بداخل
look so cool	تبدو رائعة جدًّا	do a project on	يقوم بعمل مشروع عن	It sounds amazing!	يبدو مذهلًا!



Let's say it right!

• لاحظ أن حرف الـ (c) فى كلمة (ocean) ينطق (ʃ) (ش).

Take care!

• لاحظ أن (favorite) قد تأتى اسمًا مثل: My favorites were the parrots.

• وقد تأتى (favorite) صفة مثل: He saw his favorite birds.

Important sentences جمل هامة

* I went to the new wildlife park; it was amazing.
ذهبت إلى حديقة الحيوانات البرية الجديدة، لقد كانت مذهلة.
* Parrots were so beautiful, and they could talk.
الببغاوات جميلة للغاية، وتستطيع التحدث.
* Penguins live in cold places, so we could feed them some fish.
تعيش البطاريق فى أماكن باردة، ولذلك نستطيع أن نطعمها بعض الأسماك.
* Bats fly at night, and they sleep upside down on trees.
تطير الخفافيش ليلًا، وتنام رأسًا على عقب على الأشجار.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 A (lion – dolphin – parrot – bat) is a sea animal.

2 A (bat – parrot – kangaroo – panda) is a beautiful and colorful bird.

3 A (snail – parrot – bat – penguin) doesn't have legs.

4 (Kangaroos – Pandas – Lions – Monkeys) are the strongest animals in the jungle.

5 (Bats – Dolphins – Kangaroos – Lions) are animals that jump on two legs.

6 (Penguins – Lions – Kangaroos – Elephants) can swim. They live in cold places.



2. Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:



Word	Sentence
kangaroo كنغر	I live in Australia. I jump on two legs. أعيش فى أستراليا. أقفز على قدمين.
panda باندا	I live in China. I eat bamboo. I'm big, and black and white. أعيش فى الصين. آكل نبات الخيزران (البامبو). أنا كبير، ولونى أسود وأبيض.
bat خفاش	I fly at night. I sleep upside down on trees. أطير فى الليل، أنام رأسًا على عقب على الأشجار.
lion أسد	I live in Africa. I'm a very big cat. I'm very strong. أعيش فى إفريقيا. أنا قطة كبيرة جدًّا. أنا قوى جدًّا.
penguin بطريق	I live on ice and snow. I'm black and white. I can swim, but I can't fly. أعيش على الجليد والثلج. لونى أسود وأبيض. يمكننى السباحة، لكن لا يمكننى الطيران.
dolphin دلفين	I'm very friendly. I swim in a group with my family in the ocean. أنا ودود جدًّا. أسبح فى مجموعة مع عائلتى فى المحيط.
snail حلزون	I live in the garden. I have a shell. I don't have legs or arms. أعيش فى الحديقة. لدى صَدفة. ليس لدى أرجل أو أذرع.
parrot ببغاء	I'm a bird. I am very beautiful and colorful. I live in the rainforest. أنا طائر. أنا جميل جدًّا وملون. أعيش فى الغابة الاستوائية.



3. Listen, read, and role-play:



استمع، اقرأ، وتبادل الأدوار:



Where did Ramez go yesterday? أين ذهب رامز أمس؟



Ramez: Hi! I had a wonderful day out yesterday with my family.

مرحبًا! قضيت يومًا رائعًا فى الخارج بالأمس مع عائلتى.



Ayman: Where did you go?

أين ذهبت؟



Ramez: I went to the new wildlife park – it was awesome!

ذهبت إلى حديقة الحيوانات البرية الجديدة - كانت رائعة!



Ayman: What did you see? Could you go near the lions?

ماذا رأيت؟ هل تمكنت من الاقتراب من الأسود؟



Ramez: No, we stayed in the car. But we could see them through the trees. The kangaroos were interesting, too. When they are little, they can sit inside their mom's pouch – it's so sweet!

لا، بقينا فى السيارة. لكن تمكنا من رؤيتها من خلال الأشجار. كان الكنغر مثيرًا للاهتمام أيضًا. عندما يكونوا صغارًا، يمكنهم الجلوس داخل جيب الكنغر الأم - الأمر رائع جدًّا!



Ayman: What birds did you see?

ما الطيور التى رأيتها؟



Ramez: Lots, but my favorites were the parrots. They were so beautiful and they could talk! We said some words for them to repeat!

الكثير، لكن المفضلة لدى كانت الببغاوات. كانت جميلة جدًّا ويمكنها التحدث! قلنا لهم بعض الكلمات لتكررها!



Ayman: What about animals that like the cold? Did you see any?

ماذا عن الحيوانات التى تحب البرد؟ هل رأيت أيًّا منها؟



Ramez: Yes, penguins! They were in a special place inside. It was cold, like a fridge. We fed them some fish! I love penguins – they can swim so well and they look so cool!

نعم، البطاريق! كانت فى مكان خاص بالداخل. كان المكان باردًا مثل الثلاجة. أطعمناها بعض الأسماك! أحب البطاريق - يمكن أن تسبح جيدًا وتبدو رائعة جدًّا!



Ayman: Wow! Was there anything you wanted to see but couldn't?

رائع! هل كان هناك أى شىء أردت رؤيته ولكنك لم تستطع ذلك؟



Ramez: The bats. I'm doing a project on bats at school, so I really wanted to see them! But they were all hiding and I couldn't see them in the dark!

الخفافيش. أقوم بعمل مشروع عن الخفافيش فى المدرسة، لذلك أردت حقًّا رؤيتها! لكنها كانت جميعًا تختبئ ولم أستطع رؤيتها فى الظلام!



Ayman: Oh well, it sounds amazing! I've got to feed my rabbit now – that's the most wildlife I'll see today!

أووه حسنًا ، يبدو الأمر رائعًا! يجب أن أطعم أرنبى الآن- هذا هو أقصى ما يمكننى رؤيته من حياة الحيوانات البرية اليوم!

Practice Lesson 1



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Snails don't have .... or arms.
   a) eyes   b) legs   c) ears   d) heads
2 Kangaroos live in ....
   a) Australia   b) China   c) Egypt   d) France
3 .... fly at night.
   a) Dolphins   b) Pandas   c) Bats   d) Penguins
4 Lions live in ....
   a) England   b) Africa   c) Germany   d) Italy

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 .... are colorful birds and can talk. القاهرة - إدارة الوايلى 2024
   a) Bats   b) Parrots   c) Snails   d) Penguins
2 Pandas eat .... القاهرة - إدارة المرج 2024
   a) mangoes   b) apples   c) bamboo   d) pizza
3 A .... is a very big cat. It is very strong. It lives in Africa. القليوبية - إدارة الخانكة 2024
   a) bat   b) snail   c) parrot   d) lion
4 When the kangaroos are ...., they can sit inside their mom's pouch.
   a) old   b) little   c) hungry   d) cold
5 Snails have a .... on their backs.
   a) feather   b) wing   c) shell   d) pouch
6 A .... can't fly, but it can swim. القاهرة - إدارة المرج 2024
   a) bat   b) bird   c) parrot   d) penguin

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

cold – bats – pouch – penguins

I went to the wildlife park yesterday with my family. We saw lots of animals. We saw kangaroos. The little kangaroos were sitting inside their mom's ....(1).................. . We saw penguins, too. They were in a special ....(2)........... place. We also saw ....(3)............ . They were sleeping upside down on trees.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Ramez went to the new wildlife park yesterday. He had a wonderful day out with his family. They stayed in the car. They could see the lions through the trees. The kangaroos were interesting. When they are little, they can sit inside their mom's pouch. Ramez's favorite birds were the parrots. They were so beautiful, and they could talk! The penguins were in a special place inside. It was cold, like a fridge. They fed them some fish. Bats were all hiding, and they couldn't see them in the dark.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Ramez went to the .... yesterday.

a) hotel b) wildlife park c) club d) school

2 The underlined pronoun "they" refers to ....

a) bats b) penguins c) kangaroos d) lions

B Answer the following questions:

3 When did Ramez go to the wildlife park?

....

4 What were Ramez's favorite birds?

....

5 Why couldn't they see the bats?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 the penguins – fed – She – some fish.

....

2 shells – have – Snails – on – backs – their.

....

3 swim – in – a group – Dolphins – the ocean – in.

....

4 live – ice – Penguins – snow – on – and.

....

6 Punctuate the following:

1 what birds did you see

....

2 Lions live in africa

....





Lesson 2

What Could You Do?

ما الذى استطعت أن تفعله؟





A Language Focus

Expressing ability and inability in the present

التعبير عن القدرة وعدم القدرة فى زمن المضارع

can / can't

When we talk about something we are or aren't able to do in the present, we use (can) or (can't).

عندما نتحدث عن شيء نستطيع أو لا نستطيع القيام به فى الوقت الحاضر ، فإننا نستخدم (can) أو (can't).

Form



Subject الفاعل + can/cannot (can't) + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ... .

e.g.



I can play basketball.



Penguins can't fly.

Question

To make questions, we change the order of the words (to start with Can).

لتكوين الأسئلة، نقوم بتغيير ترتيب الكلمات وتكون البداية بـ «Can».



A: Can + subject (الفاعل) + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ... ?

B: Yes,	subject (الفاعل)	can.
B: No,		can't.

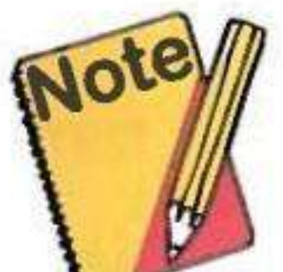
e.g.



A: Can you play tennis?
B: Yes, I can.



A: Can she make a cake?
B: No, she can't.



We use "can" or "can't" with the infinitive without "to".

- نستخدم "can" أو "can't" مع الفعل فى المصدر بدون "to".

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1. I (haven't – can't – am not – can) hear you. The music is too loud.
2. A: Can you play the piano? B: Yes, I (do – can – can't – don't).
3. He can (speaks – speaking – spoke – speak) four languages.
4. He says that he can't (to help – helped – help – helps) me.
5. A: Can I smoke here? B: No, you (do – can – can't – don't).
6. We (can't – can – aren't – haven't) use our phones in class.

Expressing ability and inability in the past
التعبير عن القدرة وعدم القدرة فى زمن الماضى

could / couldn't

When we talk about something we were or weren't able to do in the past, we use (could) or (couldn't).

عندما نتحدث عن شيء كنا قادرين أو غير قادرين على القيام به فى الماضى، فإننا نستخدم could أو couldn't.

Form

Subject (الفاعل) + could/could not (couldn't) + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ... .

e.g.



When I was little, I could sit on my dad's knee.



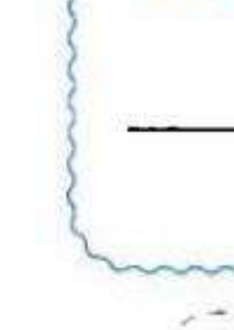
I couldn't take the bus, so I had to walk.

Question

To make questions, we change the order of the words (to start with Could).

لتكوين الأسئلة، نقوم بتغيير ترتيب الكلمات وتكون البداية بـ «Could».

A: Could + subject (الفاعل) + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ... ?



B: Yes,	subject (الفاعل)	could.
B: No,		couldn't.

e.g.

A: Could he speak when he was six months old?
B: Yes, he could say "mama" and "dada!".



A: Could you ride a bike when you were three?
B: No, I couldn't.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 When I was little, I (can – are – couldn't – can't) run fast.
2 A: Could you (play – playing – played – plays) chess when you were a child?
3 My cousin couldn't (ran – runs – run – running) when he was a baby.
4 When I was two, I (can – can't – couldn't – weren't) use a computer.
5 (Can – Could – Are – Do) you speak English when you were five?
6 When he was a baby, he couldn't (say – says – saying – said) his name.
7 A: (Can – Could – Are – Do) you play the piano well yesterday? B: Yes, I could.
8 Last year, he (could – couldn't – can – can't) run very quickly, but now he can.



B Story



1. Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:



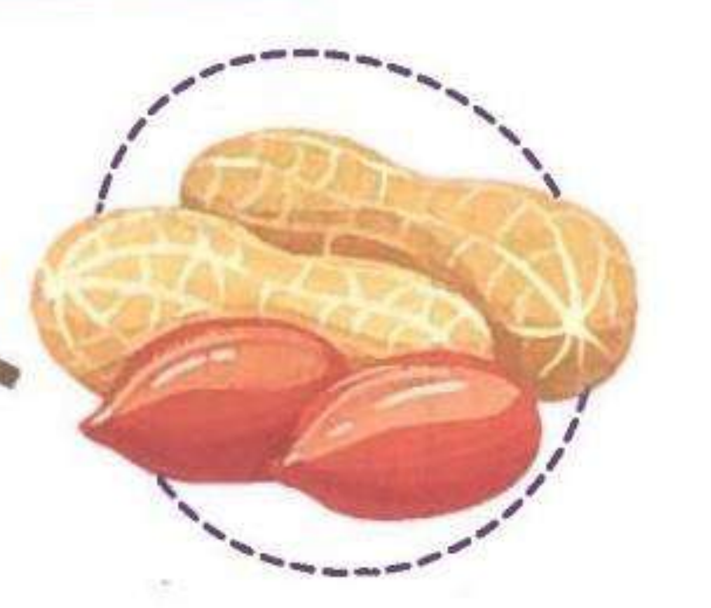
Main vocabulary



trunk of a tree
جذع شجرة



branch of a tree
غصن شجرة



nuts
فول سوداني



exhausted
مرهق

Extra vocabulary

travelers	مسافرون	dictionary	قاموس	fable	قصة خرافية (أسطورة)
once	ذات يوم	dry (adj.)	جاف	land	أرض
wide (adj.)	عريض	famous (adj.)	مشهور	shelter	ملجأ / مأوى
rest	راحة	the country	الريف	village	قرية
area	منطقة	traders	تجار	field	حقل
shade	ظل	cool (adj.)	بارد	tired (adj.)	متعَب
probably	ربما / من المحتمل	correct (adj.)	على حق	rainy (adj.)	ممطر
thirsty (adj.)	عطشان	both	كل من	wind	رياح
unkind (adj.)	غير طيب / غير عطوف	value	قيمة	humans	البشر

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
rest	يستريح	rested	save	ينقذ	saved
use	يستخدم	used	thank	يشكر	thanked

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up	feel	يشعر	felt
give	يعطى	gave	wear	يرتدى	wore
meet	يقابل	met	come	يأتى	came

Expressions and Phrases

move across	يتحرك عبر	walk across	يسير عبر
fall asleep	ينام	give shelter	يوفر المأوى
neither of them	لا أحد منهم	keep us cool	تبقينا باردين
feel sorry	يشعر بالأسف	give value	يقدِّر / يعطى قيمة

Definitions

breeze	نسيم	A breeze is a little wind. النسيم هو رياح خفيفة.
useless	عديم الفائدة	When something is useless, we can't use it. عندما يكون هناك شىء عديم الفائدة، فإننا لا يمكننا استخدامه.
ungrateful	جاحد (غير شكور)	When someone is ungrateful, they don't thank others for doing something good. عندما يكون شخص ما جاحدًا (غير شكور)، فإنه لا يشكر الآخرين على فعلهم الجيد.
comfortable	مريح	When something is comfortable, it's nice to sit on or wear. عندما يكون هناك شىء ما مريح، فإنه مريح لتجلس عليه أو ترتديه.
meeting point	نقطة التقاء	A meeting point is somewhere where people meet. نقطة الالتقاء هى مكان حيث يتقابل الأشخاص.

The moral of the story

It's important to give value to the small things in our lives.

الدرس الأخلاقى «المغزى» من القصة هو أنه من المهم إعطاء قيمة للأشياء الصغيرة فى حياتنا.

Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن الحروف (tion) فى كلمة (dictionary) تنطق /ʃn/ (شن).
- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (x) فى كلمة (exhausted) ينطق /gz/ (جز) كما أن حرف الـ (h) حرف (silent) صامت لا ينطق.
- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (th) فى كلمة (neither) ينطقان /ð/ (ذ).

Take care!

- لاحظ أن استخدام (un) و (less) يعطى العكس من الكلمة:

- useful مفيد / useless عديم الفائدة
- grateful ممتن / ungrateful جاحد (غير شكور)

The Travelers And The Tree المسافرون والشجرة

by Aesop كُتبت بواسطة أيسوب



2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

The beginning

Once there was a very big old tree in a hot, dry land. It had lived for many years. Its trunk was very wide and it had many green branches. It was famous because it was the only tree where it lived, and it gave shelter and rest to hundreds of travelers as they moved across the country. It was near four towns and many villages in its area and was a meeting point for traders.

ذات يوم، كانت هناك شجرة كبيرة قديمة جدًا فى أرض حارة وجافة. لقد عاشت لسنوات عديدة. كان جذعها عريضًا جدًا وبه العديد من الأغصان الخضراء. كانت مشهورة لأنها كانت الشجرة الوحيدة فى المكان الذى عاشت فيه، وقد وفرت المأوى والراحة لمئات المسافرين أثناء تحركهم عبر البلد. كانت بالقرب من أربع مدن والعديد من القرى فى منطقتها وكانت نقطة التقاء التجار.

The middle

One day two travelers, who were new to the area, were walking across the field and saw the tree. It was a very hot, dry day and one of them said, "Let's stop under that tree, where there's some shade." "That's a very good idea," said his friend. They rested under the tree and drank some water. They then enjoyed the shade and the cool breeze. As they were exhausted, they soon fell asleep.

When they woke up, one of the travelers felt hungry. Neither of them had any food in their bags so they looked up at the branches of the tree. "This tree is useless," one of them said. "It has no food for us – there are no nuts or fruit on its branches."
"But it has shade and it's keeping us cool," said the other.

فى أحد الأيام، كان مسافران جديدان فى المنطقة يمشيان عبر الحقل ورأيا الشجرة. كان يومًا حارًا وجافًا جدًا وقال أحدهم: «دعنا نتوقف تحت تلك الشجرة، حيث يوجد بعض الظل». قال له صديقه: «هذه فكرة جيدة جدًا». استراحا تحت الشجرة وشربا بعض الماء. ثم استمتعا بالظل والنسيم البارد. ولأنهما كانا مرهقين، سرعان ما ناما.

عندما استيقظا، شعر أحد المسافرين بالجوع. لم يكن لدى أى منهما طعام فى حقائبهما، فنظرا إلى أغصان الشجرة. «هذه الشجرة عديمة الفائدة». قال أحدهما: «لا يوجد بها طعام لنا - لا يوجد فول سودانى أو فواكه على فروعها». قال الآخر: «لكن لها ظل وهذا يجعلنا نشعر بالبرودة».

The end

But the tree heard the first traveler's words and it was angry. "How can you be so ungrateful?" It said, "You came to me feeling hot and tired. I gave you a cool, comfortable place to sleep and I probably saved your life. Look, there is no other cool place to sleep near here." The travelers looked around them and saw the tree was correct and felt very sorry.

لكن الشجرة سمعت كلام المسافر الأول وكانت غاضبة. «كيف يمكنك أن تكون جاحدًا إلى هذا الحد؟» قالت: «أتيت إلىّ وأنت تشعر بالحر والتعب. أعطيتك مكانًا رائعًا ومريحًا للنوم وربما أنقذت حياتك. انظرا، لا يوجد مكان بارد آخر للنوم بالقرب من هنا». نظر المسافران حولهما ورأيا أن الشجرة كانت على حق وشعرا بالأسف الشديد.



Lesson 2



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 A "........................" is a little wind. القليوبية - إدارة طوخ 2024

a) breeze b) trunk c) branch d) leave

2 When something is ...., it's nice to sit on.

a) ungrateful b) useless c) comfortable d) little

3 When someone is ...., they don't thank others for doing something good.

a) sorry b) ungrateful c) sad d) exhausted

4 When something is ...., we can't use it.

a) comfortable b) useless c) ungrateful d) unkind

5 The .... of the tree fell over a car and broke it.

a) shade b) nuts c) branch d) leaves

2 Read the text and answer the questions: بنها - إدارة الخانكة 2024

One day, two travelers were walking across the fields. It was a very hot day, but they saw a tree. One of them said, "Let's sit under that tree where there's some shade." They rested under the tree and drank some water. They enjoyed the shade. They fell asleep because they were very exhausted. When they woke up, they were very hungry. They didn't have any food in their bags. They looked at the tree and said "That tree is useless." The tree was angry and said, "But I gave you shade and kept you cool."

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The underlined word "exhausted" means ....

a) tired b) sad c) happy d) hungry

2 They didn't have any .... in their bags.

a) food b) water c) juice d) biscuits

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where were the travelers walking?

....

4 What did the travelers enjoy?

....

5 Why was the tree angry?

....

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 rested – We – the tree – under. القاهرة - إدارة روض الفرج 2024

....

2 speak – Could – one – you – when – you – were?

....

3 you – a – place – cool – I – gave.

....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 When I was two, I .... (can't) use the computer. SB
2 My sister couldn't run when she was a baby, but now she .... (could).
3 She ....(can) run very fast when she was younger.
4 I .... (can't) read when I was six months old.
5 .... (Can) you speak English when you were five? SB
6 It's snowing, so we .... (couldn't) go out now.
7 Yesterday, we .... (can't) play.
8 Could you .... (played) the piano when you were seven?
9 Penguins can .... (swimming) very well.
10 He could .... (plays) football when he was nine. القاهرة - إدارة حدائق القبة 2024
11 Adam .... (can) swim when he was a baby. القاهرة - إدارة حدائق القبة 2024
12 Can you .... (climbs) a tree? القاهرة - إدارة الزيتون 2024
13 Manal could swim when she .... (be) five. القليوبية - إدارة طوخ 2024
14 Last year, he .... (can't) run very quickly, but now he can.

القليوبية - إدارة غرب شبرا 2024

5 Punctuate the following:

1 the tree was correct and they felt sorry ....

2 how can you be so ungrateful ....

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب صفحة 255

"What could you do when you were younger?"

run – speak German – jump

....

....

....

....



Lesson 3

This is so interesting!

هذا ممتع جدًّا!!





A Language Focus



1. Read and say: اقرأ وقل:

1. Suffix (-er) اللاحقة (-er)

We can add (-er) to the end of words to make a noun. This is called a "suffix".

يمكننا إضافة (-er) إلى نهاية الكلمات لتكوين اسم. وهذا ما يسمى "لاحقة".



teach يُدَرِّس | teacher مُدرسة



read يقرأ | reader قارئ



climb يتسلق | climber متسلق





football كرة القدم | footballer لاعب كرة القدم



farm مزرعة | farmer مزارع



travel يسافر | traveler مسافر

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1. Sarah is a good (teach – teaching – teacher – teaches).
2. My grandpa is a (farm – farmer – farming – farms), he grows food for us.
3. My grandfather was a great (traveler – teacher – climber – reader). He traveled to many amazing places around the world.
4. Mo Salah is a famous Egyptian (climber – footballer – traveler – reader).

2. Adjectives ending in "-ed" and "-ing"
الصفات المنتهية بـ "-ed" و "-ing"

(-ed) adjectives

Adjectives that end in (-ed) describe (how a person feels about something).

الصفات التى تنتهى بـ (-ed) تصف (كيف يشعر الشخص تجاه شىء ما).



annoyed	منزعج
amazed	مندهش
interested	مهتم
tired	تعبان
surprised	متفاجئ

(-ing) adjectives

Adjectives that end in (-ing) describe (what a thing is like).

الصفات التى تنتهى بـ (-ing) تصف (كيف يبدو الشىء).

annoying	مزعج
amazing	مدهش
interesting	مثير للاهتمام (شيق)
tiring	مُتعب
surprising	مدهش / مفاجئ



1 I was so bored in that movie. كنت أشعر بالملل فى هذا الفيلم.

- (bored) describes how I felt about the movie. "bored" تصف ما شعرت به تجاه الفيلم.

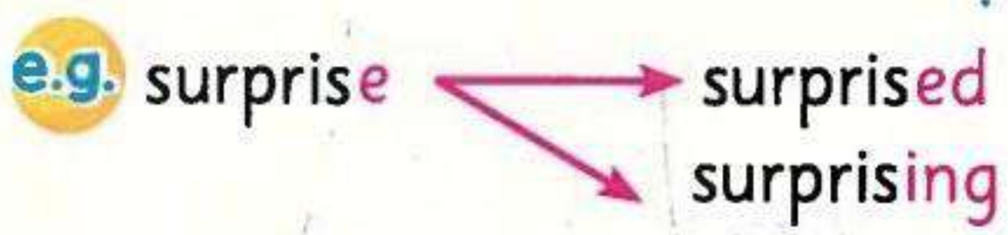
2 That movie was so boring. كان هذا الفيلم مملًّا جدًّا.

- (boring) describes what the movie was like. "boring" تصف كيف كان الفيلم.



If the verb ends in "-e", we take off the "-e" and add "-ed" or "-ing".

إذا انتهى الفعل بـ "-e" نحذف الـ "-e"، ثم نضيف "-ed" أو "-ing".



e.g. surprise → surprised / surprising

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 The movie was (bored – boring – amazed – interested). I couldn't watch it till the end.

2 It's (annoying – annoy – annoys – annoyed) when people talk so loudly.

3 I ran for 4 kilometers. I was (tired – surprising – annoying – tiring).

4 History is very (bored – interested – interesting – tired). I like it.



B Pronunciation



2. Listen, point, and say:



استمع، أشر، وقل:

/v/ and /w/ are both voiced sounds. This means that if you place your hand on your throat, you can feel the vibration when you say them.

/v/ و /w/ كلاهما أصوات منطوقة «تخرج من الحلق». هذا يعني أنك إذا وضعت يدك على حلقك، يمكنك أن تشعر بالاهتزاز عندما تقولها.

To pronounce /v/, press your top teeth against your bottom lip.

لنطق الـ /v/، اضغط على أسنانك العلوية مقابل شفتك السفلية.

Vv /v/

vet طبيب بيطرى

vase زهرية

violin آلة الكمان

volcano بركان

vest سترة

To pronounce /w/, make a tight circle with your lips.

لنطق الـ /w/، اصنع دائرة ضيقة بشفتيك.

Ww /w/

winter الشتاء	wet مبتل	wheel عجلة

water مياه	west غرب	whale حوت	watermelon بطيخ

Last Wednesday, I decided to travel west in my boat wearing my vest. I was looking for a volcano, but I had some problems. I met some whales and they turned over my boat. I had to sit on my violin to stay afloat! I ate watermelon to stay healthy and I came to shore. I didn't find the volcano, but I met some vets and they took me home to my village!



يوم الأربعاء الماضى قررت السفر غربًا فى قاربى مرتديًا سترتى. كنت أبحث عن بركان ولكن كان لدى بعض المشاكل. قابلت بعض الحيتان وقلبت قاربى. كان علىَّ أن أجلس على آلة الكمان الخاصى بى لأبقى طافيًا (عائمًا)! أكلت البطيخ للبقاء بصحة جيدة ووصلت إلى الشاطئ. لم أجد البركان، لكنى قابلت بعض الأطباء البيطريين وأخذونى إلى قريتى!

look for	يبحث عن	problems	مشاكل	turn over	يقلب	afloat	طافيًا (عائمًا)



Lesson 3



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Waleed decided to travel west in his .... wearing his vest.
a) plane b) car c) bus d) boat

2 He was looking for a ....
a) volcano b) tree c) lake d) house

3 The .... turned over his boat.
a) cats b) sharks c) whales d) dolphins

4 He had to sit on his .... to stay afloat.
a) piano b) violin c) guitar d) flute

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Nour travels to many places. She is a great .... القاهرة - إدارة حدائق القبة 2024
a) climber b) reader c) farmer d) traveler

2 That long walk was very .... I can't wait to get home and relax.
a) tired b) annoyed c) tiring d) bored

3 My sister is a good .... She reads about 20 books a week. القاهرة - إدارة الوايلى 2024
a) farmer b) footballer c) climber d) reader

4 I was so .... in that lesson; I almost fell asleep.
a) boring b) surprising c) interesting d) bored

5 He plays football well, he is a good .... بني سويف 2024
a) footballer b) farmer c) traveler d) teacher

6 My uncle is a .... He goes up some very high mountains.
a) swimmer b) teacher c) climber d) reader

7 The movie was very .... I didn't like it. القليوبية - إدارة غرب شبرا الخيمة 2024
a) meeting b) watching c) walking d) boring

8 Ahmed was .... in languages. القاهرة - إدارة المطرية 2024
a) interesting b) amazing c) interested d) boring

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

boring – amazing – lunch – farmer

Yesterday was a very interesting day. I went to work by bus because my car wouldn't start. Then, I went to have ....(1).......... . It was ....(2).......... . Then, I went to the cinema with my friends. We didn't like the movie, it was really ....(3).......... . Then, I went home. I was very tired. I went to bed at ten o'clock.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

People have different jobs. A teacher is the person who teaches us many interesting things. A teacher is always kind and friendly. The teacher makes everything clear in the class. A footballer is the person who plays football. Egypt has famous footballers like Mohamed Salah and Mohamed Elneny. Mohamed Elneny plays for Arsenal. A farmer works on a farm. He has a very important job; he grows food for us to eat and grow. A climber is someone who goes up high mountains. A climber must be professional enough to climb mountains safely.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about different .... which help us.
a) tools b) jobs c) sports d) foods

2 A .... is the person who goes up high mountains.
a) footballer b) farmer c) climber d) teacher

B Answer the following questions:

3 Mention two famous Egyptian footballers from the passage.
....

4 Where do farmers work?
....

5 Why are farmers important?
....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 The book is very .... (interest).
2 The movie was .... (bored). القاهرة - إدارة الزيتون 2024
3 I don't like long walks. I get ....(boring).
4 The teacher was really .... (amazed) so the lesson was fantastic.
5 The journey was .... (tired) - it took twelve hours by bus!
6 Mr. Ali is our music .... (teach).
7 The .... (farm) grows a lot of wheat.
8 Who is the best .... (football) in your team? القاهرة - إدارة روض الفرج 2024

6 Punctuate the following:

1 Mr. mahmoud is an excellent teacher
....

2 Mohamed Elneny is a famous egyptian footballer
....

*Mention اذكر



Lessons 4 & 5

Writing & Project







1. Listen and say:





Main vocabulary

email	رسالة إلكترونية (إيميل)	unusual (adj.)	غير عادى	dugong	الأطوم
nickname	لقب	sea cow	بقرة البحر	sea bed	قاع البحر

Extra vocabulary

dear (adj.)	عزيزى	friendly (adj.)	ودود	cute (adj.)	لطيف
grasslands	أراضٍ عشبية	habitat	مكان المعيشة	warm (adj.)	دافئ
cool (adj.)	بارد	percent	نسبة مئوية	land surface	سطح الأرض
Earth	كوكب الأرض	eagles	نسور	bison	البيسون (الثور الأمريكى)
wolves	ذئاب	infographic	مخطط معلومات بيانى	desert	صحراء
forest	غابة	polar (adj.)	قطبى	ocean	محيط
heading	عنوان	information	معلومات	hours	ساعات

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
hope	يأمل	hoped	check	يفحص / يتأكد	checked

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
hear	يسمع	heard	let	يدع / يسمح	let

Expressions and Phrases

How are things?	كيف هى الأحوال؟	play on a team	يلعب فى فريق
from around the world	من جميع أنحاء العالم	What about you?	ماذا عنك؟ / وأنت؟
write back	رد على الرسالة	Hope to hear from you soon.	أتمنى أن أسمع منك قريبًا.
make sure	يتأكد	Just a quick note, ...	ملاحظة سريعة فقط، ...



2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

New message

From Amir
To Tamer
Subject Unusual animals

Dear Tamer,

Thanks for your email. How are things? It was really interesting to hear about the sports you like. I love basketball, and I play on a team once a week.

This week we're talking a lot about unusual animals at school. We looked at animals from around the world and some from Egypt. My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the dugong – can you see the photo? I think it's got a lovely friendly face and it's very cute! Its nickname is the sea cow and it spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day.

What about you? What's your favorite unusual animal? Write back and let me know.

Hope to hear from you soon!

Amir

عزيزى تامر،

شكرًا على بريدك الإلكترونى. كيف تسير الأمور؟ كان من الممتع حقًا أن أسمع عن الرياضات التى تحبها. أحب لعبة كرة السلة وألعب فى فريق مرة واحدة فى الأسبوع.

نتحدث كثيرًا هذا الأسبوع عن الحيوانات غير العادية فى المدرسة. بحثنا عن حيوانات من جميع أنحاء العالم وبعضها من مصر. الحيوان غير العادى المفضل من مصر هو الأطوم - هل يمكنك رؤية الصورة؟ أعتقد أنه يتمتع بوجه ودود جميل وهو لطيف للغاية! لقبه هو بقرة البحر ويقضى ساعات طويلة فى أكل العشب من قاع البحر كل يوم.

وماذا عنك؟ ما هو حيوانك غير العادى المفضل؟ اكتب مرة أخرى وأعلمنى.

أتمنى أن أسمع منك قريبًا.

أمير



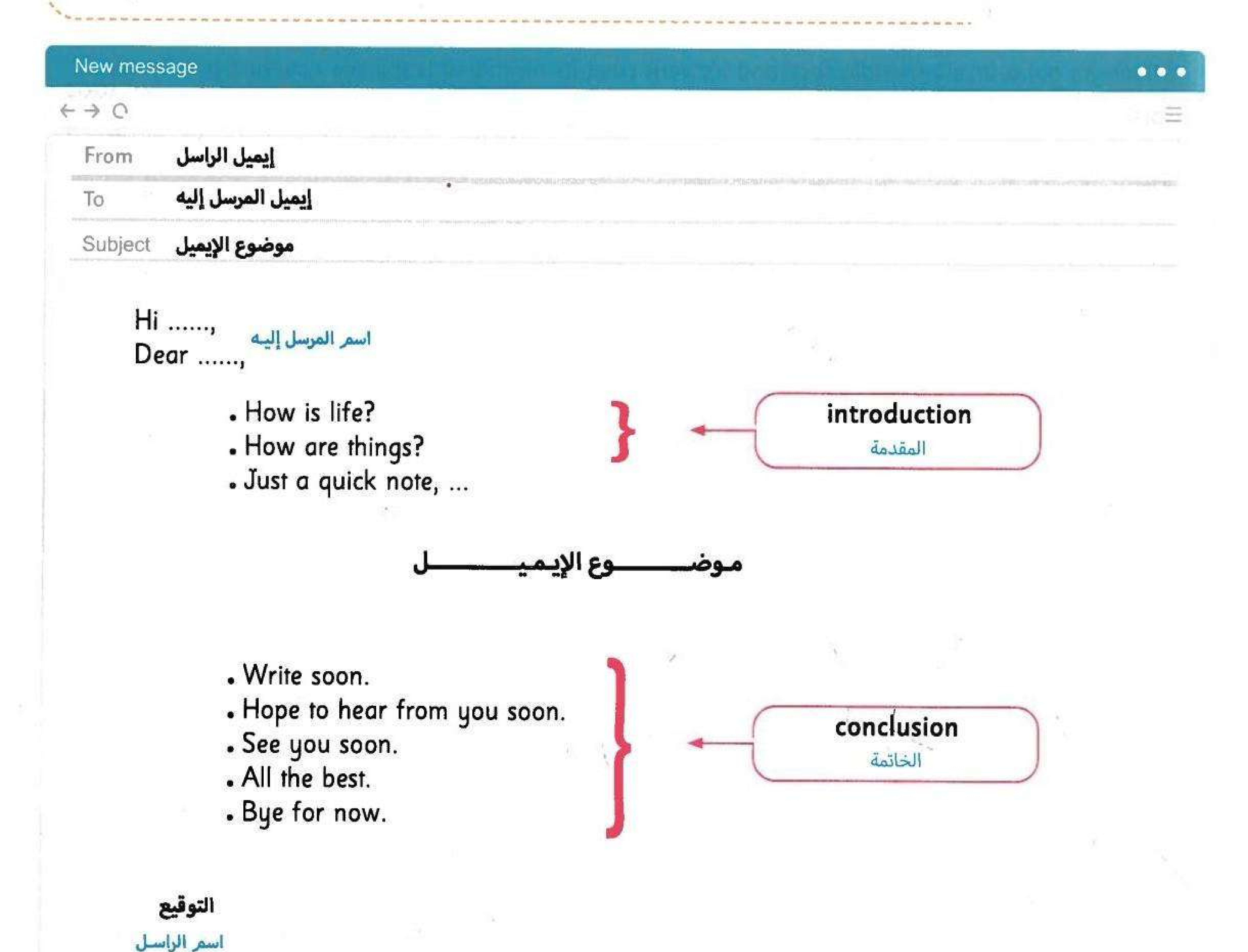
Send

Important sentences جمل هامة

* This week we're talking a lot about unusual animals at school.
  نتحدث هذا الأسبوع كثيرًا عن الحيوانات غير العادية فى المدرسة.
* My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the dugong.
  حيوانى المفضل غير العادى فى مصر هو الأطوم.
* It's very cute. إنه حيوان لطيف جدًا.
* Its nickname is the sea cow. لقبه بقرة البحر.
* It eats grass from the sea bed every day. يأكل العشب من قاع البحر كل يوم.

How to write an email كيفية كتابة بريد إلكترونى

1. Begin your email with "Dear" or "Hi" and the person's name. ابدأ بريدك الإلكترونى بكلمة «عزيزى» أو «مرحبًا» واسم الشخص.
2. Say why you are writing. Use phrases like "I'm writing to tell you that ...". قل لماذا تكتب. استخدم عبارات مثل «أكتب لك لأخبرك ...».
3. Give one idea in a paragraph and expand on it – look how Amir mentions the dugong, then describes it. أعطِ فكرة واحدة فى فقرة وواصل شرحها - انظر كيف يذكر أمير الأطوم، ثم قام بوصفه.
4. When writing to a friend, you can use informal language, words like "awesome" and "cool", contractions like "I'm", and phrases like "How's life? and How are things?" عند الكتابة إلى صديق، يمكنك استخدام لغة غير رسمية، على سبيل المثال كلمات مثل «مدهش» و«رائعة»، واختصارات مثل "I'm" بدلًا من "I am"، وعبارات مثل "كيف الحياة؟ وكيف تسير الأمور؟".
5. End your email with phrases like "Write soon", "Hope to hear from you soon", "See you soon", "All the best", or "Bye for now", and then your name. قم بإنهاء بريدك الإلكترونى بعبارات مثل «اكتب قريبًا، آمل أن أسمع منك قريبًا، أراك قريبًا، أتمنى لك التوفيق، أو إلى اللقاء الآن» ثم اسمك.







3. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Tips to make an infographic خطوات تصميم مخطط معلومات بيانى

1 Use a big heading. استخدم عنوانًا رئيسيًّا كبيرًا.

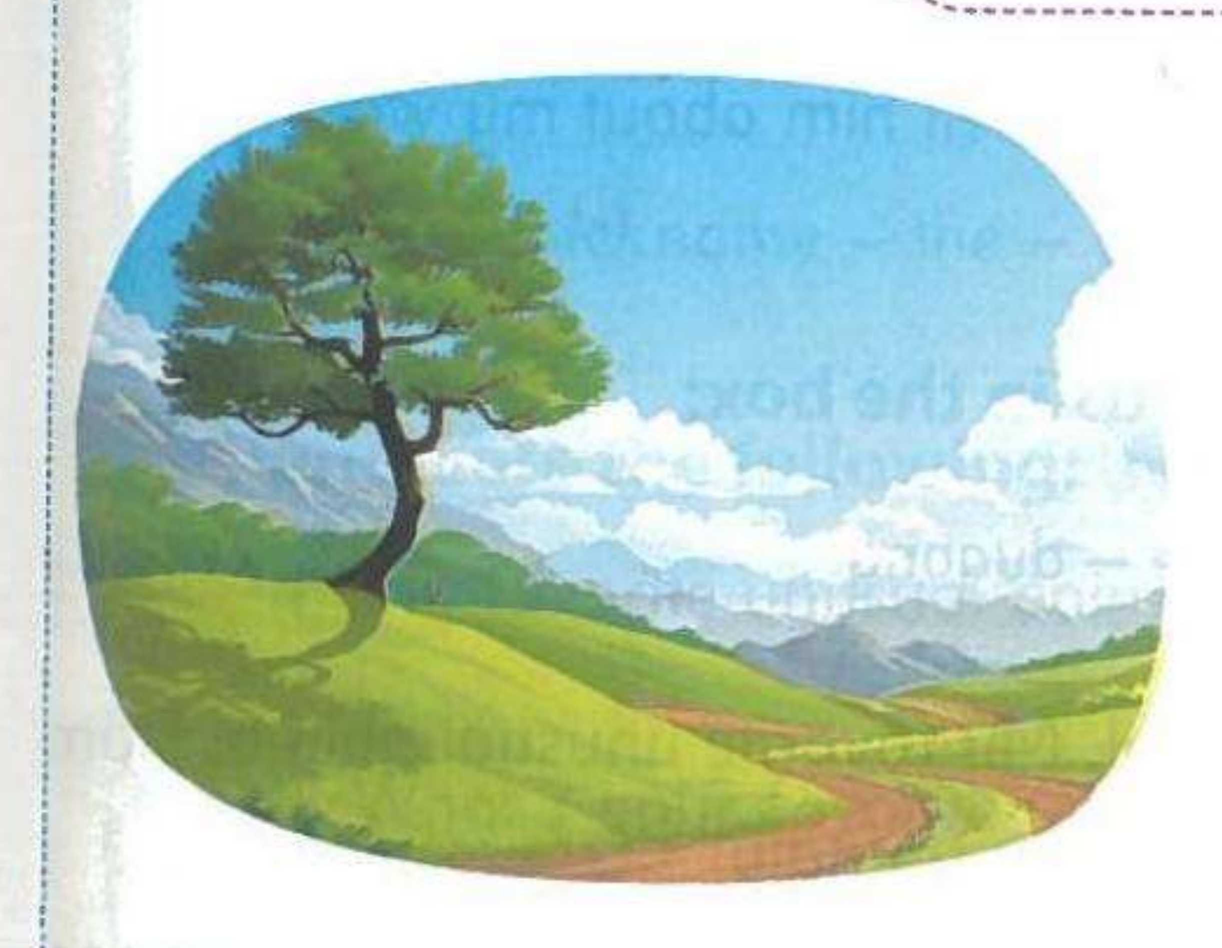
2 Give important information. قدم معلومات هامة.

3 Draw charts. ارسم مخططات بيانية.

4 Give examples. قدم أمثلة.

Grasslands Habitat
بيئة (مكان المعيشة) الأراضى العشبية

Use a big heading.
استخدم عنوانًا رئيسيًّا كبيرًا



You can find grasslands everywhere. Some grasslands are warm and some are cool.

يمكنك العثور على الأراضى العشبية فى كل مكان. بعض الأراضى العشبية دافئة وبعضها باردة.

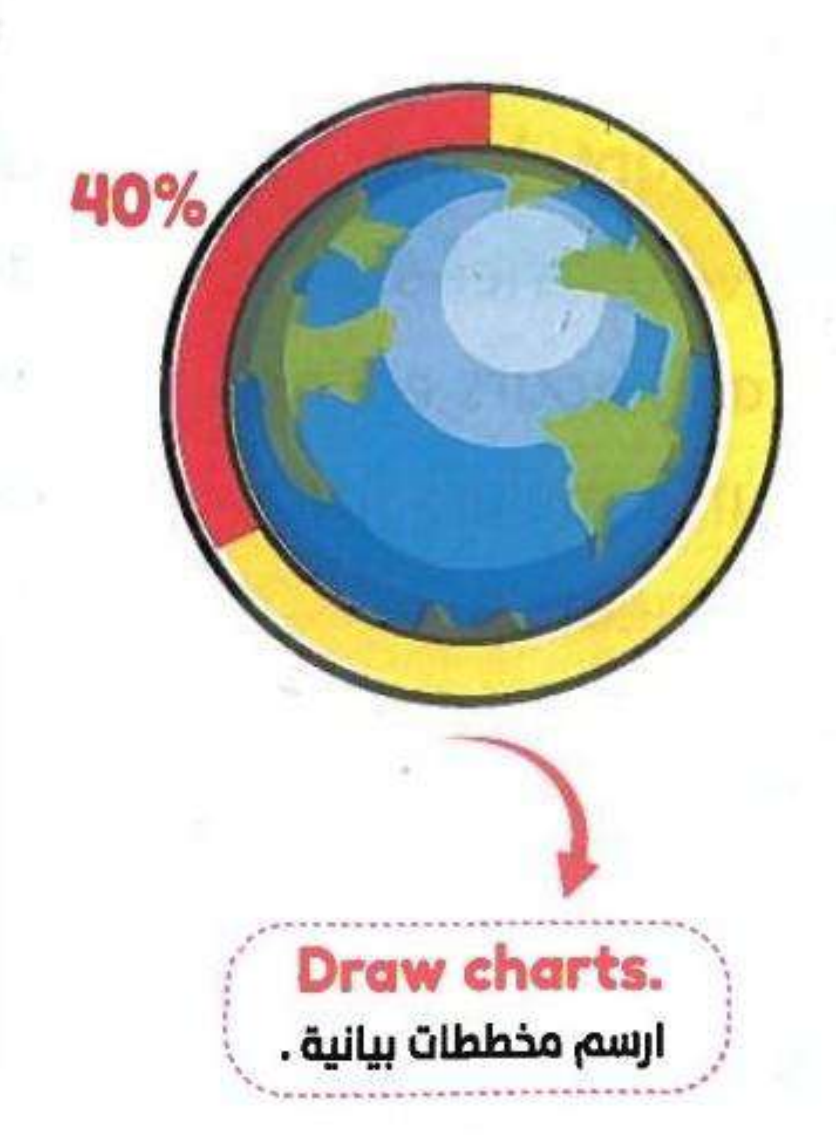
Give important information.
قدم معلومات مهمة.

40 percent of the land surface of Earth is grasslands.

40% من سطح الأرض عبارة عن أراضٍ عشبية.

Some very interesting animals live on grasslands, like eagles, bison, and wolves.

Give examples.
قدم أمثلة.



تعيش بعض الحيوانات المثيرة للاهتمام فى الأراضى العشبية، مثل النسور والبيسون والذئاب.

Draw charts.
ارسم مخططات بيانية.

Practice Lessons 4 & 5



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 His .... is "Red" because of his red hair.
a) heading b) nickname c) father d) family

2 Eagles live in the .... habitat.
a) river b) sea c) polar d) grassland

3 Our science teacher uses a/an .... to explain the lesson in numbers.
a) infographic b) heading c) ocean d) email

4 The .... is an unusual animal from Egypt.
a) kangaroo b) bison c) lion d) dugong

5 A/An .... is where an animal or people live.
a) chart b) infographic c) habitat d) sea bed

6 I wrote a/an .... to my friend to tell him about my week.
a) pen b) money c) email d) nickname

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

panda – face – nickname – dugong

We are talking about unusual animals at school. My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the ....(1).......... . It has got a lovely friendly ....(2).......... . Its ....(3).......... is the sea cow. It spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

I'm Tamer. This week, we're talking a lot about unusual animals at school. We looked at animals from around the world, some from Egypt. My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the dugong. I think it's got a lovely, friendly face, and it's very cute! Its nickname is the sea cow, and it spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day. The dugong can grow to about 3 meters long and weigh as much as 400 kg. The dugong can live for up to 70 years.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The underlined word "Its" refers to the ....
a) sea grass b) sea bed c) dugong d) Tamer

2 The dugong weighs as much as .... kg.
a) 200 b) 300 c) 400 d) 500

B **Answer the following questions:**

3 What is Tamer's favorite unusual animal?

....

4 What does the dugong eat?

....

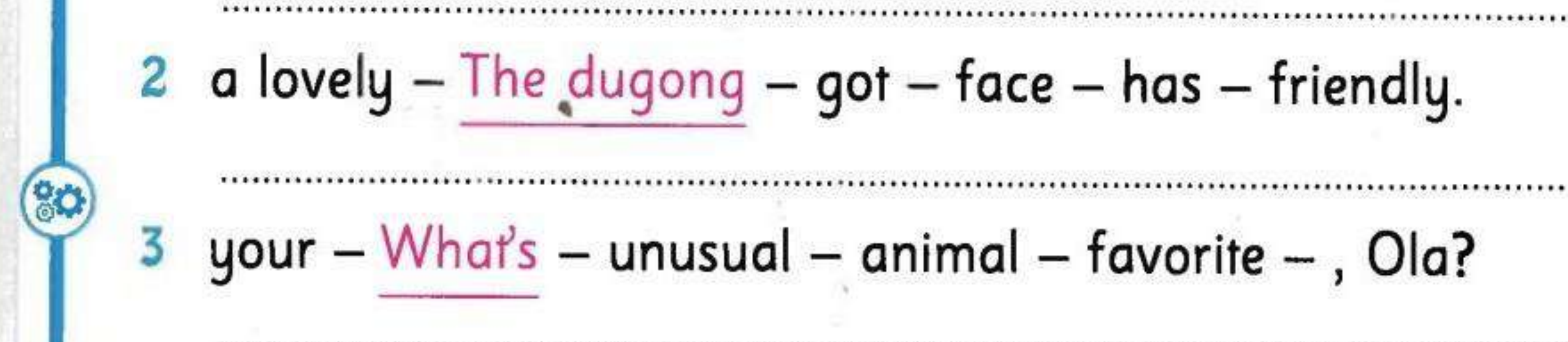
5 How long can the dugong live?

....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 a team – a week – on – I – once – play.

....



2 a lovely – The dugong – got – face – has – friendly.

....

3 your – What's – unusual – animal – favorite – , Ola?

....

4 sea – nickname – the – cow – dugong's – is – The.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

1 my favorite unusual animal is the dugong

....

2 What s your favorite unusual animal

....

6 Write an email of about THIRTY (30) words about your favorite unusual animal. Your name is Ali and your email address is ali@school.com. Your friend's name is Said and his email address is said@school.com.

مجاب عنه صفحة 255

It's from ... – It's got ..... – nickname

New message

From : ....

To : ....

Subject : ....

.... ,

....

....

....

Send





REVIEW

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التى وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

kangaroo	كنغر	panda	باندا
bat	خفاش	lion	أسد
penguin	بطريق	dolphin	دلفين
snail	حلزون	parrot	ببغاء
wildlife	الحياة البرية	shell	صَدفة
rainforest	الغابة الاستوائية	ocean	محيط
bamboo	نبات الخيزران	pouch	جراب

Lesson (2)

breeze	نسيم	useless	عديم الفائدة
ungrateful	غير شكور	comfortable	مريح
meeting point	نقطة التقاء	nuts	فول سودانى
trunk of a tree	جذع شجرة	branch of a tree	غصن شجرة
shade	ظل	exhausted	مرهق
travelers	مسافرون	dictionary	قاموس
fable	قصة خرافية (أسطورة)	shelter	ملجأ / مأوى

Lesson (3)

teacher	مُدرسة	reader	قارئ
climber	متسلق	footballer	لاعب كرة القدم
farmer	مزارع	traveler	مسافر
annoyed	منزعج	annoying	مزعج
interested	مهتم	interesting	مثير للاهتمام
amazed	مندهش	amazing	مدهش
surprised	متفاجئ	surprising	مدهش / مفاجئ
tired	تعبان	tiring	مُتعب

Lessons (4 & 5)

unusual	غير عادى	dugong	الأطوم
nickname	لقب	sea cow	بقرة البحر
sea bed	قاع البحر	email	رسالة بريد إلكترونى
cute	لطيف	grasslands	أراضٍ عشبية
habitat	مكان المعيشة	percent	نسبة مئوية
land surface	سطح الأرض	eagles	نسور
bison	(البيسون) الثور الأمريكى	polar	قطبى

Language Focus

Expressing ability in the present and the past:

1 can / can't

Form

Subject + can/can't + (inf.) ... .



I can play basketball.

Penguins can't fly.

Question

A: Can + subject + (inf.) ...?

OR B: Yes, subject + can.
B: No, subject + can't.



A: Can you play tennis?
B: Yes, I can.

A: Can she make a cake?
B: No, she can't.

2 could / couldn't

Form

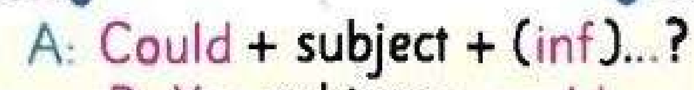
Subject + could/couldn't + (inf.) ...

When I was little, I could sit on my dad's knee.

I couldn't take the bus, so I had to walk.

Question



A: Could + subject + (inf.)...?

OR B: Yes, subject + could.
B: No, subject + couldn't.

A: Could he speak when he was six months old?
B: Yes, he could say "mama" and "dada!"



A: Could you ride a bike when you were three?
B: No, I couldn't.



CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

حلزون	....	كنغر	....
خفاش	....	بطريق	....
ببغاء	....	أسد	....
دلفين	....	باندا	....
حياة برية	....	صدفة	....
محيط	....	نبات الخيزران	....
جراب	....	ثلاجة	....

Lesson 2

جذع شجرة	....	غصن شجرة	....
فول سودانى	....	مرهق	....
قاموس	....	مسافرون	....
ملجأ/مأوى	....	ظل	....
تجار	....	جاحد (غير شكور)	....
نسيم	....	عديم الفائدة	....
مريح	....	نقطة التقاء	....

Lesson 3

مدرس	....	قارئ	....
متسلق	....	لاعب كرة القدم	....
زهرية	....	مزارع	....
بركان	....	غرب	....
سترة	....	آلة الكمان	....
طبيب بيطرى	....	مبتل	....
عجلة	....	حوت	....

Lessons 4 & 5

الأطوم	....	غير عادى	....
لقب	....	قاع البحر	....
ودود	....	أراض عشبية	....
مكان المعيشة	....	نسور	....
ذئاب	....	غابة	....
كوكب الأرض	....	قطبى	....

WRITING TIME




لكي تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about wildlife animals:

- (نوع من الحيوانات) live in (إسم المكان) ......
- (نوع من الحيوانات) have (أجزاء فى جسم الحيوان) .....
- (نوع من الحيوانات) + (أفعال خاصة بالحيوان) ......
- (نوع من الحيوانات) are (صفات خاصة بالحيوان) ......

Wildlife animals

Snails live in the garden. They have a shell. They don't have legs or arms. Kangaroos live in Australia. They jump on two legs. Penguins live on ice and snow. They are black and white. Birds live in the rainforest. They are very beautiful and colorful. Lions live in Africa. They are very big cats. They are very strong.

How to write about your visit to the wildlife park:

- I had a wonderful day out yesterday with (اسم شخص) .....
- I went to (المكان) ...
- (اسم الحيوان) were + صفة .....
- My favorites were (اسم الحيوان المفضل) ...
- They were (وصف الحيوان المفضل) ...

My visit to the wildlife park

I had a wonderful day out yesterday with my family. I went to the new wildlife park. The kangaroos were interesting. When they are little, they can sit inside their mom's pouch. My favorites were the parrots. They were so beautiful, and they could talk! Penguins were in a special place inside. It was cold, like a fridge.

How to write about an unusual animal:

- This week we're talking about (اسم الموضوع)...
- I think my favorite is (اسم الحيوان) .....
- (اسم الحيوان) live in (اسم المكان) ...
- They eat (اسم الأكل) ...
- They are (صفات خاصة بالحيوان) ...

An unusual animal

This week we're talking about an unusual animal at school. I think my favorite unusual animal from China is the panda. Pandas live in forests high in the mountains. They eat bamboo. They are black and white.



STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

يتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التى وردت بكتاب الوزارة.

1 Complete the summary with the words in the box:

project – sad – parrots – park – enjoyed – lions

Yesterday, Ramez went to a wildlife .... with his family. He .... it very much. They saw lots of different animals like ...., kangaroos, and penguins. He saw his favorite birds, the .... He was a bit .... because he didn't see the bats and he's doing a .... on them at school.

2 Circle the correct word:

1 I couldn't say anything in German last year, but now I ....

a) can b) can't c) could

2 Last year, he .... run very quickly, but now he can.

a) can't b) could c) couldn't

3 ....you play the piano when you were a child?

a) Can b) Could c) Couldn't

4 Sorry, I .... help you with your homework. I'm busy.

a) can b) can't c) could

3 Circle the correct word:

1 A breeze is a little wind / lake.

2 When something is useless, we can / can't use it.

3 When someone is ungrateful, they thank / don't thank others for doing something good.

4 When something is comfortable, it's nice / not nice to sit on or wear.

5 A meeting point is somewhere where people leave / meet.





Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (4)

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Hana's favorite animal is the ....
a) dog b) giraffe c) lion d) bat

2 Hana likes .... animals.
a) unusual b) small c) fast d) dangerous

3 Hana's favorite unusual animal is the ....
a) dugong b) elephant c) rabbit d) penguin

4 The dugong is from ....
a) England b) France c) Australia d) Egypt

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (1.5)

الجيزة - إدارة منشأة القناطر 2024

1 Parrots can ....
a) fly b) write. c) cook d) study

2 A .... is a bird. It can swim, but it can't fly.
a) kangaroo b) dolphin c) penguin d) panda

3 My uncle is a good .... He grows many crops every year. (SB)
a) teacher b) farmer c) traveler d) reader

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (1.5)

parrot – clever – habitat – bamboo

Penguins live on ice and snow. They are black and white. They can swim, but they can't fly. A ....(1)............ is a bird. It is very beautiful and colorful. It lives in the rainforest. Dolphins are very ....(2)............ . They swim in a group with their family in the ocean. Pandas live in China. They eat ....(3)............ .

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (7)

القاهرة - إدارة الزيتون 2024

Two men were walking along one hot summer day. At that time, they saw a large tree nearby, and they sat on the ground to <u>rest</u> in its shade. When they woke up, one of the two men was hungry. He said, "What a useless tree this is. It does not have fruit or nuts that we can eat." But the tree heard him and said, "Don't be so ungrateful; I gave you a cool, comfortable place to sleep, and I saved your life". The travelers looked around them, saw the tree was correct, and felt very sorry.

A **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1 The underlined word "rest" means ....

a) walk b) eat c) relax d) drink

2 The man was .... and wanted some fruit from the tree.

a) thirsty b) useless c) sorry d) hungry

B **Answer the following questions:**

3 How was the man ungrateful?

....

4 What did the tree give to the two men?

....

5 Summarize the text in two sentences.

....

Writing

5 **Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:** (1)

1 in – Snails – shells – live – their – can.

....

2 was – could – When – I – little, – run – I.

....

6 **Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:** (4)

1 I'm very .... (interesting) in history. القاهرة - إدارة حدائق القبة 2024

2 When I was six, I could .... (speaks) English. القاهرة - إدارة الوايلي 2024

7 **Punctuate the following:** (4)

1 i couldn't speak german last year. ....

2 what's your favorite room ....

8 **Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:** (7)

"A visit to a wildlife park"

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب صفحة 255

My favorite animals were – a special place

....

....

....





Assess your progress

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

Unit 9 AL-AZHAR CORNER

تحتوى هذه الصفحة على أسئلة خاصة بمواصفات الأزهر.

1 Read and complete the dialogue:

birds – wildlife – see – go

Marwan : Where did you .... yesterday?
Moaz : I went to the new .... park.
Marwan : What did you .... there?
Moaz : I saw kangaroos, ..., and lions.

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

Last Monday, Soha and Habiba went to the wildlife park with their friends. When they arrived; it was very hot in the park. They were surprised because it was such hot weather in October. They saw lots of different animals and birds, such as parrots, kangaroos, and penguins. Soha liked the penguins the best. Penguins are her favorite birds. She thinks they look funny with their white and black feathers. Habiba liked the pandas. They are huge with thick white and black fur. They liked how they *chew bamboo plants. Soha and Habiba had a nice time.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 It was such hot weather in the .... park.
a) wildlife b) theme c) city d) town

2 Parrots and penguins are ....
a) animals b) insects c) birds d) parks

3 Habiba liked the ....
a) bamboo b) pandas c) penguins d) parrots

B Answer the following questions:

4 What do penguins look like? ....

5 What do pandas eat? ....

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 can – Lions – very – run – fast. ....

2 can – French – I – speak. ....

3 don't – arms – legs – or – Snails – have. ....

4 unusual – My favorite – is – the dugong – animal. ....

5 grasslands – on – live – animals – Some. ....

*يمضغ

MARCH REVISION

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من المراجعة على محتوى شهر مارس.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Mom bakes wonderful cakes in the ....
a) television b) oven c) elevator d) armchair

2 My favorite place is the .... where I can see the whole street.
a) kitchen b) bathroom c) balcony d) elevator

3 There are traditional .... on the armchair.
a) closets b) ovens c) bedrooms d) cushions

4 I love to watch television with my family in the ....
a) shower b) bathroom c) living room d) kitchen

5 There are many .... of animals on the wall of my sister's bedroom.
a) beds b) posters c) desks d) armchairs

6 My parents have a big .... where they keep their clothes.
a) kitchen b) shower c) closet d) television

7 This chair is .... It doesn't feel nice to sit on.
a) uncomfortable b) unfriendly
c) unhappy d) unfair

8 Mona has a .... Maybe some honey with milk can help.
a) backache b) cough c) headache d) toothache

9 A .... is a very big cat. It is very strong. It lives in Africa.
a) bat b) snail c) parrot d) lion

10 When someone is ...., they don't thank others for doing something good.
a) sorry b) ungrateful c) sad d) exhausted

11 I didn't like the film. It was very ....
a) boring b) surprising c) interesting d) bored

12 Wolves live on grassland ....
a) chart b) sea c) habitat d) sea bed

13 The medical care you need to help you get better is called ....
a) illness b) injury c) wound d) treatment

14 The trees give us .... and shelter.
a) shade b) milk c) cotton d) meat

15 People in Ancient Egypt used .... to build their houses.
a) papyrus b) mud bricks c) reed mats d) baskets

16 .... live in China and eat bamboo.
a) Dogs b) Pandas c) Kangaroos d) Cats

17 I use the .... because I live on the 8^{th} floor. محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة طلخا التعليمية 2024

a) shower b) elevator c) armchair d) cushion

18 It's important to have a/an .... diet. محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة ميت سلسيل التعليمية 2024

a) unhealthy b) happy c) kind d) balanced

19 Ali had an accident and he had some .... all over his body.

محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة أجا التعليمية 2024

a) bees b) pills c) injuries d) bottles

20 Writing 100 words in a minute is .... محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة شرق المنصورة التعليمية 2024

a) unhappy b) immoral c) impossible d) unsafe

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A)

television – share – oven – move

My parents had to move to a new job. So we moved to a closer apartment. The new kitchen is bigger, and the ....(1)............ is more modern. My mom says it's much easier to cook in. We have a bigger ....(2)............ in the living room. We have three bedrooms now. I ....(3)............ a room with my sister, Amira.

B)

jump – bats – penguin – pouch

Sara and her friends went to the wildlife park last weekend. They saw many interesting animals. Sara thinks that kangaroos are amazing, they can ....(1)............ on two legs. When they are little, they can sit in their mom's ....(2)............. Sara saw many birds, too. Her favorite bird is the ....(3)........... It's black and white and looks funny.

القاهرة - السلام 2024

C)

basbousa – kill – wounds – heal

Honey isn't only a food. It's also treatment for some illnesses and injuries. It was first used to treat ....(1)............ around 5000 years ago. Some types of honey can ....(2)............ bacteria. This helps wounds to ....(3)............ quickly. The honey that doctors use is a special honey only that is safe to use as a treatment.

محافظة القاهرة - سلاسيل المطرية التعليمية 2024

D)

friends – research – loved – interested

My uncle is a scientist and loves animals. When he was younger, he traveled a lot in South America for work. He ....(1)............ being there because the people were friendly and helped him with his work. He was very ....(2)............ in howler monkeys and wanted to do ....(3)............ into their family groups.

محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة أجا التعليمية 2024

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 I visited Tanta when I .... (be) five.
2 Last year, Omar .... (can) play tennis.
3 He .... (meet) his teacher two weeks ago.
4 She .... (not want) to go to the party yesterday.
5 We .... (not be) at school last weekend.
6 Where .... (do) you go on your last vacation?
7 .... (Do) it rain yesterday in the morning?
8 I can .... (reading) English well. بنى سويف 2024
9 My cousins .... (has) a headache. Some pills can help.
10 Maryam ....(can't) take the bus, so she had to walk. أسيوط 2024
11 They .... (not have) an earache. They are fine.
12 We .... (could) go to the park now.
13 ....(Do) your dad have a stomachache?
14 She ....(have) a cold. محافظة الجيزة - إدارة العمرانية التعليمية 2024
15 Hany ....(meets) his friends at the club yesterday. محافظة الجيزة - إدارة العمرانية التعليمية 2024
16 The ....(travel) sat under the tree. القاهرة - المرج2024
17 I ....(go) to school yesterday. محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة المنزلة التعليمية 2024
18 He is sick. He ....(have) a headache. محافظة القاهرة - إدارة المطرية التعليمية 2024
19 I don't .... (felt) well, doctor. محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة السنبلاوين التعليمية 2024
20 She doesn't .... (has) a cut in her arm. محافظة البحر الأحمر - إدارة الغردقة التعليمية 2024
21 Nancy could .... (speaking) English. محافظة القليوبية - إدارة الخانكة التعليمية 2024
22 When she .... (be) two, she could use the tablet. محافظة أسيوط - إدارة منفلوط التعليمية 2024
23 He .... (can) use a computer last year. محافظة الجيزة - إدارة زايد التعليمية 2024

4 Punctuate the following:

1 what's your mom's favorite room

....

2 my uncle traveled to south America.

....

3 What's the matter adel?

....

4 Ancient egyptians used honey as a treatment

....

5 kangaroos live in australia.

....

6 where did you go

....

Unit 10

Let's visit Egypt

هيا نزور مصر



Unit Objectives

- **By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:** — **بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:**
  - listen, read, research, and write about places in a town. — يستمع ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن أماكن فى مدينة.
  - practice using the imperative to tell someone to do or not to do something, and to give directions. — يتدرب على استخدام صيغة الأمر لإخبار شخص ما أن يفعل أو لا يفعل شيئًا ما، وأن يعطى الاتجاهات.
  - practice using questions and short answers. — يتدرب على استخدام الأسئلة والإجابات القصيرة.
  - read and say words with diphthongs. — يقرأ ويقول الكلمات باستخدام الأصوات المتحركة المركبة.
  - estimate with mental math. — يقدّر باستخدام الرياضيات العقلية.
  - write a paragraph about his/her town. — يكتب فقرة عن مدينته.
  - make a poster about his/her perfect town. — يصمم ملصقًا عن مدينته المثالية.

Did you know?

- Fayoum is the oldest town in Egypt. *Archaeologists think it is more than 7,000 years old.

Find out!

- Today, the *population of Fayoum is *approximately 3.8 million. The population in Cairo where I live is about 22.6 million.

* archaeologists	علماء الآثار	* population	الكثافة السكانية	* approximately	تقريبًا



Lesson 1
We love Alexandria!
نحب الإسكندرية!



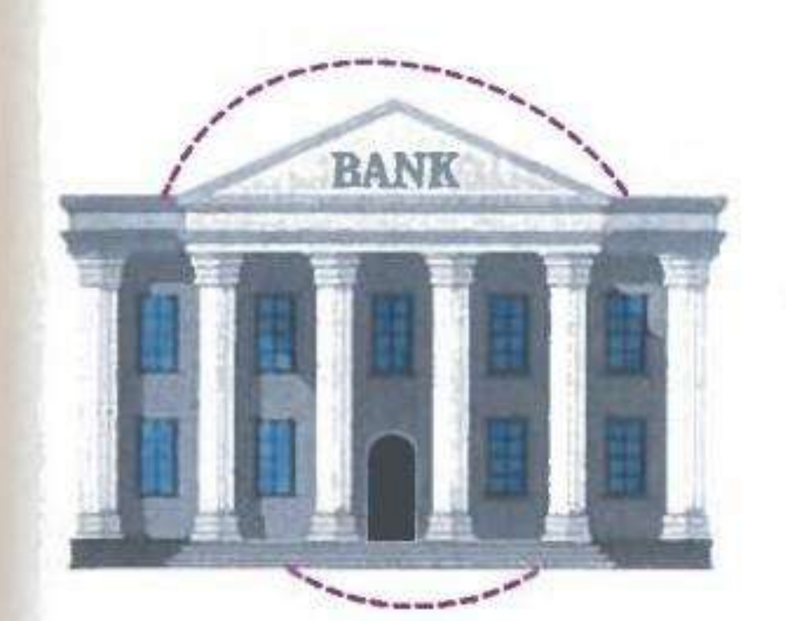


1. Listen, point, and say:





Main vocabulary



bank
بنك



factory
مصنع



monument
أثر



library
مكتبة



shopping mall
مركز للتسوق



square
ميدان



station
محطة

Extra vocabulary

stores	متاجر (محلات)	markets	أسواق	museum	متحف
beach	شاطئ	tourist	سائح	Germany	ألمانيا
cool (adj.)	رائع	sweet (adj.)	حلو (المذاق)	roof garden	حديقة السطح
mint tea	شاى بالنعناع	relaxing (adj.)	مريح	restaurant	مطعم
local (adj.)	محلى	cuisine	مأكولات	traditional (adj.)	تقليدى
lovely (adj.)	جميل	fresh (adj.)	طازج	ingredients	مكونات
friendly (adj.)	ودود	originally	فى الأصل	vacation	إجازة
Barcelona	برشلونة	modern (adj.)	حديث	mix	مزيج
buildings	مبانى	culture	ثقافة	traditions	عادات

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
chat	يتحادث	chatted	own	يملك	owned
serve	يقدم (الطعام)	served	prefer	يفضل	preferred
remind	يُذكّر	reminded	borrow	يستعير	borrowed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
think	يعتقد	thought	sit	يجلس	sat
drink	يشرب	drank	buy	يشترى	bought

Expressions and Phrases

I haven't been to any yet.	لم أذهب إلى أى منها حتى الآن.	all my life	طوال حياتى
have to	يجب أن	spend ages	يقضى الكثير من الوقت
walk around	يتجول	move to	ينتقل إلى
on vacation	فى إجازة	find out about	يكتشف / يتعرف على
show (someone) around	يأخذ (شخصًا ما) فى جولة ...	(be) turned into	يتحول إلى

Important sentences جمل هامة

* Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. الإسكندرية مكان رائع حقًا لزيارته.
* Jens loves sitting in the roof garden drinking Egyptian mint tea.
يحب جينس الجلوس فى حديقة السطح وشرب الشاى بالنعناع المصرى.
* Hanan owns a restaurant and serves traditional Egyptian food using lovely fresh local ingredients.
تمتلك حنان مطعمًا وتقدم المأكولات المصرية التقليدية باستخدام المكونات المحلية الطازجة الرائعة.
* Kira and Lena love the shopping malls and spend ages walking around them.
تحب كيرا ولينا مراكز التسوق ويقضيان وقتًا طويلاً فى التجول حولها.
* Karim loves to go to the beach in summer and swim there.
كريم يحب الذهاب إلى الشاطئ فى الصيف والسباحة هناك.
* Paulo likes Alexandria because it reminds him of home – a big, modern city near the sea.
يحب باولو الإسكندرية لأنها تذكره بموطنه - مدينة كبيرة وحديثة بالقرب من البحر.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 My dad went to the (square – bank – library – station) to get some money.
2 Sara went to the (square – factory – station – shopping mall) and bought some amazing clothes.
3 I like reading at the (bank – factory – library – station). It's often quiet.
4 I always take the train at the (square – station – factory – library) to Alexandria.
5 Milk and eggs are the main (markets – ingredients – culture – stores) to make a cake.
6 My sister is very (sad – angry – friendly – bad). She is always nice to people.



2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Why we love Alexandria!

لماذا نحب الإسكندرية!



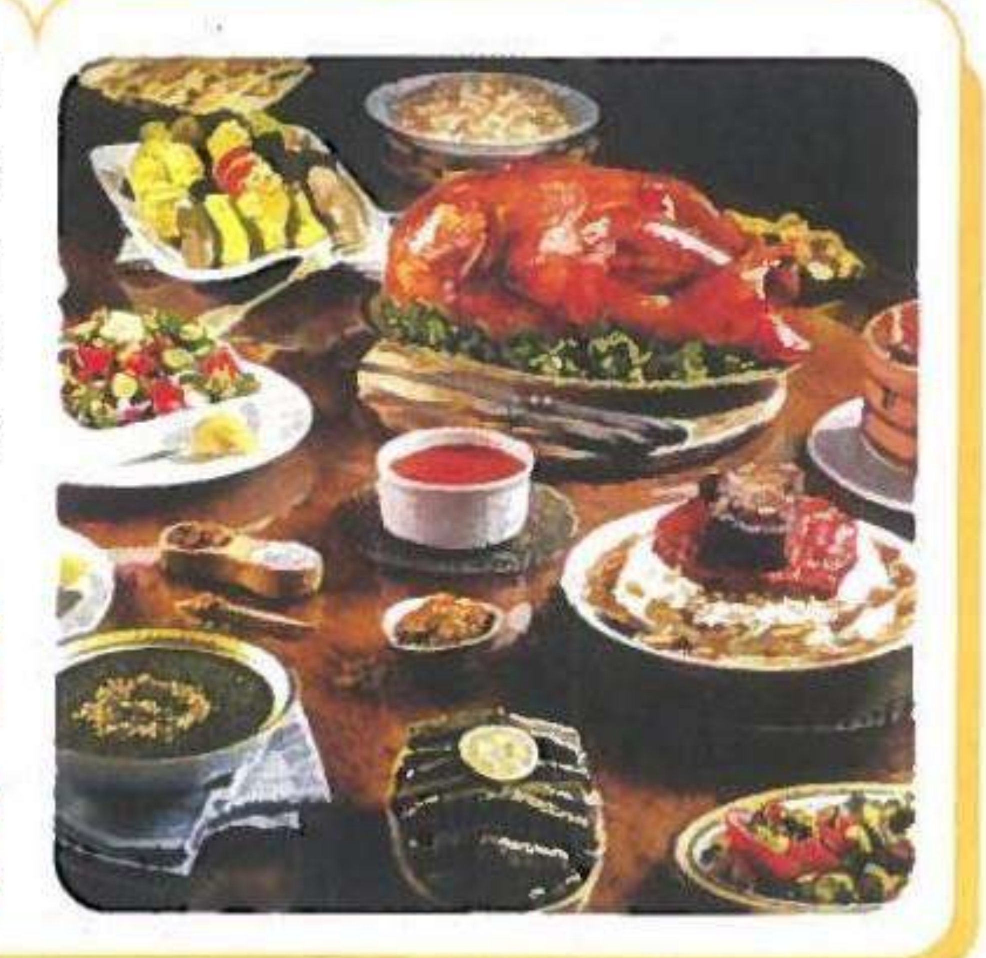
Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. There's a lot to see and do here! It's a big city with lots of amazing restaurants, stores, markets, and museums. There's even a beach!
We asked some people who live there and tourists what they think ...

الإسكندرية مكان رائع للزيارة. هناك الكثير لتراه وتفعله هنا! إنها مدينة كبيرة بها العديد من المطاعم والمتاجر والأسواق والمتاحف الرائعة. حتى إن هناك شاطئًا! سألنا بعض الناس الذين يعيشون هناك والسياح عما يعتقدونه ...



Jens: I'm visiting Alexandria from Germany. I think it's really cool here. I think there are some good museums, but I haven't been to any yet. I love just sitting in the roof garden of my hotel, drinking sweet Egyptian mint tea and chatting to other people. It's very relaxing.

أزور الإسكندرية من ألمانيا. الأمر حقًا رائع هنا. أعتقد أنه يوجد بعض المتاحف الجيدة، ولكنى لم أذهب إلى أى منها حتى الآن. أحب فقط الجلوس فى حديقة السطح الخاصة بالفندق، وأشرب الشاى بالنعناع المصرى اللذيذ، وأتحدث مع أشخاص آخرين. إنه أمر مريح جدًّا.



Hanan: I've lived in Alexandria all my life. I own a restaurant here so I have to say that you must visit my restaurant to try some of the local cuisine. We serve traditional Egyptian food using lovely fresh local ingredients. We have excellent supermarkets, but I prefer to buy my ingredients at the market in the old town.

عشت فى الإسكندرية طوال حياتى. أمتلك مطعمًا هنا ؛ ولذلك يتوجب علىَّ دعوتك لزيارة المطعم لتجرب بعض المأكولات المحلية. نحن نقدم مأكولات مصرية تقليدية باستخدام مكونات محلية طازجة وجميلة. لدينا العديد من المتاجر الرائعة ولكنى أفضل شراء المكونات من سوق المدينة القديمة.

Kira and Lena: We're from a small town in England. The stores aren't very good there. That's what we love most about Alexandria – the shopping malls! We spend ages walking around them. We like the people. They are so friendly!



نحن من مدينة صغيرة فى إنجلترا. المتاجر ليست جيدة جدًّا هناك. هذا أكثر شىء نحبه فى الإسكندرية - مراكز التسوق! يمكننا قضاء الكثير من الوقت فى التجول حولها. نحن نحب الناس. هم ودودون جدًّا!



Karim: I'm Egyptian, originally from Cairo. I moved to Alexandria last year and I love it here. I work in a bank.
My favorite place is the beach – there isn't one in Cairo! It can get very hot here in summer, so it's great to go there and swim.

أنا مصرى، فى الأصل من القاهرة. انتقلت إلى الإسكندرية العام الماضى، وأحب المكان هنا. أنا أعمل فى بنك. مكانى المفضل هو الشاطئ - لا يوجد شاطئ فى القاهرة! يمكن أن يصبح الجو حارًا جدًا فى الصيف، لذلك من الرائع الذهاب إلى هناك والسباحة.



Paulo: I'm on vacation here from Barcelona. I like Alexandria because it reminds me of home – a big, modern city near the sea. I love the mix of modern and old buildings. Also, I like to find out about the culture and traditions.
The library is amazing!

أنا فى إجازة هنا من برشلونة. أحب الإسكندرية؛ لأنها تذكرنى بموطنى - مدينة كبيرة وحديثة بالقرب من البحر. أحب هذا المزيج من المبانى الحديثة والقديمة. كما أحب أيضًا اكتشاف الثقافة والتقاليد. المكتبة رائعة!

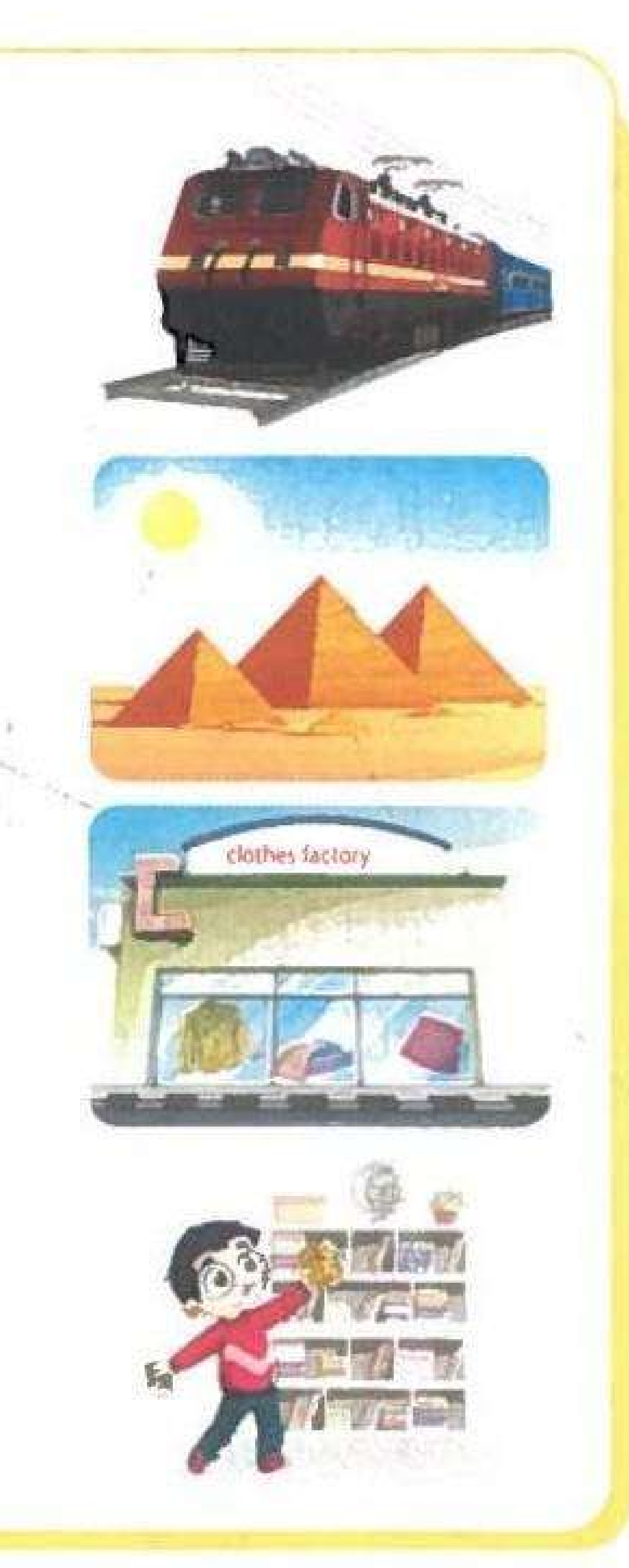
Listening script page 72 

هذا النص مأخوذ من كتاب دليل المعلم.



3. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Sara: I'm going to visit my aunt and uncle. We're going by train.

سأزور عمتى وعمى. نحن ذاهبون بالقطار.

Ahmed: My cousin is visiting us and we're going to show him around. He's never seen the Pyramids.

ابن عمى سيقوم بزيارتنا وسوف نأخذه فى جولة. لم يسبق له أن رأى الأهرامات.

Dina: We went on a school trip to find out how cotton is turned into clothes like T-shirts and dresses.

ذهبنا فى رحلة مدرسية لمعرفة كيف يتم تحويل القطن إلى ملابس مثل التيشرتات والفساتين.

Youssef: I want to borrow some books.

أريد استعارة بعض الكتب.



Lesson 1



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Kira and Lena are visiting .... this week.
a) Luxor b) Alexandria c) Cairo d) Aswan

2 They are from a small town in ....
a) France b) America c) England d) kings

3 There are many .... and shopping malls in Alexandria.
a) seas b) people c) stores d) buildings

4 People in Alexandria are so ....
a) noisy b) quiet c) friendly d) fresh

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 A ....is a place where we read and borrow books. القاهرة - إدارة بدر 2024
a) hospital b) zoo c) library d) park

2 We went to the .... to find out how cotton is turned into clothes.
a) factory b) square c) mall d) museum

3 Tourists like to visit museums to watch ....
a) clothes b) trains c) restaurants d) monuments

4 It's great to go to the .... and swim when it's hot.
a) market b) beach c) store d) garden

5 I'm on .... in Germany. It's my summer holiday.
a) project b) vacation c) traditions d) cultures

6 I like to add .... to tea.
a) mint b) oil c) fish d) chicken

7 I always go to the .... to buy vegetables.
a) museum b) market c) station d) factory

8 Many .... come to visit Egypt every year.
a) traditions b) ingredients c) tourists d) buildings

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

food – local – eat – restaurant

الدقهلية - إدارة شرق المنصورة 2024

I've lived in Mansoura all my life. I own a ....(1)............... here, so I have to say that you must visit my restaurant to try some of the ....(2)........... cuisine. We serve traditional Egyptian ....(3)........... using lovely fresh local ingredients. We have excellent supermarkets, but I prefer to buy ingredients at the market in the old town.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Paulo is from Barcelona. He is on vacation in Alexandria this summer. Paulo likes to spend the summer in Alexandria because there are many things to see and do there. He stays in a big hotel with a small roof garden on top. He likes to sit there, drink sweet Egyptian mint tea, and chat with other people. He likes to visit local restaurants from time to time to try some of the traditional Egyptian cuisine. They are usually made from lovely, fresh ingredients. Paulo likes the people in Alexandria. They are so friendly!

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Paulo likes to drink Egyptian .... on the roof garden.

a) water b) mint tea c) juice d) coffee

2 The underlined word "cuisine" means ....

a) stores b) markets c) foods d) clothes

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where is Paulo from?

....

4 Where does Paulo stay in Alexandria?

....

5 Why does Paulo like to visit local restaurants?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 a really – place – is – Alexandria – exciting. القاهرة - إدارة حدائق القبة 2024

....

2 is – There – my – station – in – town – a big. الدقهلية - إدارة غرب المنصورة التعليمية 2024

....

3 from – a small – They're – in – town – England.

....

4 likes – mint – Nour – drinking – tea – Egyptian.

....

6 Punctuate the following:

1 why do you go to alexandria? الدقهلية - إدارة غرب المنصورة التعليمية 2024

....

2 many tourists come to visit egypt. القاهرة - إدارة روض الفرج 2024

....



Lesson 2





Don't Run in the Library لا تجرِ داخل المكتبة



1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

Alexandria Library	مكتبة الإسكندرية	elevator	مصعد (أسانسير)	button	زر
Children's Library	مكتبة الأطفال	trash	قمامة	cell phone	هاتف محمول
librarian	أمين المكتبة	trash can	سلة القمامة	instructions	تعليمات

Extra vocabulary

amazing (adj.)	مذهل/ مدهش	quietly	بهدوء	late (adj.)	متأخر
oven	فرن	loudly	بصوت عالٍ	environment	البيئة
directions	اتجاهات	post office	مكتب البريد	road	طريق

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعــال منتظمــة

Present		Past	Present		Past
push	يدفع	pushed	pick	يلتقط / يقطف	picked
waste	يهدر / يضيع	wasted	return	يعود / يُعيد	returned

Irregular verbs أفعــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
run	يجرى	ran	sit	يجلس	sat
choose	يختار	chose	bring	يُحضر	brought

Expressions and Phrases

go inside	يدخل	Wait a moment.	انتظر لحظة.
Let's go in	هيا ندخل	go upstairs	يذهب للطابق العلوى
Stand back.	ارجع للخلف	go up	يصعد
Stand up!	قف!	Have fun!	استمتع!
Sit down.	اجلس.	pick up	يقطف/ يلتقط
waste time	يهدر الوقت	have to	يجب أن
bring back	يُعيد	in two weeks	في خلال أسبوعين
keep ... clean	يُبقى (مكان) نظيفًا	ask for	يطلب
get to...	يصل إلى (مكان)	Turn right!	انعطف يمينًا!
Cross the road.	اعبر الطريق.	go straight (on)	اتجه للأمام مباشرةً
on your right	على يمينك	on the left	على اليسار
excuse me	من فضلك	across from	على الجانب الآخر



2. Listen, read, and role-play:





استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Teacher

OK, children. We're here now. This is The Alexandria Library.

حسنًا يا أطفال. نحن هنا الآن. هذه مكتبة الإسكندرية.





Reem

Wow! It's amazing. Can we go inside?

رائع! شيء مذهل. هل يمكننا الدخول؟

Teacher

Wait a moment, is everybody here? Yes. OK. Let's go in.

انتظر لحظة، هل الجميع هنا؟ نعم. حسنًا. هيا ندخل.



Ali

I'm going first!

أنا ذاهب أولًا!

Teacher

Don't run, Ali. Walk quietly. This is a very important place.

لا تركض يا على. امشِ بهدوء. هذا مكان مهم جدًّا.



Ali

I'm sorry.

أنا آسف.



Noha

Can we go upstairs to the Children's Library?

هل يمكننا الصعود إلى مكتبة الأطفال؟





Teacher

Yes. Go into the elevator. Good. Stand back. The doors are closing. Don't jump up and down, Ali! Push the number one button, Tarek. Great, thank you. We're going up!

نعم. اذهبوا إلى المصعد. جيد. ارجعوا للخلف. الأبواب تغلق. لا تقفز لأعلى ولأسفل يا على! ادفع الزر رقم واحد يا طارق. رائع، شكرًا لك. وهانحن نتحرك نصعد!



3. Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



1



Excuse me, how do I get to the station?

من فضلك، كيف أصل إلى المحطة؟



Go straight. Do not turn left at Park Avenue. Turn left onto Station Road and the station is on your right. It's across from the hospital.

اتجهة للأمام مباشرةً. لا تنعطف يسارًا عند Park Avenue. انعطف يسارًا إلى Station Road وستكون المحطة على يمينك. إنها على الجانب الآخر من المستشفى.



Thank you.

شكراً لك.

2



Excuse me, where is the supermarket?

من فضلك، أين السوبر ماركت؟



Ah, go straight on Main Street. Go over Park Avenue and Station Road. Turn right onto High Street and the supermarket is on your right.

اه، اذهب مباشرة إلى Main Street. اذهب إلى Park Avenue و Station Road . انعطف يمينًا إلى High Street وستجد السوبر ماركت على يمينك.



That's great. Thank you very much.

ذلك رائع. شكراً جزيلاً.

3



Excuse me, is there a café near here?

من فضلك، هل يوجد مقهى قريب من هنا؟



Yes, there is. Go straight on Main Street. Don't turn right into Park Avenue, but turn right onto Station Road. You'll see a bookstore on your left. The cafe is next to the bookstore.

نعم ، هناك. اتجه للأمام مباشرةً إلى Main Street. لا تنعطف يمينًا إلى Park Avenue، بل انعطف يمينًا إلى Station Road. سترى مكتبة على يسارك. المقهى بجوار محل بيع الكتب.



Many thanks.

شكراً جزيلاً.

B Language Focus

1. Imperatives صيغة الأمر

- We use "imperatives" to tell someone to do or not to do something.

نستخدم صيغة الأمر لنقول لشخص ما أن يفعل أو لا يفعل شيئًا ما.

- Imperatives don't usually begin with a subject like "you, she or they". Imperatives usually start with a verb.

صيغة الأمر عادة لا تبدأ بفاعل مثل «أنت، هى أو هم». صيغة الأمر عادة تبدأ بالفعل.

Form:

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات :

Use the "infinitive" without "to":

نستخدم "infinitive" (الفعل فى المصدر) بدون "to":

Infinitive (الفعل فى المصدر) ... .

e.g.



Please, pick up that trash.

من فضلك، التقط تلك القمامة.



Sit down.

أجلسوا.

Negative Form: صيغة النفى:

Use "don't + infinitive" without "to":

نستخدم "don't + infinitive" بدون "to":

don't + infinitive (الفعل فى المصدر) ... .

e.g.



Please, don't talk loudly.

من فضلكم، لا تتحدثوا بصوت عالٍ.



Don't eat in the library, please.

لا تأكل فى المكتبة، من فضلك.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1. Please, (sits – sit – sat – sitting) down.
2. (Doesn't – Didn't – Don't – Doing) waste your time.
3. Don't (was – is – are – be) late tomorrow.
4. (Be – Is – Was – Has) careful! You may fall down.
5. Don't (jumped – jump – jumps – jumping) up and down.
6. (To put – Put – Puts – Putting) the cake in the oven, please. SB

2. Asking for and giving directions السؤال والإجابة عن الاتجاهات

When we ask for directions, we say:

عندما نسأل عن الاتجاهات، نقول:

Excuse me, how do I get to + place (المكان)?	Where is the + place (المكان), please?	Is there + a/an place (مكان) + near here?

We use the imperative to give instructions:

نستخدم الأمر لإعطاء التعليمات:

e.g. Go straight. / Cross the road. / Turn right/left.

e.g.



A: Excuse me, how do I get to the library, please?

عذرًا، كيف أصل إلى المكتبة رجاءً؟



B: Go straight, turn right. It's on your left.

اتجه مباشرة ثم انعطف يمينًا. إنه على يسارك.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 Excuse me, (where – who – what – how) do I get to the supermarket?

2 A: (What – When – How – Where) is the music room?
B: Go Straight, it's on your left.

3 (Is – Are – Do – Does) there a museum near here?

4 (Goes – Go – Went – Going) straight, the museum is on your right.

5 A: Excuse me, (what – when – where – what) is the art class?
B: It's on the left.

6 Go straight, (turns – turned – turn – turning) right. It's on the corner.



Lesson 2



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 I visited the Alexandria .... last week.
a) Station b) Square c) Library d) Museum

2 We use .... to go up and down floors. القاهرة - إدارة حدائق القبة 2024
a) elevators b) TVs c) closets d) ovens

3 Push the .... to make the machine work.
a) button b) place c) cell phone d) trash can

4 You should walk .... inside the hospital.
a) loudly b) quietly c) back d) down

5 A: How do I .... to the library? B: Turn right. It's on your left.
a) read b) waste c) get d) pick

6 Don't talk .... Be quiet, please.
a) slow b) loudly c) polite d) quite

7 The library is the place where we can .... books. الدقهلية - إدارة غرب المنصورة 2024
a) buy b) sell c) borrow d) write

8 My father is a .... He helps children find books at the library.
a) vet b) teacher c) librarian d) doctor

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

on – left – across – at

This is the Alexandria Library. It's amazing. To get to the library from the station, go straight. Turn ....(1)............ at the end of the road. Then, turn right. The library is ....(2)............ the left. The entrance of the shopping mall is ....(3)............ from you. Just cross the road.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 do – How – the – to – museum – I – get? الدقهلية - غرب شبرا الخيمة 2024

....

2 here – library – a – there – Is – near? القاهرة - إدارة هليوبليس 2024

....

3 borrow – I – books – to – want – some. القاهرة - روض الفرج 2024

....

4 up – down, – Ali – Don't – and – jump.

....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 .... (Helps) your parents at home.
2 .... (Played) quietly!
3 .... (Didn't) run in the corridors.
4 Don't .... (is) late!
5 Please, ... (putting) the spoons on the table.
6 Ali, ... (doesn't) make so much noise.
7 Don't .... (forgets) to call me.
8 Where .... (are) the clothes store?
9 Please, Ali, ... (didn't) eat in the class.
10 Don't .... (shouts). Speak quietly.
11 .... (Are) there a library near here?
12 We are going. Please, ... (got) ready in 10 minutes.
13 Don't .... (smoking) here.
14 .... (Took) your medicine before you go to bed.

5 Punctuate the following:

1 is there a station near here

....

2 don't walk on the grass

....

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

"The Alexandria Library"

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب صفحة 256

place – amazing – books

....

....

....

....

....



Lesson 3





Story



1. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

lost (adj.)	تائه/ مفقود	ibis	طائر أبو منجل	strange-looking (adj.)	غريب المنظر
creature	مخلوق	jerboa	الجربوع	foolish (adj.)	أحمق

Extra vocabulary

villager	قروى	beans	فول	sack	شوال/ كيس
land	أرض (اليابسة)	branches	فروع	truth	الحقيقة
unkindly	بقسوة	crowds	الجماهير	funny-looking (adj.)	مضحك المنظر
enormous (adj.)	ضخم	rudely	بطريقة وقحة/ بقسوة	stranger	غريب
sounds	أصوات	market traders	تجار السوق	dark (adj.)	مظلم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعــال منتظمــة

Present		Past	Present		Past
recognize	يتعرف على	recognized	pretend	يتظاهر	pretended
entertain	يسلى	entertained	reply	يرد	replied
call	يصيح	called	apologize	يعتذر	apologized
offer	يعرض	offered	behave	يتصرف	behaved

Irregular verbs أفعــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
sell	يبيع	sold	give	يعطى	gave
begin	يبدأ	began	know	يعرف	knew
hear	يسمع	heard	understand	يفهم	understood
learn	يتعلم	learnt	take	يأخذ	took

Expressions and Phrases

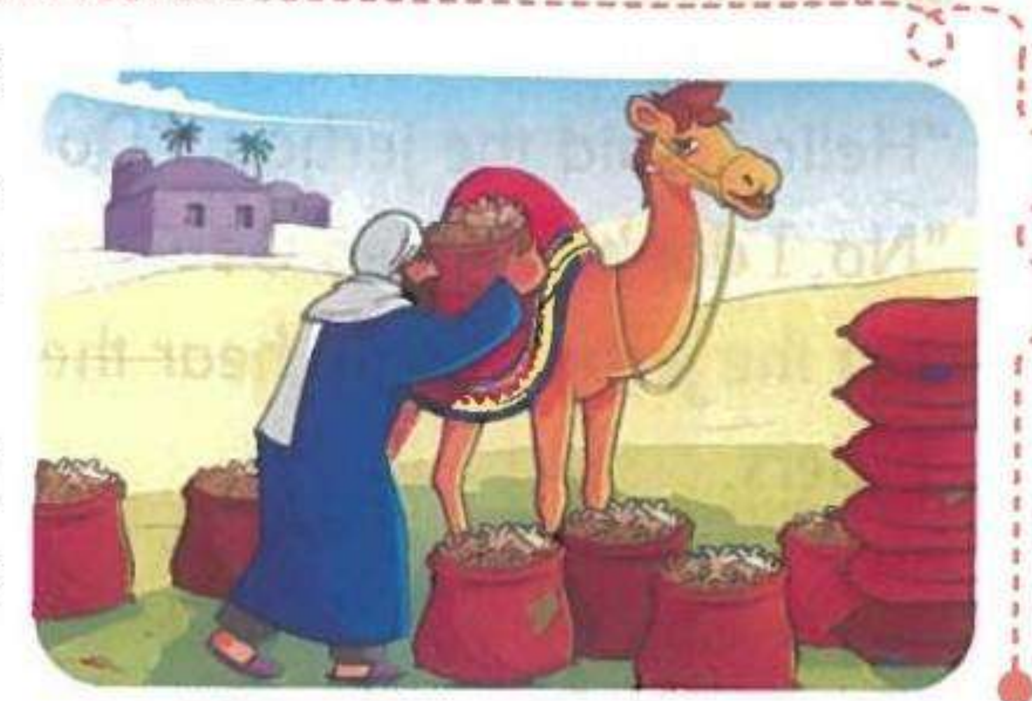
walk far	يمشى بعيدًا	along the road	على طول الطريق
fly high above	يطير لأعلى فوق	tell him the way	يخبره بالطريق
look lost	يبدو تائهًا	tell the truth	يقول الحقيقة
anyway	على أى حال	even if	حتى لو
get dark	تظلم (يصبح الجو مظلمًا)	in front of	أمام
completely dark	مظلمة تمامًا	At the start, ...	فى البداية، ...
go alone	يذهب بمفرده	ask for help	يطلب المساعدة



Gabi Learns A Lesson جابى يتعلم درسًا

2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

The beginning



One day, a villager wanted to sell his beans in the market, but he couldn't walk far. His camel, Gabi, said, "Give me the sacks of beans – I will take them to the market for you."
Gabi walked along the road. He turned left and then right and then left again. Soon, Gabi didn't recognize the road.

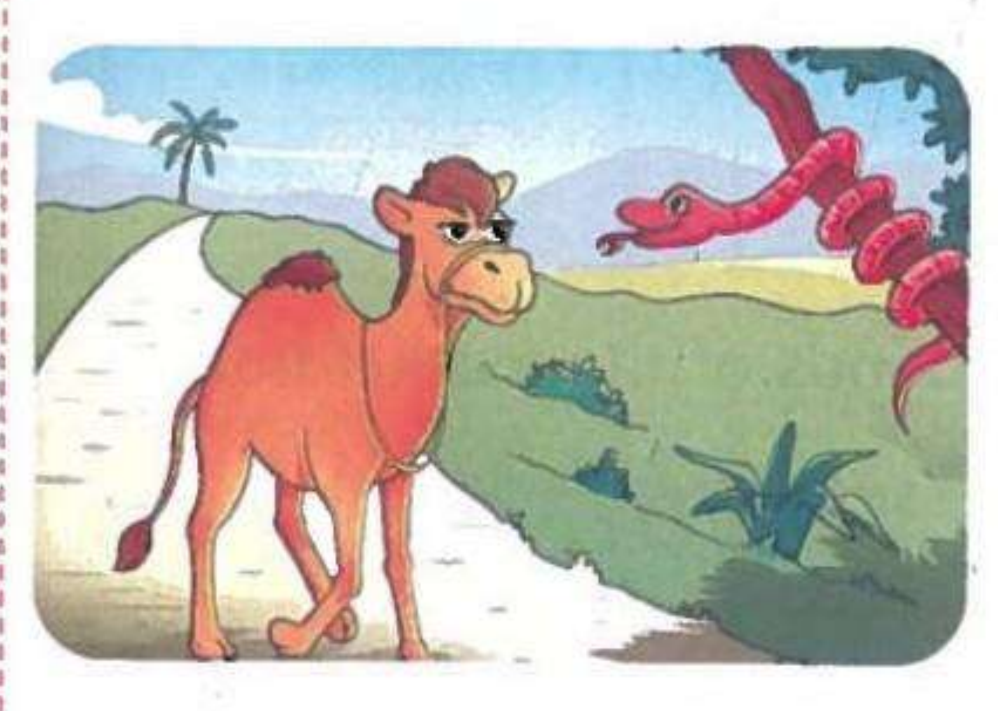
فى يوم من الأيام أراد أحد القرويين أن يبيع الفول فى السوق. لكنه لم يستطع أن يمشى بعيدًا. قال جابى الجمل الخاص به «دعنى آخذ أشولة الفول- ساخذها إلى السوق من أجلك». مشى جابى على طول الطريق. انعطف يسارًا ثم يمينًا ثم يسارًا مرة أخرى. بعدها لم يتعرف جابى على الطريق.

The middle

"Are you lost?" called an ibis. Gabi had never seen such a strange-looking bird.
"No, I'm not lost," pretended Gabi. Gabi didn't know that the ibis could fly high above the land and tell him the way.



«هل أنت تائه؟» صاح طائر أبو منجل. لم ير جابى من قبل طائرًا غريب الشكل كهذا. «لا. أنا لست تائهًا.» تظاهر جابى ولم يكن يعرف أن طائر أبو منجل يستطيع أن يطير فوق الأرض ويخبره بالطريق.

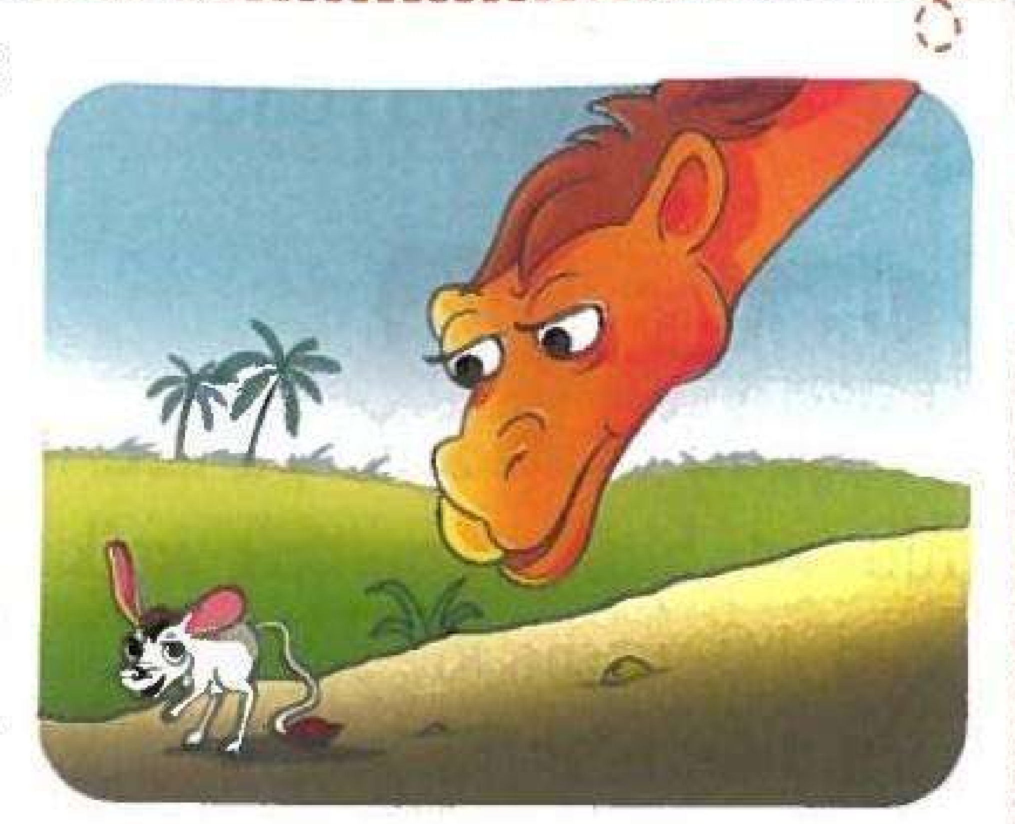


Gabi saw a snake watching him from the branches of a tree.
"You look lost," said the snake.
"No, I'm not," said Gabi – again he wasn't telling the truth.
"Anyway, even if I was, you can't help – you haven't even got legs," he said unkindly. Gabi didn't know that the snake went to the market every day to entertain the crowds.

رأى جابى ثعبانًا يشاهده من على أغصان الشجرة. «تبدو تائها!» قال الثعبان. «لا، أنا لست تائهًا.» قال جابى - مرة أخرى لم يكن يقول الحقيقة. «على أى حال فحتى لو كنت تائهًا، لما استطعت مساعدتى - أنت ليست لديك أرجل حتى»، قال جابى بقسوة. لم يكن جابى يعرف أن الثعبان يذهب إلى السوق كل يوم ليقوم بعروض لتسلية الجماهير.

The end

It began to get dark. Gabi saw a little animal on the road in front of him.



"What a funny-looking creature. Look at those enormous ears," he thought to himself.
"Hello," said the jerboa. "Do you need any help?"
"No, I don't!" replied Gabi rudely. Gabi didn't know that the jerboa could hear the sounds of the market traders.

"OK, good night then," called the jerboa.
Soon, it was completely dark and Gabi understood he needed the animals' help. He knew he was foolish and he was sorry. He decided to go to sleep, and to apologize and to ask for their help the next day.

بدأ الجو يظلم. رأى جابى حيوانًا صغيرًا على الطريق أمامه. «ياله من مخلوق مضحك الشكل. انظروا إلى هذه الأذن الضخمة.» فكر جابى مع نفسه. «مرحبًا، هل تحتاج إلى أى مساعدة؟» قال الجربوع. «لا . لا أحتاج» رد جابى بطريقة فظة ولم يكن يعرف أن الجربوع يمكنه أن يسمع أصوات تجار المدينة. «حسنًا إذن، ليلة سعيدة.» صاح الجربوع. سريعًا أصبح الجو مظلمًا تمامًا، وفهم جابى أنه يحتاج لمساعدة تلك الحيوانات. عرف أنه كان أحمق وشعر بالأسف. قرر جابى أن ينام ويعتذر لتلك الحيوانات ويطلب مساعدتها فى اليوم التالى.

The moral of the story الدرس الأخلاقى من القصة

Asking for help is good.

طلب المساعدة أمر جيد.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 The jerboa could (call – hear – see – draw) the sounds of the market traders.
2 Gabi saw a snake watching him from the (beach – sea – tree – desert).
3 Ibis is a strange-looking (bird – animal – insect – man).
4 Gabi knew he was foolish and he was (nice – happy – hungry – sorry).
5 Asking for help is (terrible – good – bad – useless).





3. Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:



The same sound is sometimes spelled in different ways:

يتم تهجئة نفس الصوت أحيانًا بطرق مختلفة:

e.g. eight - ate

/əʊ/	/aɪ/	/ɔɪ/	/eɪ/
go يذهب	bite قضمة / عضة	boy ولد	make يصنع
show يعرض	right يمين	toy لعبة	play يلعب
below أسفل	time وقت	coin عملة	ache ألم
grow يزرع	bike دراجة	enjoy يستمتع	eight ثمانية
wrote كَتَبَ	write يكتب	point يشير إلى	bake يخبز





4. Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

An estimated answer isn't the actual answer. It's a good guess.

الإجابة التقديرية ليست الإجابة الحقيقية ولكنها تخمين جيد.

e.g.

1 How much will ten tomatoes, five carrots, and two eggplants be, please?

كم سيكون سعر عشر ثمرات من الطماطم ، خمس جزرات وثمرتين من الباذنجان، من فضلك؟

2 They will be around 50 Egyptian pounds.

سيكون السعر حوالى 50 جنيهًا.

-5- -4- -3- -8- -6- -3- -4- -5-



We can use the following expressions to talk about estimated answers:

يمكن استخدام التعبيرات التالية للتحدث عن الإجابات التقديرية :

- It's around ... . - It's about .... . - It's near .... . - It's close to ... .

بمعنى "تقريبًا/حوالى".

Practice Lesson 3



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Gabi, the ...., was lost.

a) sheep b) goat c) camel d) horse

2 The jerboa has such enormous ....

a) nose b) mouth c) eyes d) ears

3 Gabi refused any ....

a) help b) food c) water d) money

4 He knew he was ...., and he was sorry.

a) clever b) foolish c) nice d) polite

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 When we make a mistake, we should ....

a) offer b) apologize c) recognize d) begin

2 He is foolish. He speaks ....

a) nicely b) rudely c) politely d) well

3 The snake has no ....

a) head b) mouth c) legs d) eyes

4 I went to the doctor because I had a/an ....

a) ache b) toy c) coin d) bike

5 I got .... yesterday. I couldn't find my way to the market.

a) nice b) lost c) strange d) foolish

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Gabi is a helpful camel. He took the sack of beans to sell it for the villager. On his way to the market, he got lost. First, Gabi met an ibis. The ibis offered to help the camel, as he could fly above the land and tell him the way. But Gabi pretended he wasn't lost and refused any help. Then Gabi met a snake. The snake offered to help, as he went to the market every day to entertain the crowds. Gabi refused any help, and he was unkind to the snake.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The .... could fly above the land and tell him the way.

a) camel b) snake c) villager d) ibis

2 The underlined word "entertain" means to make people feel ....

a) happy b) sad c) tired d) sick

B Answer the following questions:

3 How is Gabi helpful?

....

4 Who offered to help Gabi?

....

5 How can the ibis help Gabi?

....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 villager – A – to – beans – sell – wanted.

....

2 could – land – The ibis – the – above – fly.

....

3 the – Gabi – telling – truth – wasn't.

....

4 you – any – Do – help – need?

....

5 Punctuate the following:

1 no, I'm not lost

....

2 You haven t even got legs

....

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب صفحة 256

"Asking for help"

What was the problem?
Who could help you?
How could you thank them at the end?

....

....

....

....



Lessons 4 & 5

Writing & Project





A Writing



1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

tourist attractions	أماكن جذب سياحية	Buckingham Palace	قصر باكينجهام
theater	مسرح	British Museum	المتحف البريطانى
relaxing (adj.)	مريح	River Thames	نهر التايمز
delicious (adj.)	لذيذ	International Park	الحديقة الدولية
Archaeological Center	المركز الأثرى	treasures	كنوز

Extra vocabulary

fun (adj.)	ممتع	amazing (adj.)	مذهل
famous (adj.)	مشهور	boat trip	جولة بالقارب
bridge	كوبرى	restaurant	مطعم
location	موقع	history	تاريخ
culture	ثقافة	art	فن
beautiful (adj.)	جميل	fascinating (adj.)	ساحر / جذاب
area	منطقة	perfect (adj.)	رائع
waterpark	ملاهى مائية	open (adj.)	مفتوح
family picnics	خروجات عائلية	shade	ظل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
rain	يمطر	rained	worry	يقلق	worried
encourage	يشجع	encouraged	describe	يصف	described
include	يشمل / يتضمن	included	check	يراجع / يفحص	checked

Irregular verbs أفعـال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
choose	يختار	chose	feed	يطعم	fed

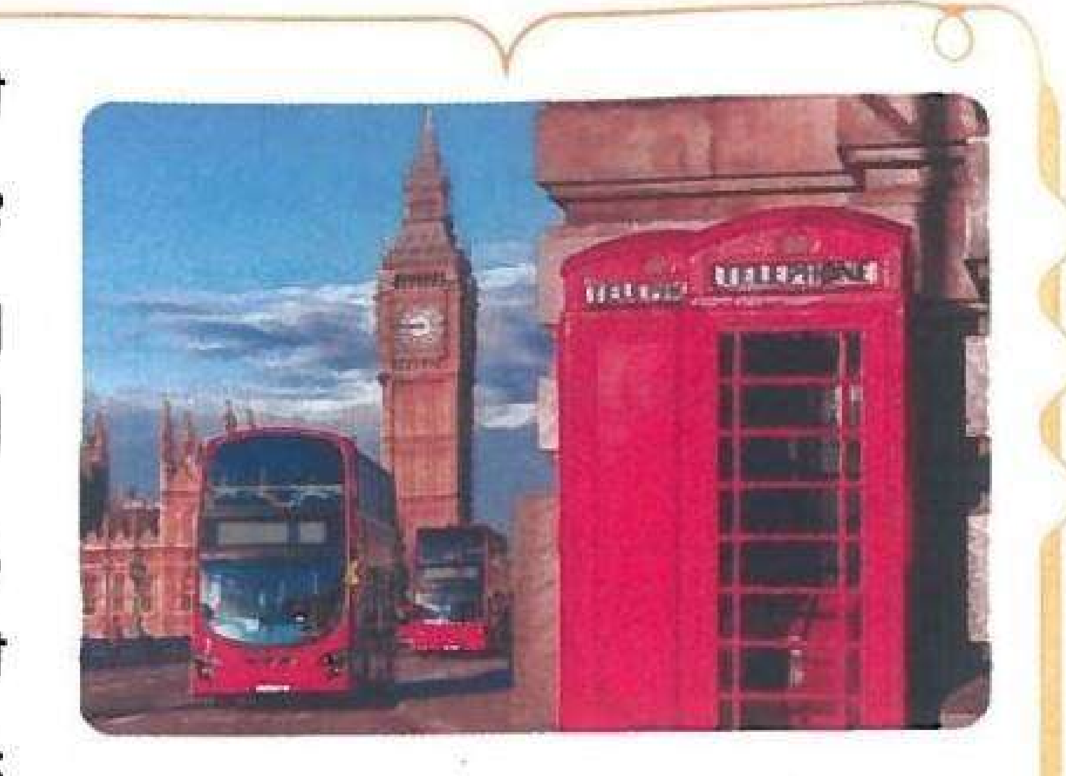
Expressions and Phrases

the most exciting	الأكثر متعة	it doesn't matter	لا يهم
lots of	الكثير من	go on a bus	يذهب على متن الحافلة
walk around	يتجول فى المكان	plenty of	الكثير من
all over the world	فى جميع أنحاء العالم	right in the middle of the...	تمامًا فى المنتصف من
at the end	فى نهاية الأمر	It's free to go in!	الدخول مجانى!

London مدينة لندن



2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



This is one of the most exciting cities in the world. It often rains here, but it doesn't matter because there are lots of fun things to do. You can go on a big red bus and visit amazing tourist attractions. You will see famous places like Buckingham Palace, theaters, and the British Museum. You can take a relaxing boat trip on the River Thames and go under the famous bridges. All the walking around will make you hungry! But don't worry, there are plenty of different restaurants to choose from. You can find delicious food from all over the world here!

هذه واحدة من أكثر المدن الممتعة فى العالم. عادة ما تمطر هنا ولكن هذا لا يهم حيث يوجد العديد من الأشياء الممتعة لتقوم بها. يمكن أن تذهب فى جولة إلى الأماكن السياحية المختلفة فى حافله حمراء كبيرة. سترى العديد من الأماكن المشهورة كقصر باكينجهام والمسارح والمتحف البريطانى. يمكنك أن تذهب فى رحلة مريحة بالقارب فى نهر التايمز وتعبر من أسفل الكبارى المشهورة. كل هذا التجول سيجعلك تشعر بالجوع. ولكن لا تقلق، يوجد العديد من المطاعم المختلفة التى يمكنك أن تختار من بينها. يمكنك أن تجد هنا طعامًا لذيذًا من جميع أنحاء العالم!

Important sentences جمل هامة

* London is one of the most exciting cities in the world. لندن هى واحدة من أكثر المدن تشويقاً فى العالم.
* You can see famous places like Buckingham Palace, theaters, and the British Museum.
يمكنك رؤية الأماكن الشهيرة مثل قصر باكنجهام والمسارح والمتحف البريطانى.
* You can take a relaxing boat trip on the River Thames and go under the famous bridges.
يمكنك القيام برحلة مريحة بالقارب فى نهر التايمز والعبور أسفل الجسور الشهيرة.

Tip! When you try to encourage people to go to a place, use positive adjectives to describe the place.
عندما تحاول تشجيع الناس على الذهاب إلى مكان ما، استخدم الصفات الإيجابية لوصف المكان.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 It often (snows – rains – shines – freezes) in London.
2 You can go on a big (green – blue – red – yellow) bus and visit amazing tourist attractions.
3 You can take a relaxing (bus – car – bike – boat) trip on the River Thames.



New Alamein مدينة العلمين الجديدة

3. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein. The city is on the beach so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. This beautiful beach is 14 kms long! There is also a large, green lake right in the middle of the city. You can also visit the beautiful International Park. If you want to learn about the fascinating history of the area, then visit the Archaeological Center. There are some amazing treasures there.
I can't wait to see you in New Alamein.

هناك العديد من الأشياء المثيرة التى يمكنك القيام بها فى العلمين الجديدة. المدينة على الشاطئ ؛ لذا يمكنك زيارة البحر البارد عندما يكون الجو حارًا. يبلغ طول هذا الشاطئ الجميل ١٤ كم ! توجد أيضًا بحيرة خضراء كبيرة فى وسط المدينة. يمكنك أيضًا زيارة الحديقة الدولية الجميلة. إذا كنت ترغب فى التعرف على التاريخ الخلاب للمنطقة، فقم بزيارة المركز الأثرى. هناك بعض الكنوز المدهشة.
لا أستطيع الانتظار لرؤيتك فى العلمين الجديدة.

Important sentences جمل هامة

* New Alamein is on the beach. This beautiful beach is 14 kms long!

العلمين الجديدة تقع على الشاطئ. يبلغ طول هذا الشاطئ الجميل ١٤ كم!

* There is also a large, green lake right in the middle of the city!

توجد أيضًا بحيرة خضراء كبيرة تمامًا فى المنتصف من المدينة!

* You can also visit the beautiful International Park.

كما يمكنكم زيارة الحديقة الدولية الجميلة.

Steps of writing a paragraph to describe your town or city:
خطوات كتابة فقرة لوصف مدينتك

A Write notes about the good things of your town. اكتب ملاحظات عن الأشياء الجيدة فى مدينتك.

B Write about famous attractions. اكتب عن عوامل الجذب الشهيرة فى مدينتك.

C Write about the location. اكتب عن الموقع.

D Write about the history/culture/art. اكتب عن التاريخ/ الثقافة/ الفن.



Our Perfect Town مدينتنا الرائعة



4. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

In our perfect town, there is a big zoo right next to the school. We can go there every afternoon after classes. We can help to feed the animals.

فى بلدتنا الرائعة، توجد حديقة حيوانات كبيرة بجانب المدرسة. يمكننا الذهاب هناك فى كل ظهيرة بعد الحصص الدراسية. يمكننا أن نساعد فى إطعام الحيوانات.

It is really hot in our town, so there is a waterpark that is always open. It's free to go in!

إن الجو حقًّا حار فى مدينتنا، لذلك توجد حديقة ألعاب مائية مفتوحة دائمًا، يمكنك الدخول بلا مقابل.

There is a wonderful market that sells all kinds of delicious food, like fresh bread and fresh fruit and vegetables.

يوجد سوق رائع يبيع جميع أنواع الأطعمة المختلفة، كالخبز الطازج والفواكه والخضراوات الطازجة.



There is a big park with lots of trees so we can go for family picnics in the shade.
This is our perfect town!

توجد حديقة كبيرة بها العديد من الأشجار لذلك يمكننا الذهاب فى نزهات عائلية فى الظل.

هذه هى مدينتنا الرائعة!

Important sentences جمل هامة

* In our perfect town, there is a big zoo right next to the school.
  فى بلدتنا الرائعة، توجد حديقة حيوانات كبيرة بجوار المدرسة مباشرةً .
* There is a waterpark that is always open. It's free to go in!
  يوجد ملاهى مائية مفتوحة دائمًا. الدخول مجانى!
* There is a big park with lots of trees so we can go for family picnics.
  يوجد حديقة كبيرة بها الكثير من الأشجار حتى نتمكن من الذهاب للنزهات العائلية.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 Our town is (noisy – perfect – far – small).

2 There is a big (park – zoo – market – station) right next to the school.

3 There is a wonderful market that sells all kinds of delicious (clothes – tools – trees – food).

Practice

Lessons 4 & 5



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 There are many tourist .... here, lots of people come here for holidays.
a) bridges b) attractions c) boats d) buses

2 I visited Buckingham .... last year.
a) Museum b) Palace c) Center d) Park

3 The Egyptian Museum has many .... from ancient Egypt.
a) treasures b) locations c) trips d) parks

4 I like ...., it's my favorite subject at school.
a) location b) restaurant c) culture d) history

5 Don't buy tickets to go into the waterpark; it's ....
a) free b) relaxing c) delicious d) big

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

middle – beach – high – long

New Alamein is on the ....(1)............ so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. This beautiful beach is 14 kms ....(2)............! There is also a large, green lake right in the ....(3).................. of the city. You can also visit the beautiful International Park. If you want to learn about the fascinating history of the area, then visit the Archaeological Center.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

القاهرة - إدارة هليوبليس 2024

London is one of the most exciting cities in the world. It often rains here, but it doesn't matter because there are lots of fun things to do. You can go on a big red bus and visit amazing tourist attractions. You will see famous places like Buckingham Palace, theaters, and the British Museum. You can take a relaxing boat trip on the River Thames and go under the famous bridges. If you're hungry! Don't worry, there are plenty of different restaurants to choose from.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about "............................".
a) British Museum b) London
c) Buckingham Palace d) River Thames

2 You can go on a boat trip on the .... in London.
a) River Nile b) River Amazon
c) River Thames d) River Degla

B Answer the following questions:

3 What fun things can you do in London?

....

4 What famous places can you see in London?

....

5 What can you do when you're hungry?

....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 next to – There's – a big – my – school – zoo.

....

2 beach – city – The – on – is – the.

....

3 plenty – of – There – different – are – restaurants.

....

4 feed – can – to – the – help – animals – We.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

1 don't miss the beautiful International Park

....

2 There are many exciting things to do in new alamein.

....

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه صفحة 256

"My perfect town"

big zoo – a waterpark – a wonderful market

....

....

....

....

....



REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التى وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

bank	بنك	factory	مصنع
monument	أثر	library	مكتبة
shopping mall	مركز للتسوق	square	ميدان
station	محطة	stores	متاجر (محلات)
Germany	ألمانيا	tourist	سائح
mint tea	شاى بالنعناع	traditional	تقليدى
cuisine	مأكولات	roof garden	حديقة السطح

Lesson (2)

Alexandria Library	مكتبة الإسكندرية	elevator	مصعد (أسانسير)
button	زر	Children's Library	مكتبة الأطفال
trash	قمامة	cell phone	هاتف محمول
librarian	أمين المكتبة	trash can	سلة القمامة
loudly	بصوت عالٍ	environment	البيئة
directions	اتجاهات	post office	مكتب البريد
instructions	تعليمات	road	طريق

Lesson (3)

lost	تائه / مفقود	ibis	طائر أبو منجل
strange-looking	غريب المنظر	creature	مخلوق
jerboa	الجربوع	foolish	أحمق
villager	قروى	sack	شوال
branches	فروع	crowds	الجماهير
funny-looking	مضحك المنظر	stranger	غريب
rudely	بطريقة وقحة / بقسوة	truth	الحقيقة
land	أرض (اليابسة)	market traders	تجار السوق

Lessons (4 & 5)

tourist attractions	أماكن جذب سياحية	theater	مسرح
relaxing	مريح	Buckingham Palace	قصر باكينجهام
British Museum	المتحف البريطانى	River Thames	نهر التايمز
International Park	الحديقة الدولية	Archaeological Center	المركز الأثرى
treasures	كنوز	waterpark	ملاهى مائية
open	مفتوح	shade	ظل

Language Focus

1. Imperatives صيغة الأمر

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات:

Use the "infinitive" without "to":



Infinitive ... .



Please, pick up that trash.

Negative Form: صيغة النفى:

Use "don't + infinitive" without "to":

don't + infinitive ... .

e.g.



Don't eat in the library, please.



Please, don't talk loudly.

2. Asking for and giving directions السؤال والإجابة عن الاتجاهات

When we ask for directions, we say:

- Excuse me, how do I get to + place (المكان)?
- Where is the + place (المكان), please?
- Is there + a/an place (مكان) + near here?

We use the imperative to give instructions:

e.g. Go straight. / Cross the road. / Turn right/left.

e.g.



A: Excuse me, how do I get to the library, please?



B: Go straight, turn right. It's on your left.



Unit 10 CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

بنك	....	مركز للتسوق	....
مكتبة	....	أثر	....
ميدان	....	محطة	....
مطعم	....	أسواق	....
متاجر	....	عادات	....

Lesson 2

مكتبة الأسكندرية	....	مصعد (أسانسير)	....
زر	....	قمامة	....
هاتف محمول	....	أمين المكتبة	....
سلة القمامة	....	بصوت عالٍ	....
البيئة	....	اتجاهات	....
مكتب البريد	....	تعليمات	....

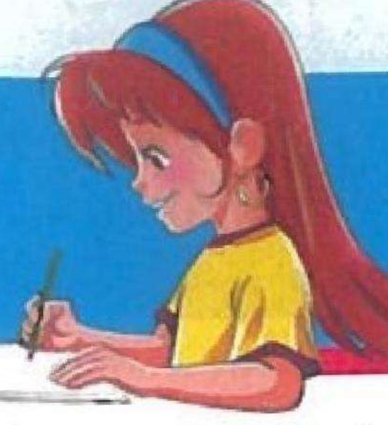
Lesson 3

تائه	....	طائر أبو منجل	....
تجار السوق	....	قروى	....
فروع	....	شوال	....
الجماهير	....	غريب المنظر	....
مخلوق	....	الجربوع	....
أحمق	....	الحقيقة	....
مضحك المنظر	....	غريب	....
ألم	....	قضمة / عضة	....

Lessons 4 & 5

أماكن جذب سياحية	....	مسرح	....
مريح	....	قصر باكينجهام	....
المتحف البريطانى	....	نهر التايمز	....
الحديقة الدولية	....	المركز الأثرى	....
كنوز	....	جولة بالقارب	....
رائع	....	ملاهى مائية	....
مفتوح	....	ظل	....

WRITING TIME





لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about Alexandria:

- Alexandria is (وصف للمدينة) ... .
- I'm visiting Alexandria from (مدينتك الأصلية).
- There are (معالم مشهورة فى الإسكندرية) ... .
- I love (أشياء تحب أن تقوم بها فى الإسكندرية) ... .

Alexandria

Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. I'm visiting Alexandria from Germany. There are some good museums, but I haven't been to any yet. I love just sitting in the roof garden of my hotel, drinking sweet Egyptian mint tea, and chatting to other people. It's very relaxing.

How to write about directions to a place:

- To get to the (المكان) from the (مكان آخر), go straight.
- Turn left ... .
- Then, turn right ... .
- The (المكان) is on the left.
- Just cross the road.

The directions to the Alexandria Library

This is the Alexandria Library. It's amazing. To get to the library from the station, go straight. Turn left at the end of the road. Then, turn right. The library is on the left. Just cross the road.

How to write about your town or city:

- There are many exciting things to do in (اسم المدينة) ... .
- The city is (الموقع) ... .
- There is (معالم فى المدينة) ... .
- You can visit (أماكن تاريخية فى المدينة) ... .
- You can also visit (أماكن تاريخية أخرى فى المدينة)... .

New Alamein

There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein. The city is on the beach, so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. There is also a large, green lake right in the middle of the city. You can visit the beautiful International Park. You can also visit the Archaeological Center. There are some amazing treasures there.



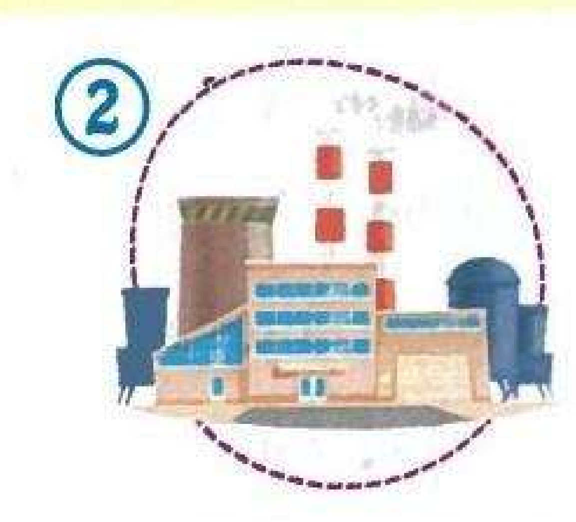
STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

1 Look and write:

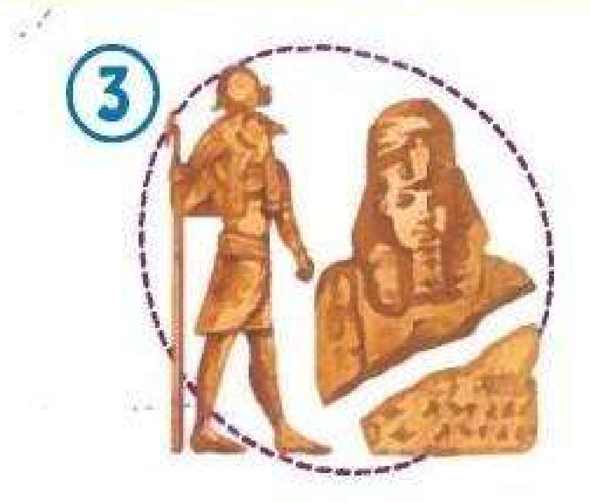
station – factory – library – monument – bank – square – shopping mall

① 

....

② 

....

③ 

....

④ 

....

⑤ 

....

⑥ 

....

⑦ 

....

2 Read the library rules. Rewrite the rules with imperatives:

1 You should not eat in the library. Don't eat in the library.
2 You have to bring your book back in two weeks. ....
3 You need to drink your water outside. ....
4 You cannot use your cell phone here. ....
5 You should not lose your book. ....
6 You should ask the librarian if you need help. ....

3 Reorder the words to make imperative sentences:

1 book / Choose / a / good / to read.

....

2 talk / loudly, / Don't / please.

....

3 write / in / Don't / the book.

....

4 the book / Return / its place / to.

....







Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 There is a big .... right next to the school.
   a) club b) park c) zoo d) garden
2 We can help to feed the ....
   a) animals b) birds c) people d) visitors
3 It is really .... in our town.
   a) cold b) hot c) warm d) snowy
4 It's free to go in the ....
   a) class b) waterpark c) zoo d) school

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 1.5

1 Molokhia and rice are from the local Egyptian .... (السويس 2024)
   a) cuisine b) places c) monuments d) books
2 This is where you go to catch a train. It is the ....
   a) factory b) station c) library d) monument
3 We went to the .... to find out how cotton is turned into clothes.
   a) restaurant b) factory c) station d) square

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 1.5

free – picnics – waterpark – classes

(القليوبية - إدارة طوخ 2024)

In my town, there is a big zoo next to the school. We can go there after ....(1)........ . It is really hot in our town, so there is a ....(2)........ that is always open. There is a wonderful market that sells all kinds of delicious food. There is a big park with lots of trees so we can go for family ....(3)........ in the shade.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 7

Last summer, I went to Alexandria with my family. We went there by train. We stayed at a big hotel. In the morning, we went to the beach, where I swam and played with the sand. We had a delicious breakfast on the beach. In the afternoon, we went to a nice restaurant and had lunch. We had fish, rice, and salad. After that, we visited the Alexandria Library. We also went to the cinema and watched a nice film. We had a good time in Alexandria.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 They went to Alexandria by ....

a) bus b) car c) foot d) train

2 The family had breakfast on the ....

a) beach b) restaurant c) library d) cinema

B Answer the following questions:

3 When did the family go to Alexandria? ....

4 Where did they stay? ....

5 Where did they watch the film? ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1

1 the – must – You – cuisine – try – local – some of.

....

2 do – How – library – get – the – I – to? القليوبية - إدارة الخانكة 2024

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

1 .... (Doesn't) write in the book. القليوبية - إدارة طوخ 2024

2 .... (Going) straight, then turn left.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

4

1 don't talk loudly, please ....

2 there is a big market next to my house ....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"Alexandria" القاهرة - إدارة المطرية 2024

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب صفحة 216

restaurant – beach

....

....

....

....





Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

Unit 10 AL-AZHAR CORNER

تحتوى هذه الصفحة على أسئلة خاصة بمواصفات الأزهر

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:



1 Jack is from (Egypt – England – Alexandria).

2 Jack hasn't been to any (schools – museums – stores) yet.

3 He loves sitting in the roof garden of the (house – home – hotel).

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

Alamein – International – live – do

Reham : Where do you ....?

Leen : I live in New ....

Reham : What can I .... there?

Leen : You can visit the beautiful .... Park.

3 Choose the correct answer:

1 I want to (borrow – lend – buy) books from the school library.

2 Don't (talking – talk – talks) loudly, please.

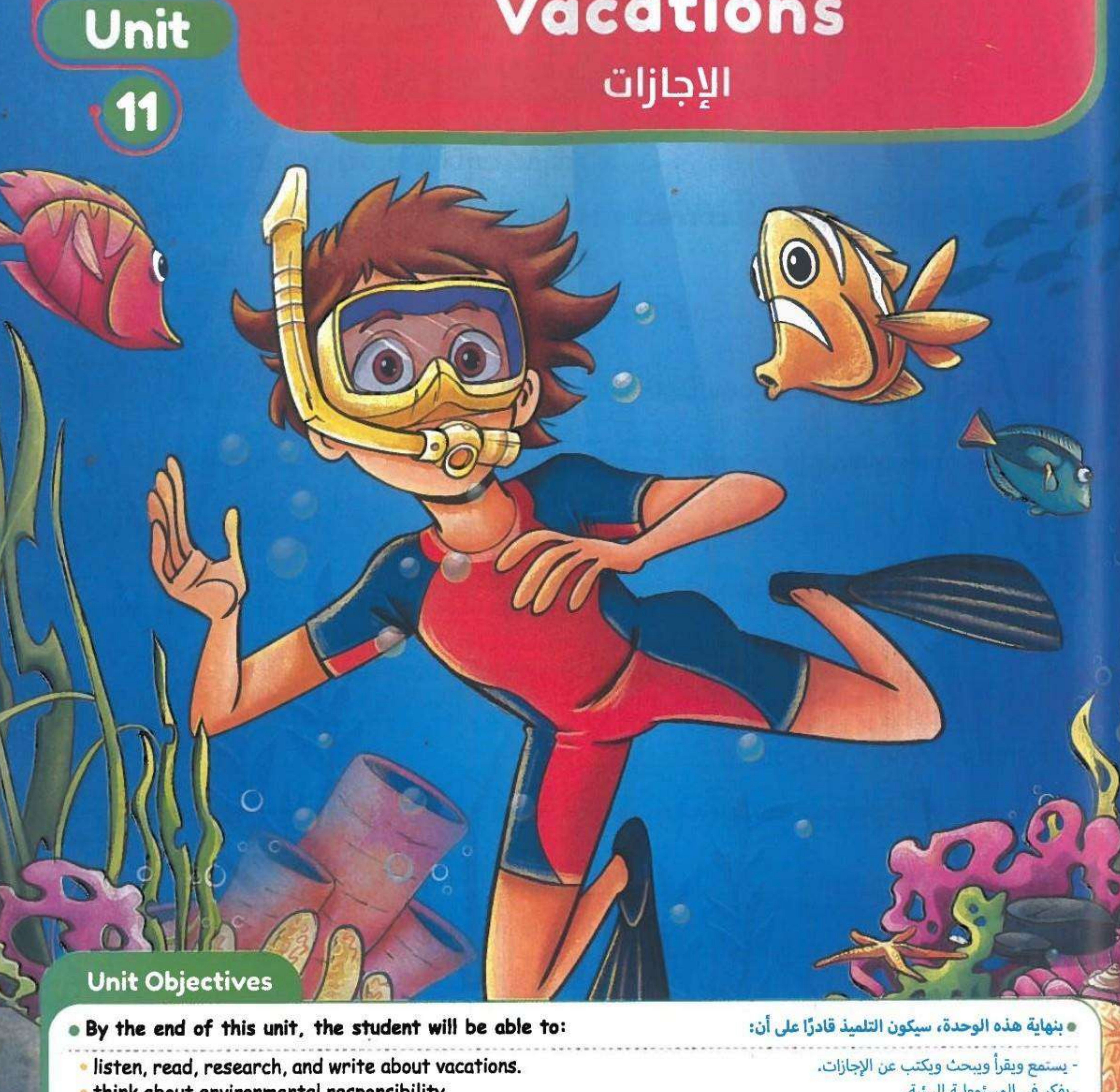
3 A: (When – How – Where) is the shopping mall, please? B: It's on your right.

4 Our restaurant (apologizes – recognizes – serves) the best pasta in town.

5 I saw beautiful (cuisines – rains – monuments) at the museum.

Unit 11 Vacations

الإجازات



Unit Objectives

- **By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:**

- listen, read, research, and write about vacations.
- think about environmental responsibility.
- practice using prepositions of time.
- listen to a conversation.
- learn about different types of triangles.
- read and say words with the "th" sound.
- think about his/her perfect vacation.
- write a diary entry for his/her best day on vacation.
- make a poster for a vacation destination.

- **بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:**

- يستمع ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن الإجازات.
- يفكر فى المسئولية البيئية.
- يتدرب على استخدام حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت.
- يستمع إلى محادثة.
- يتعلم عن أنواع مختلفة من المثلثات.
- يقرأ وينطق كلمات بصوت الـ «th».
- يفكر فى إجازته المثالية.
- يكتب تدوينة (مذكراته) عن أفضل يوم له فى الإجازة.
- يصمم ملصقًا عن وجهته لقضاء عطلة.

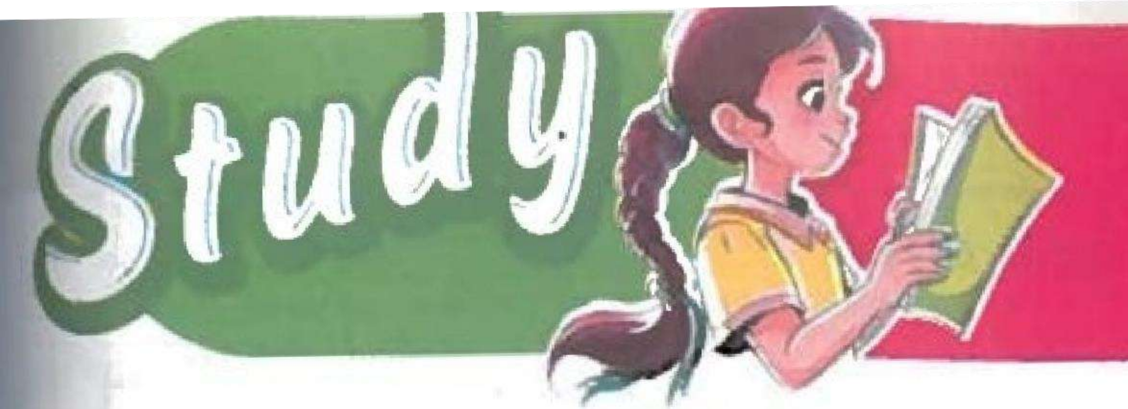
Did you know?

- Egypt is one of the most popular vacation *destinations in the world. Millions of people visit Egypt every year.

Find out!

- The best places to visit in Egypt are the Great Pyramids of Giza, the Egyptian Museum, the Luxor Temple, the Karnak Temple, the Valley of the Kings, and more.

*destinations وجهات سفر



Lesson 1
A World Trip
رحلة حول العالم





1. Listen, point, and say:
استمع، أشر، وقل:



Main vocabulary



ticket
تذكرة



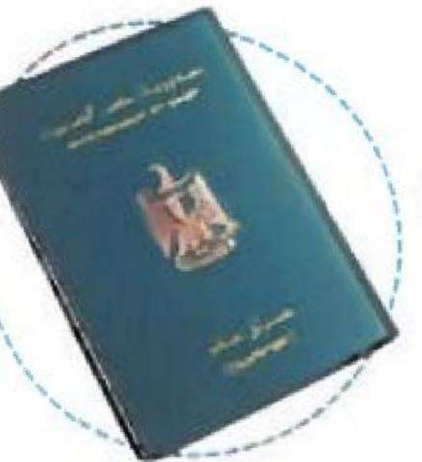
suitcase
حقيبة سفر



hotel
فندق



tourist
سائح



passport
جواز سفر



swimming pool
حمام سباحة

Extra Vocabulary

trip	رحلة	email	رسالة بريد إلكترونى	husband	زوج
business	عمل	India	الهند	Singapore	سنغافورة
aloud	بصوت عال	daughter	ابنة	son	ابن
degree	درجة (الحرارة)	luckily	لحسن الحظ	hotel room	حجرة فندقية
floor	دور/ طابق	view	منظر	roof	سطح
flight	رحلة جوية	comfortable (adj.)	مريح	airport	مطار
special (adj.)	مميز	busy (adj.)	مزدحم (مشغول)	boat trip	رحلة بالقارب
island	جزيرة	theme park	مدينة الملاهى	vanilla	فانيليا
well	بصحة جيدة	Japan	اليابان	bay	خليج

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

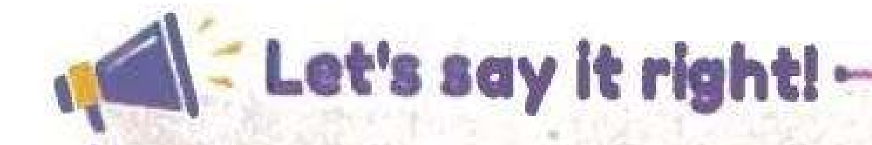
Present		Past	Present		Past
receive	يستقبل	received	arrive	يصل	arrived
relax	يستريح	relaxed	believe	يصدق	believed
hope	يأمل	hoped	pack	يحزم الأمتعة	packed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
forget	ينسى	forgot	send	يرسل	sent
fly	يطير (يسافر)	flew	find	يجد	found

Expressions and Phrases

around the world	حول العالم	hello to you all	مرحبا بكم جميعًا
take about six hours	تستغرق حوالى ست ساعات	take long to ...	يستغرق وقتًا طويلًا لكى ...
get through	يعبر	straight away	على الفور
high-rise buildings	مبانٍ شاهقة الارتفاع	from all around the world	من جميع أنحاء العالم
spend time	يقضى وقتًا	in the middle of	فى المنتصف من
go on a boat trip	يذهب فى رحلة على متن قارب	take photos	يلتقط صورًا



Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (s) فى كلمة (island) حرف صامت (silent) لا ينطق.
- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (gh) فى كلمة (flight) حرفان صامتان (silent) لا ينطقان.



Take care!

- لاحظ أنه يمكننا تكوين صفة من كلمتين بوضع الـ (-) بينهما:

high (adj.) عالٍ + rise (n.) ارتفاع = high-rise (adj.) شاهق الارتفاع

- لاحظ أن الفعل (fly) قد يأتى بمعنى (يسافر) باستخدام الطائرة:

We will fly to Japan tomorrow.

Important sentences جمل هامة

* Nadia and her husband are on a business trip in Singapore. نادية وزوجها فى رحلة عمل فى سنغافورة .
* It's hot in Singapore – about 36 degrees. الجو حار فى سنغافورة - حوالى 36 درجة.
* Singapore is a wonderful city. سنغافورة مدينة رائعة.
* There are lots of high-rise buildings and many parks, gardens, and trees.
يوجد الكثير من المبانى الشاهقة والعديد من المتنزهات والحدائق والأشجار.
* There are flowers and plants from all around the world. يوجد زهور ونباتات من جميع أنحاء العالم.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 Free (suitcases – tickets – hotels – pools) to the museum are available only to students.
2 We stayed at a/an (suitcase – pool – hotel – island) by the beach.
3 We need our (jackets – passports – bottles – photos) to travel from one city to another.
4 A lot of (tickets – tourists – hotels – suitcases) come to visit Egypt every year.
5 Nada and her friend are on a school (class – trip – vacation – ride) to the museum.





2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Today Mom received an email from her sister Nadia, and her husband Hani. They are on a business trip traveling around the world. Nadia and Hani were in India last week, and this week they are in Singapore. Mom is reading the email aloud to her daughter Rana and her son Ali.

استلمت الأم اليوم بريدًا إلكترونيًا من أختها نادية وزوجها هانى. هما فى رحلة عمل حول العالم. كانت نادية وهانى فى الهند الأسبوع الماضى، وهما فى سنغافورة هذا الأسبوع. تقرأ الأم البريد الإلكترونى بصوت عالٍ لابنتها رنا وابنها على.

To Samiax@mail.com

Subject My trip

Dear Samia,



Hello to you all from Singapore! It's hot here – about 36 degrees. Luckily, we've got a lovely hotel room. We're on the 42nd floor. The view is beautiful and we can see the beach. There's a huge swimming pool on the roof of the hotel! Can you believe it? The flight from India took about six hours, but it was comfortable and we both slept.



It didn't take long to get through the airport when we arrived – we got our suitcases straight away.



Singapore is a wonderful city. There are lots of high-rise buildings, but there are also many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax. The Gardens by the Bay is a really special place where there are flowers and plants from all around the world. We spent a lot of time there. You really forget that you're in the middle of a busy city.

عزيزتى سامية،

مرحبًا بكم جميعًا من سنغافورة! الجو حار هنا - حوالى ٣٦ درجة. لحسن الحظ، لدينا غرفة فندقية جميلة. نحن فى الطابق ٤٢. المنظر جميل ويمكننا رؤية الشاطئ. يوجد حمام سباحة ضخم على سطح الفندق! هل يمكنك تصديق ذلك؟ استغرقت الرحلة من الهند حوالى ست ساعات، لكنها كانت مريحة وكلانا نام. لم يستغرق عبور المطار وقتًا طويلًا عندما وصلنا - لقد حملنا حقائبنا على الفور.

سنغافورة مدينة رائعة. هناك الكثير من المبانى شاهقة الارتفاع، ولكن هناك أيضًا العديد من المتنزهات والحدائق والأشجار للجلوس تحتها والاسترخاء. تعد حدائق الخليج مكانًا خاصًا حقًا ؛ حيث توجد الزهور والنباتات من جميع أنحاء العالم. لقد أمضينا وقتًا طويلًا هناك. قد تنسى حقًا أنك فى وسط مدينة مزدحمة.

Send

Yesterday, we went on a boat trip with some other tourists to an island. There is a theme park. It was so much fun! After that, we visited the museum of ice cream! I had a 'Queen Bee' ice cream which is vanilla and honey with chocolate. It was great!
I hope you are all well. We will fly to Japan tomorrow and I'll send you another email when we arrive. Now I have to find our tickets and passports and pack our suitcases again!
Love,
Nadia

بالأمس، ذهبنا فى رحلة بالقارب مع بعض السياح الآخرين إلى إحدى الجزر. توجد مدينة ملاهى. كان الأمر ممتعًا للغاية! بعد ذلك قمنا بزيارة متحف الآيس كريم! تناولت آيس كريم "Queen Bee" وهو بطعم الفانيليا والعسل مع الشوكولاتة. كان رائعًا! أتمنى أن تكونوا جميعًا بخير. سنسافر إلى اليابان غدًا وسأرسل لك بريدًا إلكترونيًا آخر عند وصولنا. الآن علىَّ أن أجد تذاكرنا وجوازات سفرنا وأن أحزم حقائبنا مرة أخرى!
مع حبى،
نادية





3. Read and learn: اقرأ وتعلم:

Things you take on vacation الأشياء التى تأخذها فى الإجازة	Places you go on vacation الأماكن التى تذهب إليها فى إجازة
*camera *passport *suitcase *sunglasses *ticket	*beach *city *hotel *museum *theme park *swimming pool



Think!

What does "Take only photos, leave only footprints" mean?
It means don't take anything you find in the woods ... like flowers, fungi, roots, animals, small trees, etc. But you can take pictures of them with your camera. The "leave only footprints" part means don't leave any trash behind you except for your footprints.

ماذا يعنى «التقط صورًا فقط، اترك آثار أقدام فقط»؟
هذا يعنى عدم أخذ أى شىء تجده فى الغابة ... مثل الزهور، والفطريات، والجذور، والحيوانات، والأشجار الصغيرة، وما إلى ذلك، ولكن يمكنك التقاط صور لها بالكاميرا. الجزء «اترك آثار أقدام فقط» يعنى عدم ترك أى قمامة خلفك باستثناء آثار أقدامك.



Lesson 1



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 You have to pack your .... before traveling.
a) bottles b) suitcases c) tourists d) flights

2 It's very hot today; we'll go to the ....
a) beach b) museum c) hotel d) city

3 We are going on a business .... to Singapore next week.
a) ticket b) hotel c) trip d) park

4 We live in an apartment on the 6th ....
a) roof b) pool c) floor d) hotel

5 The .... is the top part of a building.
a) park b) pool c) hotel d) roof

6 We swim in the ....
a) airport b) swimming pool c) garden d) park

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

give – special – spend – buildings

Singapore is a wonderful city. There are lots of high-rise ....(1)........, but there are also many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax. The Gardens by the Bay is a really ....(2)........ place. There are flowers and plants from all around the world. You can ....(3)........ an exciting time there.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Nadia and her husband, Hani, are on vacation in Singapore. It's hot – about 36 degrees. They stay in a lovely hotel room on the 42nd floor. The hotel is special. There's a huge swimming pool on the roof of the hotel. The view is beautiful, and they can see the beach. Yesterday, they went on a boat trip to an island. There is a theme park. After that, they visited the museum of ice cream! They had a "Queen Bee" ice cream cone, which is vanilla and honey with chocolate.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Nadia and Hani are ....
a) at work b) at home c) on vacation d) at a friend's house

2 The underlined word "huge" means very ....
a) low b) little c) big d) small

B **Answer the following questions:**

3 Why is the hotel special?

....

4 Where did they go yesterday?

....

5 What is a "Queen Bee" ice cream cone?

....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 our – We – straight – suitcases – away – got.

....

2 swimming – the roof – a huge – on – There's – pool.

....

3 lots – buildings – of – There – high-rise – are.

....

4 tomorrow – We – fly – to – will – Japan.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

1 Where did you stay in singapore

....

2 i hope you are all well

....

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

"My trip to Singapore"

جواب عنه صفحة 256

lovely hotel room – see the beach – a huge swimming pool

....

....

....

....

....



Lesson 2





A Special Trip رحلة مميزة



1. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:



Main vocabulary



Amman Citadel
قلعة عَمان



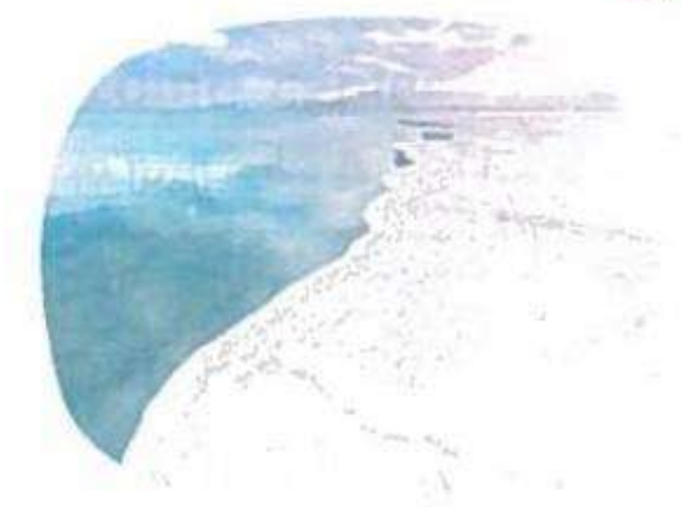
Roman Amphitheater
المدرج الرومانى



Archaeological Museum
المتحف الأثرى



Abu Jaber Museum
متجف أبو جابر



Dead Sea
البحر الميت

Extra vocabulary

Zambia	زامبيا	leaflet	منشور	Jordan	الأردن
Amman	عمان	traditional (adj.)	تقليدى	Jordanian (adj.)	أردنى
tour	جولة	local (adj.)	محلى	colorful (adj.)	ملون / مبهج
day trip	رحلة نهارية	ancient (adj.)	قديم	late (adj.)	متأخر
culture	ثقافة	art	فن	crafts	مصنوعات (مشغولات)
mud	طين	skin	جلد (بشرة)	relaxed (adj.)	خفيف (للوجبات)
airport	مطار	capital city	العاصمة	diary	مفكرة (مذكرات / يوميات)
diary entry	مذكرات (تدوينة)	history	تاريخ	home	الوطن (البلد الأم)
bus ride	رحلة الحافلة	destination	وجهة سفر (المكان المقصود)	chance	فرصة
handicrafts	مشغولات يدوية	stalls	أكشاك	rug	سجادة صغيرة
tour guide	مرشد سياحى	country	دولة	appointment	موعد / مقابلة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
explore	يستكشف	explored	head	يتجه	headed
discover	يكتشف	discovered	float	يطفو	floated
describe	يصف	described	reach	يصل	reached
wander	يتجول	wandered	join	ينضم	joined
land	يهبط (للطائرة)	landed	remind	يذكر	reminded

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
meet	يقابل	met	spend	يقضى	spent
leave	يغادر	left	drive	يقود	drove
sell	يبيع	sold	see	يرى	saw

Expressions and Phrases

desert tours	جولات صحراوية	check in	يسجل دخول
free time	وقت فراغ	walk through	يتجول
head out of	يخرج من	about an hour away	على بعد حوالى ساعة
trading center	مركز تجارى	(be) able to	يكون قادر على
the best ever	الأفضل على الإطلاق	on the way	فى الطريق
quite quickly	سريعًا إلى حد ما	so that	لكى / حتى
on vacation	فى إجازة	on the weekend	فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
That sounds good!	يبدو ذلك جيدًا!	Not long now.	لن يطول الأمر.

Take care!

- (arrive in) بمعنى يصل وتأتى مع الأماكن الكبيرة مثل (البلاد / المدن / المحافظات):

e.g. Arrive in Amman and check in to our hotel.

- (arrive at) بمعنى يصل وتأتى مع الأماكن الصغيرة (airport / supermarket / school):

e.g. You arrive at the airport on day 5, at 5 am.

Let's say it right!

لاحظ أن حروف (tion) فى كلمة (traditional) تنطق /ʃn/ (شن).

Important sentences جمل هامة

* When you arrive in Amman, you can have traditional dinner at the Memphis restaurant.
عند وصولك إلى عمّان، يمكنك تناول عشاء تقليدى فى مطعم ممفيس.
* You can visit the famous Amman Citadel.
بإمكانك زيارة قلعة عمان الشهيرة.
* You can spend the evening walking through Amman's many colorful markets.
يمكنك قضاء المساء بالتجول فى أسواق عمّان متعددة الألوان.
* In the ancient town of As-Salt, you can find lots of local Jordanian culture.
فى مدينة السلط القديمة، يمكنك أن تجد الكثير من الثقافة الأردنية المحلية.
* No visit to Jordan is complete without a trip to the Dead Sea.
لا تكتمل زيارة الأردن دون رحلة إلى البحر الميت.

2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Desert Tours Trip to Jordan رحلة جولات صحراوية إلى الأردن **October 4 – 8**



Day 1: Arrive in Amman and check in to our hotel in the middle of the city. Enjoy some free time in the city before meeting at the Memphis restaurant for a traditional Jordanian dinner in the evening.

اليوم الأول: نصل إلى عمان ونسجل الدخول فى فندقنا فى وسط المدينة. أستمتع ببعض وقت الفراغ فى المدينة قبل أن نلتقى فى مطعم ممفيس لتناول عشاء أردنى تقليدى فى المساء.

Day 2: Today we enjoy a tour of Amman. Visit the famous Amman Citadel before exploring the Roman Amphitheater and the Archaeological Museum. After a late lunch in a local restaurant, spend the afternoon and evening walking through Amman's many colorful markets.

اليوم الثانى: نستمتع اليوم بجولة فى عمان. نقوم بزيارة قلعة عمان الشهيرة قبل استكشاف المدرج الرومانى والمتحف الأثرى. بعد تناول وجبة غداء فى وقت متأخر فى مطعم محلى، يمكنك قضاء فترة ما بعد الظهر والمساء فى التجول فى العديد من الأسواق الملونة فى عمان.

Day 3: Today we head out of the city for a day trip to As-Salt. About an hour away from Amman, in the ancient town of As-Salt you will find lots of local Jordanian culture. The markets are wonderful and there are many traditional arts and crafts to buy. We will visit the Abu Jaber Museum and discover the history of As-Salt as Jordan's important trading center.

اليوم الثالث: اليوم نخرج من المدينة فى رحلة نهارية إلى السلط. على بعد حوالى ساعة من عمان، فى بلدة السلط القديمة ستجد الكثير من الثقافة الأردنية المحلية. الأسواق رائعة وهناك العديد من الفنون والمصنوعات التقليدية للشراء. سنزور متحف أبو جابر ونكتشف تاريخ السلط كمركز تجارى مهم.



Day 4: No visit to Jordan is complete without a trip to the Dead Sea. There is so much salt in this sea that you are able to float on the water! You can also enjoy the Dead Sea mud, which is very good for your skin.

اليوم الرابع: لا تكتمل زيارة الأردن بدون رحلة إلى البحر الميت. يوجد الكثير من الملح فى هذا البحر بحيث يمكنك أن تطفو على الماء! يمكنك أيضًا الاستمتاع بطين البحر الميت، وهو مفيد جدًا لبشرتك.

Day 5: After enjoying a relaxed breakfast, we leave at 11 am to drive three hours back to Amman. We will stop on the way for lunch before arriving at the airport at 5 pm.

اليوم الخامس: بعد الاستمتاع بوجبة فطور خفيفة، نغادر الساعة ١١ صباحًا لنقود ثلاث ساعات عائدين إلى عمان. سنتوقف فى الطريق لتناول طعام الغداء قبل الوصول إلى المطار الساعة ٥ مساءً.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 They visited the famous Amman (Theater – History – Citadel – Museum).

2 They visited the Abu Jaber Museum and discovered the (place – name – history – time) of As-Salt.

3 The Dead Sea mud is very good for your (lungs – skin – clothes – eyes).



3. Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

Nahla's Diary Entry تدوينة نهلة

Thursday, October 6th الخميس، ٦ أكتوبر

Dear Diary, مفكرتى العزيزة

Today was the best day ever! I love anything to do with history – I always go to the museum at home, so today was a special day for me. The bus ride wasn't too bad. It only took an hour to reach our destination. I listened to music on the way and the time went quite quickly. When we arrived, we had the chance to wander through the streets and several people bought traditional Jordanian handicrafts from the stalls. I bought a lovely colorful rug. Saleh (our tour guide) was very kind and took it to the bus for me so that I didn't have to carry it around! That was lucky because I spent hours in the museum!

كان اليوم أفضل يوم على الإطلاق! أحب أى شىء له علاقة بالتاريخ - أنا أذهب دائمًا إلى المتحف فى بلدى، لذلك كان اليوم يومًا مميزًا بالنسبة لى. لم تكن رحلة الحافلة سيئة للغاية. استغرق الأمر ساعة واحدة فقط للوصول إلى وجهتنا. لقد استمعت إلى الموسيقى فى الطريق ومضى الوقت سريعًا إلى حد ما. عندما وصلنا، أتيحت لنا الفرصة لنتجول فى الشوارع واشترى العديد من الناس المشغولات اليدوية الأردنية التقليدية من الأكشاك. اشتريت سجادة جميلة ملونة. صالح (مرشدنا السياحى) كان لطيفًا جدًّا وحملها إلى الحافلة من أجلى حتى لا أضطر إلى حملها! كان ذلك من حسن حظى لأننى قضيت ساعات فى المتحف!

Tip! A diary is a book in which you write down things that happen to you each day. A diary entry is a piece of writing in a diary.

المفكرة هى كتاب تدوّن فيه الأشياء التى تحدث لك كل يوم. التدوينة هى جزء من الكتابة فى المفكرة.



Think!

I think it is a good idea to join a tour when you are on vacation in a different country because a tour group can help you explore the history, *architecture, or even the food of a new place.

أعتقد أنه من الجيد الانضمام إلى جولة عندما تكون فى إجازة فى بلد مختلف، لأن المجموعة السياحية يمكن أن تساعدك فى استكشاف التاريخ أو الهندسة المعمارية أو حتى الطعام فى مكان جديد.

*architecture هندسة معمارية

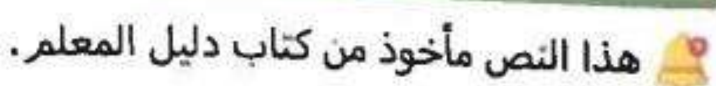
Check

1 Which day was Nahla's best day?

....

2 What did Nahla buy?

....

Listening script page 79 SB

هذا النص مأخوذ من كتاب دليل المعلم.




4. Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Boy

Hi Ayman, do you want to play basketball after school on Thursday?

مرحبًا أيمن، هل تريد أن تلعب كرة السلة بعد المدرسة يوم الخميس؟



Ayman

On Thursday? I'm sorry, I can't, I go swimming on Thursdays.

يوم الخميس؟ أنا أسف، لا أستطيع، أنا أذهب للسباحة فى أيام الخميس.



Girl

Hello Amira, shall we go shopping on the weekend?

مرحبًا أميرة، هل من الممكن أن نذهب للتسوق فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع؟



Amira

Yes please, that sounds good!

نعم من فضلك، يبدو ذلك جيدًا!



Dad

Fareed, remember you have a dentist's appointment this afternoon.

فريد، تذكر أن لديك موعدًا مع طبيب الأسنان بعد الظهر.



Fareed

Oh yes, it's at five o'clock, isn't it?

أووه نعم، فى الساعة الخامسة، أليس كذلك؟



Dad

Yes, that's right.

نعم، هذا صحيح.



Fareed

OK, thanks Dad.

حسنًا، شكرًا أبى.



Mom

Talia, our flight leaves at 11 am.

تاليا، طائرتنا ستغادر فى الساعة ١١ صباحًا.

Talia



OK Mom, I'll be ready.

حسنًا أمى، سأكون مستعدة.



Sherif

Mom, remember I'm playing football with Ramy in the morning.

أمى، تذكرى أنى سألعب كرة القدم مع رامى فى الصباح.

Mom



Oh, yes, that's fine Sherif. Thanks for reminding me.

نعم ، هذا جيد يا شريف. شكرًا لتذكيرى.

Sara

Mom, when are we visiting Grandma and Grandpa?

أمى، متى سنذهب لزيارة جدتى وجدى؟

Mom



We're going in July, Sara. Not long now.

سوف نذهب فى يوليو، سارة. لن يطول الأمر.



Prepositions of Time (on / at / in)
حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت (on / at / in)

We use on with:
نستخدم (on) مع:

- days of the week
  أيام الأسبوع
  e.g. I go swimming on Mondays.
  أذهب للسباحة أيام الإثنين.
- special days
  المناسبات الخاصة
  e.g. I give my mother a present on Mother's Day.
  أعطى أمى هدية فى عيد الأم.
- specific dates
  تواريخ محددة
  e.g. My birthday is on June 1st.
  عيد ميلادى فى الأول من يونيو.
- on the weekend
  فى نهاية الأسبوع
  e.g. We go shopping on the weekend.
  نذهب للتسوق فى نهاية الأسبوع.

We use at with:
نستخدم (at) مع:

- times
  الأوقات
  e.g. Our flight lands at 8 pm.
  تهبط رحلتنا الساعة 8 مساءً.
- at lunchtime
  فى وقت الغداء
  e.g. We play basketball at lunchtime.
  نلعب كرة السلة فى وقت الغداء.
- at night
  فى الليل
  e.g. I go to bed at night.
  أذهب للسرير فى الليل.

We use in with:
نستخدم (in) مع:

- months
  الشهور
  e.g. We visit our cousins in June.
  نزور أبناء عمى فى شهر يونيو.
- seasons
  فصول السنة
  e.g. We went on vacation in the summer.
  ذهبنا فى إجازة فى الصيف.
- years
  السنوات
  e.g. I was born in 2010.
  ولدت عام 2010.
- times of the day
  أوقات اليوم
  e.g. They arrived in the morning.
  وصلوا فى الصباح.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 The film starts (in – on – at – with) 7:30.
2 The restaurant opened (of – at – in – on) 2002.
3 Her birthday is (in – for – on – at) May 22nd.
4 I go to work (at – in – by – on) the morning.
5 See you (on – in – off – at) lunchtime.
6 In England, it often snows (on – in – next – at) December.
7 We went back to our hotel (on – in – next – at) Wednesday.
8 Talia plays basketball (on – in – next – by) the weekend.
9 The shop closes (on – in – at – with) night.
10 Farmers pick tomatoes (on – in – at – with) summer.
11 (On – In – At – For) Father's Day, I will give a nice present to my father.
12 Sarah would like to get a nice pink dress (on – in – at – with) her birthday.





Lesson 2



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 .... help tourists know more about Egypt.

a) Doctors b) Teachers c) Dentists d) Tour guides

2 There is so much .... in the Dead Sea that makes you float.

a) sugar b) salt c) flour d) fish

3 Rana keeps a/an .... to write down things that happen each day.

a) book b) email c) diary d) eraser

4 I like to buy the beautiful .... from the local markets.

a) stalls b) crafts c) mud d) culture

5 Our flight .... at 9 o'clock.

a) discovers b) lands c) wanders d) spends

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

history – Citadel – crafts – Jordanian

Today we head out of the city for a day trip to As-Salt. In the ancient town of As-Salt, you will find lots of local ....(1).............. culture. The markets are wonderful and there are many traditional arts and ....(2).............. to buy. We will visit the Abu Jaber Museum and discover the ....(3)............ of As-Salt as Jordan's important trading center.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

We went to Jordan on vacation. We arrived in Amman and checked into our hotel in the middle of the city. We had a traditional Jordanian dinner at the Memphis restaurant. The next day, we visited the famous Amman Citadel and explored the Roman Amphitheater and the Archaeological Museum. On the third day, we headed out for a day trip to As-Salt and visited the Abu Jaber Museum. On the fourth day, we went on a trip to the Dead Sea.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The .... is in the middle of the city.

a) restaurant b) museum c) hotel d) sea

2 They went to the Dead Sea on the .... day.

a) 1^{st} b) 2^{nd} c) 3^{rd} d) 4^{th}

B **Answer the following questions:**

3 What did they have at the Memphis restaurant?

....

4 What did they do on the 2nd day?

....

5 Where is the Abu Jaber Museum?

....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 to – We – Saturdays – on – the club – go.

....

2 at – start – Does – class – 2 pm – your?

....

3 Wednesdays, – football – On – play – school – I – after.

....

4 had – We – a – dinner – Jordanian – traditional.

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 The shop closes .... (in) night.
2 It rains a lot .... (on) winter
3 I want to see the movie .... (on) lunchtime.
4 Her birthday is .... (in) November 20th.
5 He was born .... (on) March.
6 We never go to school .... (at) Friday.
7 My sister bought a gift for Mom .... (at) Mother's Day.
8 I never wake up late .... (on) 11 am.
9 I usually go to Alexandria .... (on) summer.
10 I will graduate from secondary school .... (at) 2015.
11 The meeting is going to start .... (on) the morning.
12 Did you do anything special .... (in) your birthday?
13 He always gets up .... (in) seven o'clock in the morning.
14 Hana's birthday is .... (on) January.
15 My brother often goes swimming .... (in) the weekend.

6 Punctuate the following:

1 today we enjoy a tour of amman. ....
2 i was born in 2015 ....



Lesson 3





A Story



1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

Al-Azhar Park	حديقة الأزهر	vacation	إجازة	beach	شاطئ
job	وظيفة	a bit low	مُحبط / حزين	picnic	نزهة
bench	مقعد	show	عرض	awesome (adj.)	مذهل

Extra vocabulary

cousin	ابن العم / الخال	away (adj.)	بعيدًا	possible (adj.)	ممكن
suddenly	فجأة	ill (adj.)	مريض	a whole group	مجموعة كاملة
playground	ملعب	meal	وجبة	wonderful (adj.)	رائع

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
stay	يبقى	stayed	phone	يتصل	phoned
agree	يوافق	agreed	arrive	يصل	arrived
shout	يصيح	shouted	seem	يبدو	seemed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
feel	يشعر	felt	make	يصنع	made
come	يأتى	came	sit	يجلس	sat
know	يعرف	knew	say	يقول	said

Expressions and Phrases

(be) over	ينتهى	go on vacation	يذهب فى إجازة	(be) away	(يكون) بعيدًا
have to	يضطر إلى	feel a bit low	يشعر بالإحباط قليلًا	let's + (inf.) ...	هيا بنا ...
sound interesting	يبدو مثيرًا للاهتمام	make a picnic	يقوم بنزهة	such a beautiful day	ياله من يوم جميل
come running past	يأتى أمامك مسرعًا	at the end	فى النهاية	have a meal	يتناول وجبة

Take care!

1 لاحظ أن (feel + adjective) يعبر عن الحالة:

feel + better (adj.) = يشعر بحال أفضل

feel + sad (adj.) = يشعر بالحزن

2 لاحظ أن (such + a/an + adjective) يعبر عن أعلى درجة من الصفة:

It was such a beautiful day.

لقد كان يومًا جميلًا جدًا.

2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Al-Azhar Park حديقة الأزهر

The beginning

Seleem was feeling sad. It was a hot summer, school was over and he wanted to go on vacation. His cousin Sherif was away at the beach and Seleem wanted to be there too. His family usually went on vacation with Sherif's family, but this year that wasn't possible – Seleem's dad had a new job and they had to stay in Cairo.



كان سليم يشعر بالحزن. كان صيفًا حارًا، انتهت المدرسة وأراد الذهاب فى إجازة. كان ابن عمه شريف بعيدًا على الشاطئ، وأراد سليم أن يكون هناك أيضًا. كانت عائلته تذهب عادةً فى إجازة مع عائلة شريف، لكن هذا لم يكن ممكنًا هذا العام - حصل والد سليم على وظيفة جديدة، وكان عليهم البقاء فى القاهرة.

The middle

Marwan, his friend, phoned him, "Hey, how are you, Seleem?", "I'm feeling a bit low – I want to be at the beach," said Seleem.
"Well, this year you can't go, so let's find something else to do!" said Marwan.
"I know, let's go to Al-Azhar Park." "Hmm," said Seleem. "I don't know it, but it sounds interesting!"
Seleem's mom agreed to take them to the park. She made a picnic, so when they arrived, they sat under a big tree on the cool green grass and enjoyed their food. It was such a beautiful day, and Marwan and Seleem played football. Suddenly Ramy and Maged, their friends from school, came running past. "Hi Ramy!" shouted Seleem. "Why are you in the city? I thought you were at the beach!"
"No," said Ramy. "My grandma's ill so Mom wanted to stay in Cairo. There's a whole group of us who stayed at home and didn't travel. Can you come to the playground with us?" Seleem asked his mom and they all went together to the playground.
Mom sat on a bench and enjoyed all the beautiful plants and birds in the park.

اتصل به صديقه مروان قائلًا: «مرحبًا، كيف حالك يا سليم؟»، قال سليم: «أشعر بالإحباط قليلًا - أريد أن أكون على الشاطئ». «حسنًا، هذا العام لا يمكنك الذهاب، فلنبحث عن شيء آخر لنفعله!» قال مروان: «أعلم، لنذهب إلى حديقة الأزهر.» قال سليم: «أنا لا أعرف ذلك، لكن يبدو هذا مثيرًا للاهتمام!»
وافقت والدة سليم على اصطحابهما إلى الحديقة. قامت بنزهة، لذلك عندما وصلوا، جلسوا تحت شجرة كبيرة على العشب الأخضر الرائع واستمتعوا بتناول طعامهم. كان يومًا جميلًا، ولعب مروان وسليم كرة القدم. وفجأة جاء رامى وماجد، صديقاهما من المدرسة، راكضين. «مرحبًا رامى!» صاح سليم: «لماذا أنت فى المدينة؟ اعتقدت أنك كنت فى الشاطئ!»
قال رامى: «لا». «جدتى مريضة لذا أرادت أمى البقاء فى القاهرة. هناك مجموعة كاملة منا بقيت فى المنزل ولم نسافر. هل يمكنك القدوم إلى الملعب معنا؟» سأل سليم والدته وذهبوا جميعًا إلى الملعب. جلست الأم على مقعد واستمتعت بكل النباتات والطيور الجميلة فى الحديقة.

The end

"I think this is a fantastic place," said Mom at the end of the afternoon. "I can see there's a show next week. Let's come back with Dad, see the show and have a meal at the restaurant." Seleem felt very happy – now he knew his friends were in town and they had a wonderful park. It seemed that summer in the city would be awesome!

قالت أمى فى نهاية فترة ما بعد الظهر: «أعتقد أن هذا مكان رائع». «أرى أنه هناك عرض الأسبوع المقبل. دعونا نعود مع أبى، ونشاهد العرض ونتناول وجبة فى المطعم.» شعر سليم بسعادة بالغة - الآن يعرف أن أصدقاءه كانوا فى المدينة وهناك حديقة رائعة. بدا أن الصيف فى المدينة سيكون رائعًا!



B Pronunciation



3. Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:



To make the /ð/ and /θ/ sounds, press your tongue against your top teeth.
لنطق أصوات لـ / ð / و / θ /، اضغط على لسانك ضد أسنانك العلوية.

/θ/

The /θ/ sound is unvoiced, which means you should feel some air on your hand when you say it.
الصوت / θ / غير مسموع، مما يعني أنه يجب أن تشعر ببعض الهواء على يدك عندما تقوله.

thing	شيء
Thursday	يوم الخميس
think	يعتقد
three	ثلاثة
Earth	كوكب الأرض
author	مؤلف
bathroom	حمام
south	جنوب
birthday	عيد ميلاد
thousand	ألف
mouth	فم

/ð/

With the /ð/ sound, there's no air, but you can feel a vibration on your neck.
لا يوجد هواء، لكن يمكنك الشعور بالاهتزاز فى رقبتك مع صوت / ð /.

these	هؤلاء
those	أولئك
this	هذا/هذه
with	مع
mother	أم
father	أب
they	هم
other	آخر
clothes	ملابس
leather	جلد





4. Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:



What is a suffix?

A suffix is a group of letters that comes at the end of a word to give it a new meaning.

اللاحقة هى مجموعة من الأحرف تأتى فى نهاية الكلمة لتعطى معنى جديدًا.



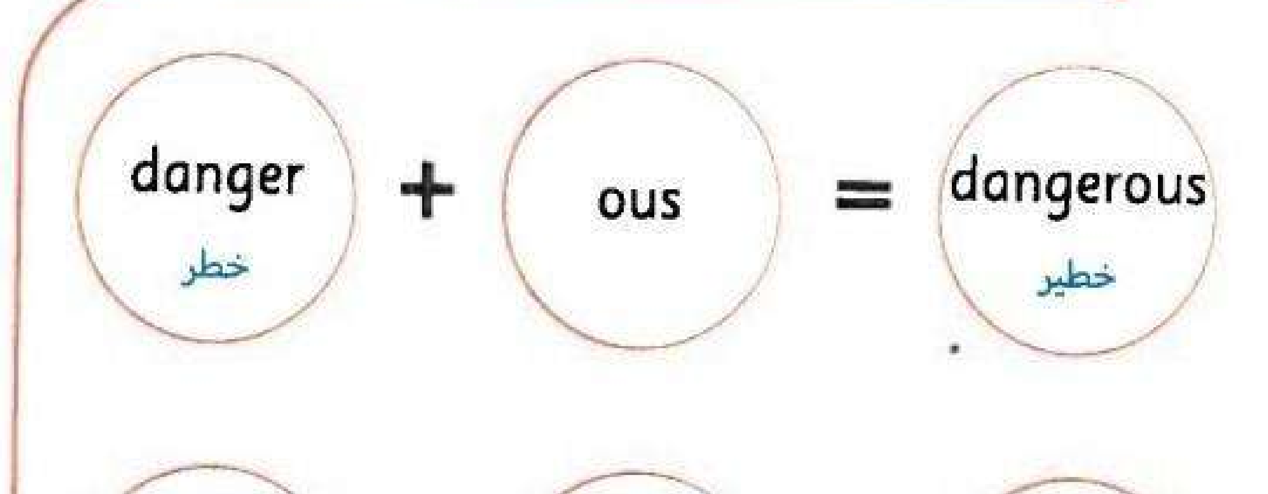
enormous ضخم famous مشهور

Some adjectives have common suffixes:

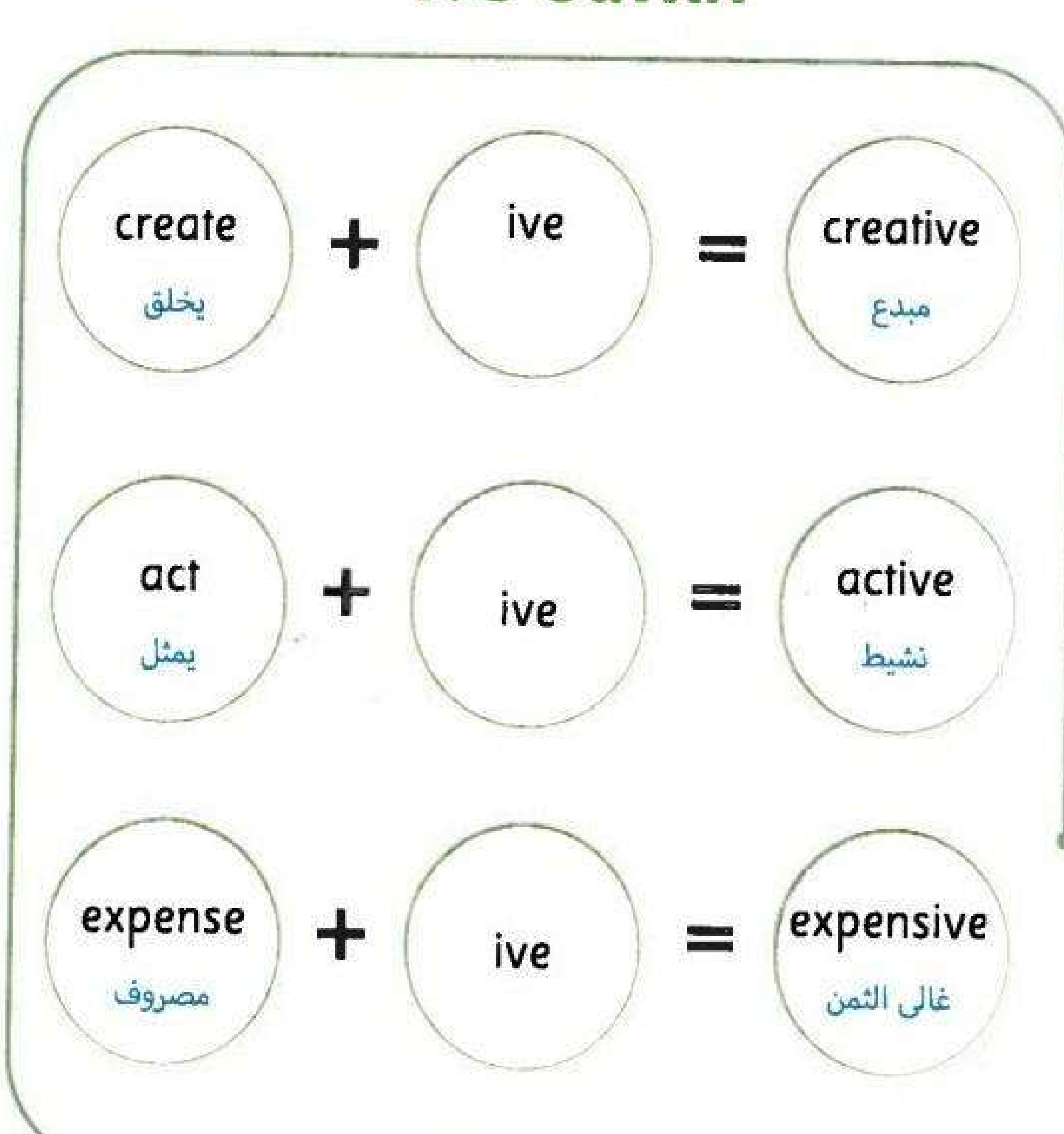
بعض الصفات لها لاحقات مشتركة:

e.g.

- ous suffix



- ive suffix



Check

Choose the correct answer:

1. His watch is very (expense – expenses – expensive – expensing).
2. The mountain is really (enormous – poisonous – active – expensive).
3. Ali is never lazy. He is always (act – activity – active – acted).
4. Dr. Magdi Yacoub is very (dangerous – famous – enormous – poisonous).
5. He is very clever. He is always (dangerous – expensive – poison – creative).
6. Be careful of snakes. They are (creative – famous – active – poisonous).



CLIL: Math



5. Look, read, and notice: انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:

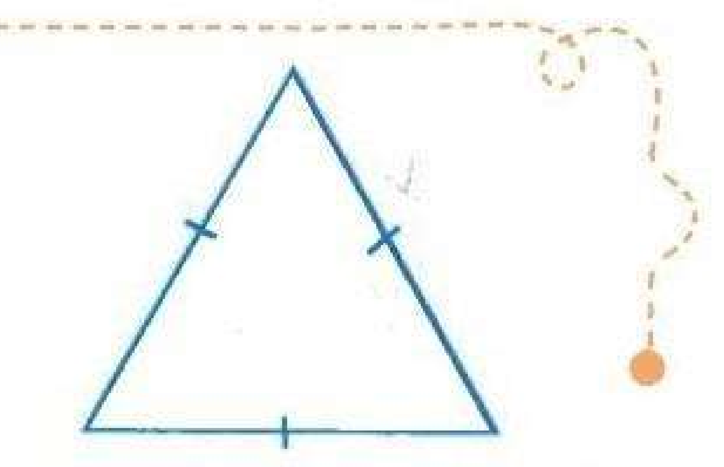
A triangle is a 2D shape with three sides.

المثلث شكل ثنائى الأبعاد بثلاثة أضلاع.

Types of triangles أنواع المثلثات

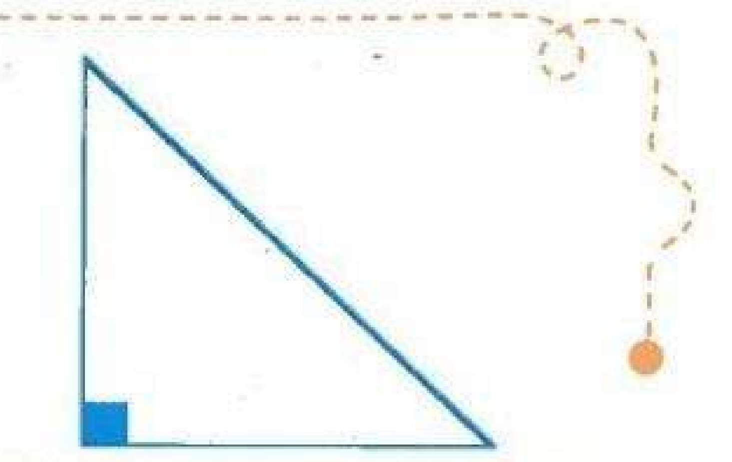
An equilateral triangle has three equal sides.

مثلث متساوى الأضلاع له ثلاثة أضلاع متساوية.



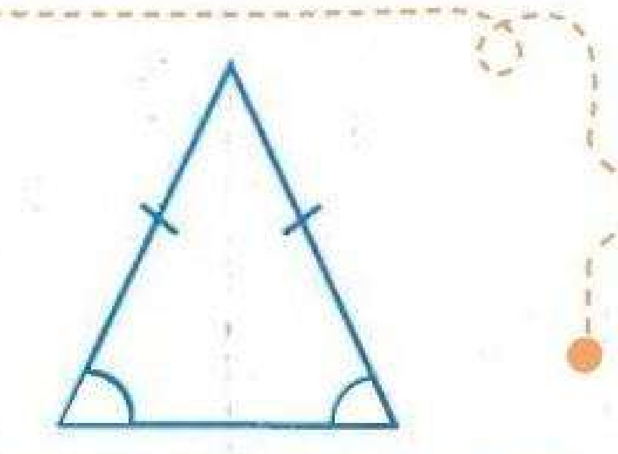
A right angle triangle has one angle that measures 90°.

مثلث قائم الزاوية له زاوية قياسها ٩٠ درجة.



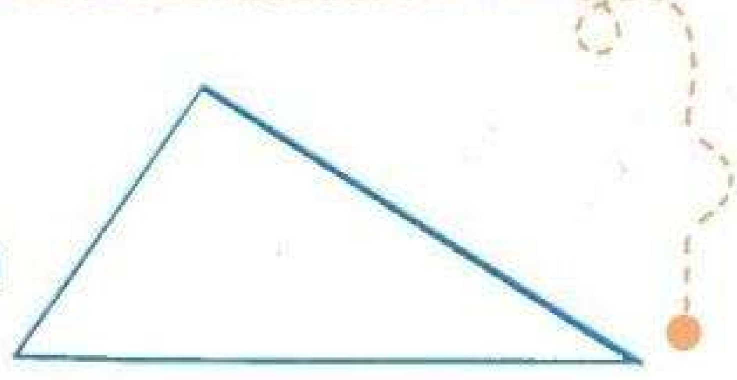
An isosceles triangle has two sides of equal length.

مثلث متساوى الساقين له ضلعان متساويان فى الطول.



A scalene triangle has three sides of different length.

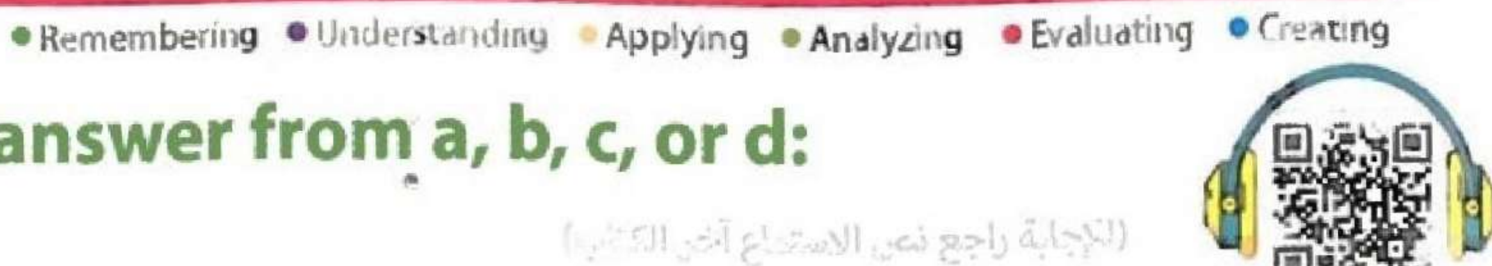
المثلث مختلف الاضلاع له ثلاثة جوانب مختلفة فى الطول.





Lesson 3





1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(الإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 It was a .... summer.
a) warm b) cool c) cold d) hot

2 Ali wanted to go .... like his cousin Hossam.
a) to school b) to work c) on vacation d) on business

3 Ali's dad had a new ....
a) job b) home c) car d) school

4 Ali's family had to stay in ....
a) Aswan b) Luxor c) Alexandria d) Cairo

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 He bought a very .... car last month.
a) expense b) poisonous c) expensive d) creative

2 I bought a new jacket made of ....
a) metal b) gold c) glass d) leather

3 He always has new ideas. He is very ....
a) creative b) enormous c) famous d) dangerous

4 Naguib Mahfouz is a famous writer. He is a/an ....
a) farmer b) player c) author d) teacher

5 Don't walk on that dark street. It's very ....
a) creative b) active c) dangerous d) poisonous

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

My mother's birthday is on Thursday, March 23rd. My brother, father, and I are going to plan a surprise party for my mother! The three of us hope that the weather will be nice for the birthday party. We are going to invite some of my mother's friends – about thirty people. My brother, father, and I want to get her a new leather bag and a hat with a feather on it. We think she will like these things! After the party, we think mom will get to enjoy all the new gifts.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 They are going to invite about .... people to the party.
a) 23 b) 13 c) 30 d) 33

2 The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the ....
a) part b) bag c) hat d) birthday

B Answer the following questions:

3 When is mother's birthday?

....

4 Who is going to plan the Surprise Party?

....

5 What do they want to get their mother?

....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 to – on – Seleem – vacation – wanted – go.

....

2 expensive – very – His – is – watch.

....

3 That – Be – poisonous – snake – careful! – is.

....

4 feeling – a – am – I – low – bit.

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 Mohamed Salah is a very .... (fame) footballer.
2 That phone is very .... (expense). Can we buy a cheaper one?
3 Ali always swims and runs. He's very .... (act).
4 Lions are the most .... (danger) animals.

6 Punctuate the following:

soha is very creative

....

7 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

"Al-Azhar Park"

مجاب عنه صفحة 256

on vacation – make a picnic – sit on a bench

....

....

....

....

....



Lessons 4 & 5

Writing & Project





A Writing



1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

Marrakech	مراكش	Morocco	المغرب	Eiffel Tower	برج إيفل
Paris	باريس	France	فرنسا	diary	مفكرة (مذكرات / يوميات)
sights	معالم المدينة	Louvre	متحف اللوفر	market stalls	أكشاك السوق
sand dunes	كثبان رملية	beach buggies	عربات الشاطئ	local dishes	أكلات محلية

Extra vocabulary

diary entry	تدوينة (مذكرات)	dear (adj.)	عزيزى / عزيزق	paintings	لوحات
metal	معدن	a bit	إلى حد ما	market place	ساحة السوق
smells	روائح	date	التاريخ	formal language	لغة رسمية
crowded (adj.)	مزدحم	private (adj.)	خاص	snorkeling	رياضة الغطس
turtles	سلاحف	relaxed (adj.)	هادئ (للأيام)	cultural (adj.)	ثقاق

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعــال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
remind	يذكّر	reminded	race	يتسابق	raced
shop	يتسوق	shopped	wander	يتجول	wandered

Irregular verbs أفعــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
speak	يتحدث	spoke	understand	يفهم	understood
spend	يقضى	spent	go	يذهب	went

Expressions and Phrases

such a cool day	ياله من يوم رائع	made of	مصنوع من
so much to do	الكثير لتفعله	remind ... of	يذكر (شخصًا) بـ ..
go snorkeling	يذهب للغطس	brightly-colored	ملون بألوان زاهية
keep up	يلحق	take home	يأخذه للوطن (البلد الأم)



2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Reem

July 21st
٢١ يوليو

Dear Diary,
مفكرتي العزيزة ،



Eiffel Tower, Paris, France

I had such a cool day today. I went on the river. We saw some famous sights from the boat, like the Louvre, a beautiful museum with fantastic paintings, and the Eiffel Tower. The Eiffel Tower is really tall and made of metal. I tried to speak French but I couldn't really say anything. But the French people were very kind and when I spoke English, they understood me! At the end of the day we went to a French restaurant and had a wonderful meal with potatoes. It was a special day.

لقد حظيت بيوم رائع اليوم. ذهبت إلى النهر. لقد رأينا بعض المعالم السياحية الشهيرة من القارب، مثل متحف اللوفر، وهو متحف جميل به لوحات رائعة، وبرج إيفل. برج إيفل مرتفع حقًا ومصنوع من المعدن. حاولت التحدث بالفرنسية لكنى لم أستطع قول أى شيء. لكن الفرنسيين كانوا طيبين للغاية وعندما تحدثت الإنجليزية فهمونى! فى نهاية اليوم ذهبنا إلى مطعم فرنسى وتناولنا وجبة رائعة مع البطاطس. لقد كان يومًا مميزًا.

Important sentences جمل هامة

* We saw some famous sights from the boat.
شاهدنا بعض المعالم السياحية الشهيرة من القارب.
* The Eiffel Tower is really tall and made of metal.
برج إيفل طويل للغاية ومصنوع من المعدن.
* Today we went to Ali Ben Youssef Madrasa, a beautiful museum that is 800 years old.
اليوم ذهبنا إلى مدرسة على بن يوسف وهو متحف جميل عمره ٨٠٠ سنة.
* We go to the beach to go snorkeling.
نذهب إلى الشاطئ للغطس.
* We race through the sand dunes in the beach buggies.
نتسابق عبر الكثبان الرملية فى عربات الشاطئ.



Think!

We shouldn't read other people's diaries because they are private.
But it is important to read diaries from the past to learn about the history and culture of ancient people.

لا ينبغى لنا أن نقرأ مذكرات الآخرين؛ لأنها خاصة. ولكن من المهم قراءة مذكرات من الماضى للتعرف على تاريخ وثقافة القدماء.

How to write a diary entry
كيف تكتب تدوينة

A Write the date when you start a new diary entry.

اكتب التاريخ عندما تبدأ تدوينة جديدة.

B You should start with "Dear Diary".

يجب أن تبدأ بـ «مفكرتي العزيزة».

C Describe the places and the events.

أوصف الأماكن والأحداث.

D You should write about how you felt.

يجب أن تكتب عن كيف كان شعورك.

E You should include personal pronouns like "I" and "me".

يجب عليك تضمين الضمائر الشخصية مثل «I» و «me».

Start with "Dear Diary" | Write the date

Amira

April 5th

Dear Diary,


Marrakech, Morocco

I love this city! There's so much to do. Today we went to Ali Ben Youssef Madrasa, a beautiful museum that is 800 years old! We went early in the morning but it was still very busy with people. We also visited Jardin Majorelle, a lovely garden where we had a picnic. I like it there because it reminds me a bit of Al-Azhar Park at home. But my favorite place is Jemaa el-Fnaa, the market place. The smells coming from the market stalls make me hungry! I had a sandwich yesterday. I can't wait to go back there tomorrow!

Describe the places | Include personal pronouns | Write about how you felt

الخامس من إبريل

مفكرتي العزيزة،

أنا أحب هذه المدينة! هنالك الكثير لفعله. ذهبنا اليوم إلى مدرسة على بن يوسف، متحف جميل عمره ٨٠٠ عام! ذهبنا فى الصباح الباكر لكنه كان لا يزال مشغولًا للغاية بالناس. زرنا أيضًا حديقة ماجوريل، وهى حديقة جميلة حيث كان لدينا نزهة. أحبها هناك لأنها تذكرنى قليلًا بحديقة الأزهر فى الوطن. لكن مكانى المفضل هو جامع الفناء، السوق. الروائح القادمة من أكشاك السوق تجعلنى أشعر بالجوع! تناولت شطيرة أمس. لا أطيق الانتظار للعودة إلى هناك غدًا!



B Project



3. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

My perfect vacation إجازتى المثالية

Day 1

In the morning, we go to the beach to go snorkeling. Swim with the turtles and brightly-colored fish! The afternoon can be spent on the beach with a picnic and a good book.



اليوم الأول

فى الصباح نذهب إلى الشاطئ للغطس. أسبح مع السلاحف والأسماك ذات الألوان الزاهية! يمكن قضاء فترة ما بعد الظهر على الشاطئ مع نزهة وكتاب جيد.

Day 2

Today, we race through the sand dunes in beach buggies! It's fun and fast! Can you keep up?



اليوم الثانى

اليوم نتسابق عبر الكثبان الرملية فى عربات الشاطئ! إنه ممتع وسريع! هل يمكنك أن تلحق بى؟

Day 3

Spend a relaxed day shopping and wandering through the markets. Perhaps buy some traditional handicrafts to take home.



اليوم الثالث

اقض يومًا خفيفًا فى التسوق والتجول فى الأسواق. ربما تشترى بعض المشغولات اليدوية التقليدية لأخذها إلى الوطن.

Day 4

Learn about the city's cultural past with a trip to the museum today. In the evening, we go to a traditional restaurant where you can see the chef making the local dishes.



اليوم الرابع

تعرف على ماضى المدينة الثقافى برحلة إلى المتحف اليوم. فى المساء، نذهب إلى مطعم تقليدى حيث يمكنك رؤية الشيف وهو يعد الأطباق المحلية.



Lessons 4 & 5



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Rana and her family are on vacation in ....
a) Egypt b) London c) France d) China

2 The Eiffel Tower is really tall and made of ....
a) cloth b) metal c) wood d) glass

3 When she spoke ...., French people understood her.
a) English b) Arabic c) German d) French

4 They had a .... meal at a French restaurant.
a) little b) bad c) salty d) wonderful

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 We saw some famous .... from the boat.
a) smells b) dishes c) sides d) sights

2 Laila wrote about her trip in her ....
a) wall b) bag c) ticket d) diary

3 The place is full of people. It's very ....
a) private b) calm c) crowded d) relaxed

4 The .... coming from the market stalls make me hungry!
a) people b) smells c) cultural d) metal

5 You can see beautiful .... in the museum.
a) dishes b) buggies c) paintings d) boats

6 Nader won the .... He ran the fastest and came first.
a) stall b) race c) picnic d) diaries

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

I'm Amr. I had a perfect vacation in Sharm El-Shaikh. On the first day, I went to the beach in the morning to go snorkeling. I swam with the turtles and brightly-colored fish! I spent the afternoon on the beach with a picnic and a good book. On the second day, I raced through the sand dunes in beach buggies! On the third day, we wandered through the markets and bought some traditional handicrafts to take home. On the fourth day, we went to a traditional restaurant where you can see the chef making the local dishes.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Amr raced through the sand dunes in.............................. .
a) cars b) motorbikes c) bicycles d) beach buggies

2 The underlined word "wandered" means ....

a) talked b) walked around c) chatted d) spoke

B Answer the following questions:

3 How did Amr spend his second day?

....

4 What did Amr buy from the markets?

....

5 When did Amr go to the traditional restaurant?

....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 such – I – day – a cool – had – today.

....

2 am – Morocco – vacation – I – on – in.

....

3 French – went – a – We – restaurant – to.

....

4 wait – go – can't – tomorrow – I – back – to.

....

5 Punctuate the following:



1 I tried to speak french, but I couldn t.

....

2 can you keep up

....

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

"A day when I did something special"



Place	Dahab, Egypt
Tourist Attractions	the beach, bazaars
Activities	snorkeling, safari



....

....

....

....

Unit 11 REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التى وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

ticket	تذكرة	suitcase	حقيبة سفر
hotel	فندق	tourist	سائح
passport	جواز سفر	swimming pool	حمام سباحة
trip	رحلة	husband	زوج
business	عمل	flight	رحلة جوية
Singapore	سنغافورة	floor	دور / طابق
view	منظر	airport	مطار

Lesson (2)

Amman Citadel	قلعة عمان	Roman Amphitheater	المدرج الرومانى
Archaeological Museum	المتحف الأثرى	Abu Jaber Museum	متحف أبو جابر
Dead Sea	البحر الميت	Jordanian	أردنى
tour	جولة	handicrafts	مشغولات يدوية
tour guide	مرشد سياحى	mud	طين
art	فن	culture	ثقافة
crafts	مصنوعات (مشغولات)	rug	سجادة صغيرة

Lesson (3)

Al-Azhar Park	حديقة الأزهر	vacation	إجازة
beach	شاطئ	job	وظيفة
a bit low	مُحبط / حزين	picnic	نزهة
bench	مقعد	show	عرض
leather	جلد	author	مؤلف
dangerous	خطير	enormous	ضخم
famous	مشهور	expensive	غالى الثمن
creative	مبدع	active	نشيط

Lessons (4 & 5)

sights	معالم المدينة	diary	مفكرة
market stalls	أكشاك السوق	Marrakech	مراكش
Morocco	المغرب	Eiffel Tower	برج إيفل
Paris	باريس	France	فرنسا
sand dunes	كثبان رملية	beach buggies	عربات الشاطئ
paintings	لوحات	metal	معدن
private	خاص	turtles	سلاحف
cultural	ثقافى	smells	روائح

Language Focus

Prepositions of Time (on / at / in)

We use on with:

- days of the week — e.g. I go swimming on Mondays.
- special days — e.g. I give my mother a present on Mother's Day.
- specific dates — e.g. My birthday is on June 1st.
- on the weekend — e.g. We go shopping on the weekend.

We use at with:

- times — e.g. Our flight lands at 8 pm.
- at lunchtime — e.g. We play basketball at lunchtime.
- at night — e.g. I go to bed at night.

We use in with:

- months — e.g. We visit our cousins in June.
- seasons — e.g. We went on vacation in the summer.
- years — e.g. I was born in 2010.
- times of the day — e.g. They arrived in the morning.





Unit 11 CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY

تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

تذكرة	....	حقيبة سفر	....
فندق	....	سائح	....
جواز سفر	....	حمام سباحة	....
رحلة	....	زوج	....
منظر	....	سطح	....
رحلة جوية	....	مدينة الملاهى	....

Lesson 2

جولة	....	مصنوعات (مشغولات)	....
قلعة عمان	....	تاريخ	....
البحر الميت	....	تقليدى	....
قديم	....	فن	....
مشغولات يدوية	....	سجادة صغيرة	....
طين	....	مرشد سياحى	....

Lesson 3

حديقة الأزهر	....	إجازة	....
نزهة	....	مقعد	....
ملعب	....	وظيفة	....
عرض	....	محبط / حزين	....
أب	....	ملابس	....
خطير	....	مبدع	....
غالى الثمن	....	مشهور	....
نشيط	....	ضخم	....
سام	....	أم	....

Lessons 4 & 5

مفكرة	....	برج ايفل	....
معالم المدينة	....	فرنسا	....
أكشاك السوق	....	عربات الشاطئ	....
المغرب	....	روائح	....
كثبان رملية	....	معدن	....

WRITING TIME



لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about a vacation in Singapore:

1. Singapore is (صفة) … .
2. There are lots of (أسماء أماكن) … .
3. Yesterday, we went on (نوع الرحلة) … .
4. There is (مكان مميز) … .

A vacation in Singapore

Singapore is a wonderful city. There are lots of high-rise buildings, but there are also many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax. Yesterday, we went on a boat trip with some other tourists to an island. There is a theme park, too.

How to write a diary entry:

Dear Diary, تاريخ اليوم

1. Today was (وصف لليوم).
2. I went to (اسم المكان).
3. I went with (أسماء الأشخاص).
4. We went there by (وسيلة المواصلات).
5. We sat on a bench and enjoyed …
   اذكر أشياء أعجبتك.

A diary entry

Dear Diary, May 6th

Today was the best day ever! I went to Al-Azhar Park. I went with my friends. We went there by bus. We made a picnic, so when we arrived, we sat under a big tree on grass. We played football, then we sat on a bench and enjoyed all the beautiful plants and birds in the park.

How to write about a trip to Jordan:

1. We went to (اسم البلد) on vacation.
2. We had (اسم الوجبة) at (اسم مطعم مشهور).
3. The next day, we visited (أماكن أثرية مشهورة).
4. We bought (مشتريات) … .

A trip to Jordan

We went to Jordan on vacation. We had a traditional Jordanian dinner at the Memphis restaurant. The next day, we visited the famous Amman Citadel, explored the Roman Amphitheater and the Archaeological Museum. We bought traditional Jordanian handicrafts from the stalls.

Unit 11 STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER


يتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التى وردت بكتاب الوزارة.

1 Look and write:

hotel – passport – swimming pool – suitcase – ticket – tourist

① 

....

② 
....

③ 

....

④ 
....

⑤ 
....

⑥ 
....

2 Read the words and write them on the correct list:

beach – camera – city – hotel – museum – passport – suitcase
sunglasses – swimming pool – theme park – ticket

Things you take on vacation	Places you go on vacation
....	....
....	....
....	....
....	....

3 Complete the sentences with at, on, or in:

1 Dad is a baker. He works .... the mornings.

2 We go to the club .... Saturdays.

3 Does our next class start .... 2 pm?

4 Grandma was born .... 1962.

5 Reem's birthday is .... December 4th.



UNIT 11





1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Last week, Sami enjoyed a .... to Amman.
a) trip b) tour c) meal d) diary

2 Sami visited the famous Amman ....
a) Library b) Hotel c) Museum d) Citadel

3 He had a late .... in a local restaurant.
a) breakfast b) dinner c) lunch d) snacks

4 He walked through Amman's many colorful ....
a) markets b) streets c) museums d) restaurants

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 1.5

1 Today, Dad .... an email from his sister Salma.
a) packed b) traveled c) wandered d) received

2 We need a .... to travel to another country. القاهرة - حدائق القبة 2024
a) password b) home c) passport d) library

3 We bought some traditional handicrafts from the ....
a) airport b) pools c) stalls d) museum

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 1.5



float – town – heart – skin

I traveled to Jordan last year with my family. We visited the ancient ....(1).......... of As-Salt. We found local Jordanian culture there. No visit to Jordan is complete without a trip to the Dead Sea. There is so much salt in this sea that you are able to ....(2).......... on the water! You can also enjoy the Dead Sea mud, which is very good for your ....(3).......... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 7



الدقهلية - غرب المنصورة 2024

Last year, I went to Dubai with my family. The flight from Egypt took about four hours, but it was comfortable and we all slept. It didn't take long to get through the airport. When we arrived, we got our suitcases straight away. Dubai is a wonderful place to visit. There are lots of high-rise buildings, but there are also many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax. We went to Burj Khalifa and met a lot of tourists there. It was a lovely vacation.

A **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1 The flight from .... was comfortable.

a) England b) France c) Mexico d) Egypt

2 Dubai is a .... place to visit.

a) fit b) bad c) wonderful d) boring

B **Answer the following questions:**

3 Where did the writer and his family go last year? ....

4 How was the flight? ....

5 Who did they meet at Burj Khalifa? ....

Writing

5 **Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:** 1

1 the weekend – suitcases – packed – We – our – for.

القاهرة - إدارة الساحل 2024

....

2 spend – Where – will – you – next – your – vacation?

....

6 **Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:** 4

1 I go to the club ....(in) the weekend.

2 They go to school ....(on) 7 o'clock.

القاهرة - إدارة بدر 2024

7 **Punctuate the following:** 4

1 it's hot here in singapore.

....

2 what did they buy at the market

....

8 **Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:** 7

"My perfect vacation"

القاهرة - روض الفرج 2024

مجاب عنه صفحة 256

Where did you go? – What did you do?

....

....

....

....





Assess your progress

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

تحتوى هذه الصفحه على أسئلة خاصة بمواصفات الأزهر.



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 The flight landed at (5 – 4 – 6) o'clock in the afternoon.

2 Nada was surprised that it was so warm in (November – October – September).

3 The hotel's room was very (comfortable – bad – small).

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

I'm Nadia. I'm on a business trip with my husband, Hani, traveling around the world. This week, we are in Singapore. It's hot here – about 36 degrees. We have got a lovely hotel room. We're on the 42nd floor. The view is beautiful, and we can see the beach. There's a huge swimming pool on the roof of the hotel! Singapore is a wonderful city. There are lots of high-rise buildings. There are also many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 This week, Nadia is in ....
a) Egypt b) America c) Singapore d) France

2 It's .... in Singapore.
a) rainy b) hot c) cold d) sunny

3 They're on the .... floor.
a) twenty second b) forty second c) thirty second d) forty third

B Answer the following questions:

4 How is the view? ....

5 What is there on the roof of the hotel? ....

3 Choose the correct answer:

1 The restaurant opened (at – in – on) 2002.

2 His birthday is (at – in – on) November 20th.

3 My brother is very (creative – expensive – poisonous). His teachers love him.

4 You need a (sunglasses – suitcase – hotel) to pack your clothes in.

5 A (school – hotel – passport) is somewhere to stay when you are on vacation.

APRIL REVISION

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من المراجعة على محتوى شهر إبريل.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 You need the .... when you travel abroad. محافظة الجيزة - إدارة حدائق أكتوبر التعليمية 2024

a) suitcase b) hotel c) passport d) beach

2 We need to pack our .... to travel to Spain. محافظة أسيوط - إدارة الغنايم التعليمية 2024

a) suitcases b) buses c) tourists d) boats

3 The .... help tourists know more information about Egypt.

محافظة الجيزة - إدارة الهرم التعليمية 2024

a) tour guides b) vets c) farmers d) dentists

4 We catch the plane from the ....

a) station b) airport c) park d) bus stop

5 My father always drinks his tea with .... محافظة القاهرة - إدارة العبور التعليمية 2024

a) garlic b) oil c) mint d) salt

6 We enjoyed a delicious meal at a traditional Egyptian ....

محافظة القاهرة - إدارة السلام التعليمية 2024

a) restaurant b) museum c) garden d) school

7 I like reading in the .... It's often quiet. محافظة القليوبية إدارة طوخ التعليمية 2024

a) bank b) station c) factory d) library

8 There are many .... in the museum. محافظة بنى سويف - إدارة بنى سويف التعليمية 2024

a) toys b) games c) monuments d) cars

9 Fareeda spent her .... in Aswan last year. محافظة الجيزة 2024

a) lunch b) vacation c) mother d) dog

10 His car is very .... It costs a lot of money. محافظة الجيزة - إدارة حدائق الأهرام التعليمية 2024

a) cheap b) boring c) happy d) expensive

11 Shoes are made of .... محافظة أسيوط - إدارة صدفة التعليمية 2024

a) leather b) plastic c) glass d) wood

12 Be careful! Snakes are .... محافظة الجيزة - إدارة الدقى التعليمية 2024

a) famous b) nice c) dangerous d) safe

13 She always has new ideas. She is very ....

a) creative b) enormous c) famous d) dangerous

14 We can go for a family .... in the park.

a) name b) picnic c) subject d) pot

15 Mona and her friend went to the .... to buy clothes.

a) bank b) shopping mall c) square d) factory

16 Excuse me, how can I get to the train ....?

a) monument b) square c) wheels d) station

17 I need to go to the .... to borrow some money.

a) square b) library c) bank d) museum

18 When someone can't find the way, he/she is ....

a) happy b) excited c) lost d) best

19 My father works in the .... that makes toys.

a) museum b) library c) station d) factory

20 Places that tourists like to visit are called tourist ....

a) attractions b) attentions c) mentions d) fictions

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A)

floor – high – park – relax

محافظة القاهرة - إدارة الوايلى التعليمية 2024

Mona is on a business trip in Singapore: She's got a lovely hotel room on the fourth ....(1)............ . The view is beautiful and she can see the beach. There's a huge swimming pool on the roof of the hotel. Singapore is a wonderful city. There are lots of ....(2)............ buildings. There are many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and ....(3)............ .

B)

restaurant – live – fresh – cuisine

محافظة القاهرة - إدارة روض الفرج التعليمية 2024

I've lived in Alexandria all my life. I own a ....(1)............ here so I have to say that you must visit my restaurant. You can try some of the local ....(2)............ . We serve traditional Egyptian food using lovely ....(3)............ local ingredients. I prefer to buy my ingredients at the market in the old town.

C)

beach – lake – Park – ticket

There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein. The city is on the ....(1)............ so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. This beautiful beach is 14 kilometers long. There is also a large, green ....(2)............ right in the middle of the city. You can also visit the beautiful International ....(3)............ .

D)

sights – paintings – fish – cool

I had such a ....(1).............. day today. I went on the river. We saw some famous ....(2).............. from the boat, like the Louvre, a beautiful museum with fantastic ....(3)............, and the Eiffel Tower. The Eiffel Tower is really tall and made of metal.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 ....(Turns) on the TV, please. محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة بلقاس التعليمية 2024

2 ....(Goes) straight, turn left at the end of the road. محافظة القاهرة - إدارة السلام التعليمية 2024

3 ....(Doesn't) park your car here. محافظة بني سويف - إدارة بني سويف التعليمية 2024

4 Don't ....(playing) in the street. محافظة بني سويف - إدارة الواسطى التعليمية 2024

5 We go to school .... (on) eight o'clock. محافظة القاهرة - إدارة الخانكة التعليمية 2024

6 The restaurant opened .... (on) 2020.

7 They play tennis .... (in) the weekend.

8 In England, it often snows .... (at) December.

9 Eslam always studies English .... (in) night.

10 We usually go to Alexandria .... (on) summer.

11 He would like to get new shoes .... (in) his birthday.

12 The film starts .... (in) 7:30.

13 We went back to our hotel .... (at) Wednesday.

14 I always drink coffee .... (at) the evening.

15 .... (Doesn't) walk in the middle of the road.

16 .... (Standing) up when the teacher talks to you.

17 Don't..............................(runs) from behind a car.

18 ....(Takes) a seat, please.

19 ....(Doesn't) touch the monuments.

20 ....(Pushed) the elevator's button, Ali.

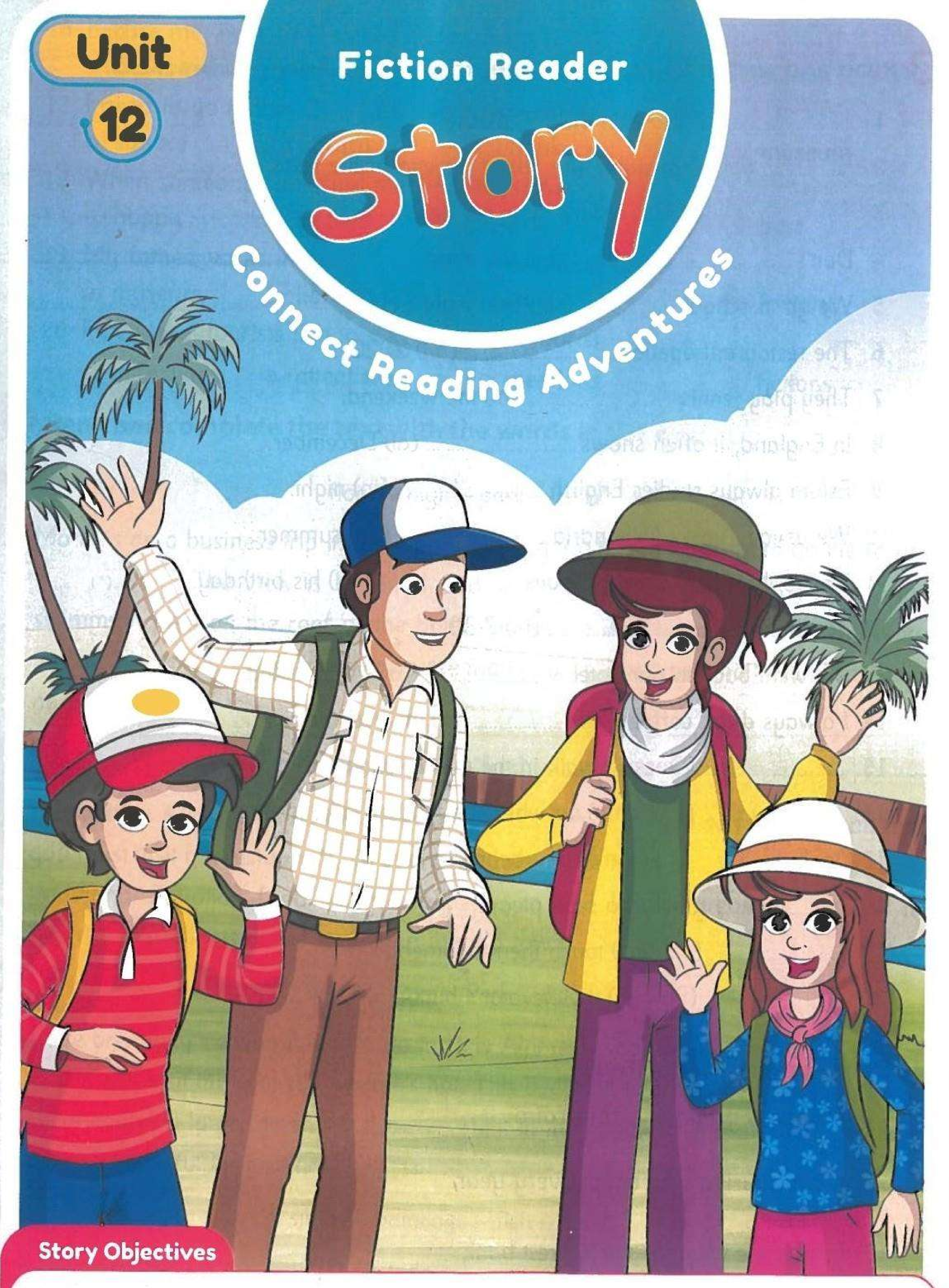
4 Punctuate the following:

1 Manar is originally from cairo

2 many tourists visit egypt every year.

3 Excuse me where is the nearest bank

4 i go swimming on mondays.



Story Objectives

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:
  - identify the characters and the main events in a story.
  - guess what is going to happen next in a story.
  - give an opinion about a story.

- بنهاية القصة سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:
  - يتعرف الشخصيات والأحداث الرئيسية فى القصة.
  - يخمن ما الذى سوف يحدث بعد ذلك فى القصة.
  - يعطى رأيًا عن القصة.

A Fantastic Family Adventure



Title

العنوان

مغامرة عائلية رائعة



Retold by Nicola Gardner

Illustrated by Nathalie Ortega



Author

المؤلف

Illustrator

الرسام

Warm-up

Ramy and Malak are brother and sister. A group of archaeologists found a skeleton of a dinosaur near their grandparents' village. The kids' uncle is one of these archaeologists, so they want to see the skeleton. They travel to the village with their family. They want to go through a nature trail to reach that place. They prepare their food and tools, then they go on the trip. They see many animals, plants, birds, and rocks in the desert.
They find bones of an old ibex in the desert. In the end, they manage to reach the place and see the skeleton of the dinosaur. They had a fantastic adventure. The kids learned to look around them in the environment and notice things carefully.

رامى وملك أخوان. وجد مجموعة من علماء الآثار هيكلًا عظميًا لديناصور بالقرب من قرية أجداد الأطفال. عم الأولاد واحد من هؤلاء العلماء، لذلك يريد الأولاد أن يروا الهيكل. يسافر الأولاد إلى القرية مع عائلتهم. يريد أفراد العائلة أن يمروا من خلال ممر طبيعى (ممر مخصص للمشى) وصولًا إلى مكان الهيكل. يقوم أفراد العائلة بتجهيز الطعام والأدوات اللازمة لينطلقوا فى الرحلة. تتمكن العائلة من رؤية العديد من الحيوانات، النباتات، الطيور والصخور فى الصحراء. يجدون عظامًا لحيوان الوعل الأثرى (ماعز يعيش فى جبال الألب) فى الصحراء. تتمكن العائلة من الوصول إلى المكان فى النهاية وتتمكن من رؤية هيكل الديناصور. كانت مغامرة رائعة للعائلة. تعلم الأولاد النظر حولهم فى البيئة وملاحظة الأشياء بحرص.

Study

Story
A Fantastic Family Adventure
مغامرة عائلية رائعة



A Main Vocabulary



1. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:



Picture Dictionary قاموس الصور



dinosaur ديناصور

Dinosaurs were very big animals which lived millions of years ago.

الديناصورات حيوانات ضخمة عاشت لملايين السنوات في الماضي.



bones عظام

Our body has many bones to help us stand up.

توجد بأجسامنا العديد من العظام لتساعدنا على الوقوف.



skeleton هيكل عظمي

Fish and other animals have a skeleton made of bones inside their bodies.

لدى الأسماك والحيوانات الأخرى هيكل عظمي مصنوع من عظام بداخل أجسامهم.



tracks آثار أقدام

Animals' feet leave tracks on the ground where they walked.

أقدام الحيوانات تترك آثارًا على الأرض حيث تمشي.



binoculars منظار (مجهر ذو عينين)

She likes looking at things in the distance with her binoculars.

تحب (هي) النظر إلى الأشياء البعيده باستخدام المنظار الخاص بها.



ibex حيوان الوعل (ماعز جبلي يعيش في جبال الألب)

An ibex is a type of desert animal like a gazelle.

حيوان الوعل هو حيوان يعيش في الصحراء يشبه الغزال.



archaeologist عالم آثار

An archaeologist is someone who digs underground to find objects from many years ago and studies them.

عالم الآثار هو شخص يحفر تحت الأرض ليجد أشياء من سنوات عديدة مضت ويقوم بدراستها.



archaeological dig حفر أثري

An archaeological dig is when people work together to find something under the ground.

الحفر الأثري هو عندما يعمل مجموعة أشخاص معًا ليجدوا شيئًا تحت الأرض.


NEWSPAPER
Lorem ipsum
yard حديقة منزل
newspaper جريدة
village قرية
desert صحراء
nature trail
متنزه طبيعى (ممر مخصص للمشى)
feteer فطير
mint tea شاى بالنعناع
hats قبعات
scarves أوشحة
sunglasses نظارات شمسية
snacks وجبات خفيفة
backpacks حقائب ظهر
cactus plants
نباتات الصبار
palm trees أشجار النخيل
sheep أغنام
camels جمال
fennec fox
الفَنَك (ثعلب الصحراء)
dorcas gazelle
غزال دوركاس (غزال يعيش فى الصحراء)
sand cat
قط الرمال (قط يعيش فى الصحراء)
rocks صخور
map خريطة
rain مطر
wind رياح
planet كوكب

Extra vocabulary

suddenly	فجأة	inside	داخل
scary (adj.)	مرعب/ مخيف	adventure	مغامرة
prepare (v.)	يجهز	area	منطقة
part	جزء	warm (adj.)	دافئ
perfect (adj.)	مثالى	pleased (adj.)	مسرور
quietly	بهدوء	carefully	بحرص
continue (v.)	يستمر	path	ممر
strange (adj.)	غريب	photographs	صور
certainly	بالتأكيد	probably	من المحتمل
type	نوع	ancient (adj.)	قديم/ أثرى
exist (v.)	يتواجد	disappointed (adj.)	محبط
dry (adj.)	جاف	notice (v.)	يلاحظ
hard (adj.)	صعب	surface	سطح
environment	بيئة	discover (v.)	يكتشف
climate change	تغير مناخى	rare (adj.)	نادر
fascinating (adj.)	مذهل	nature	الطبيعة

Expressions and Phrases

That's awesome.	إنه رائع .	That's right./You're right.	هذا صحيح/أنت على حق
That's a great idea.	يا لها من فكرة رائعة.	It's good/lovely to see you.	من الجيد رؤيتك.
It's lovely to be here.	من الرائع التواجد هنا.	Well done!	أحسنت!
under the ground	تحت الأرض	in fact	فى الحقيقة....
That's good/bad for	إنه جيد/ سيئ جيد / سيئ لـ	get ready	يستعد
It's such a cool job!	يا لها من وظيفة رائعة!	Thank you dear.	شكرًا يا عزيزى/ عزيزتى.
See you soon.	أراك قريبًا.	look around	ينظر حول
look for	يبحث عن	blow away	يعصف بعيدًا
go back	يعود	a group of	مجموعة من





2. Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:



الشخصيات

Main characters
الشخصيات الرئيسية



Ramy
رامى



Malak
ملك



Dad
الأب



Mom
الأم



Grandma
الجدة



Grandpa
الجد

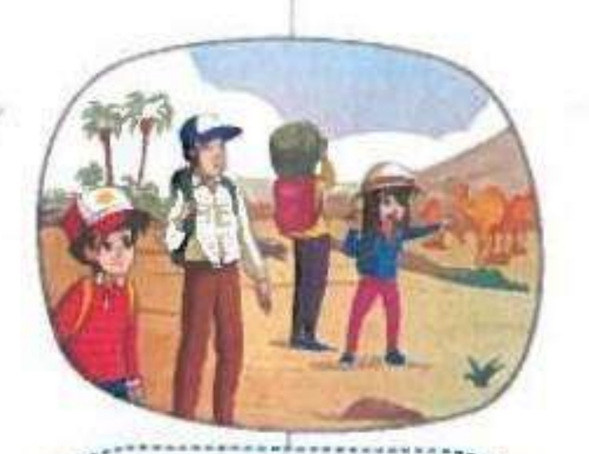


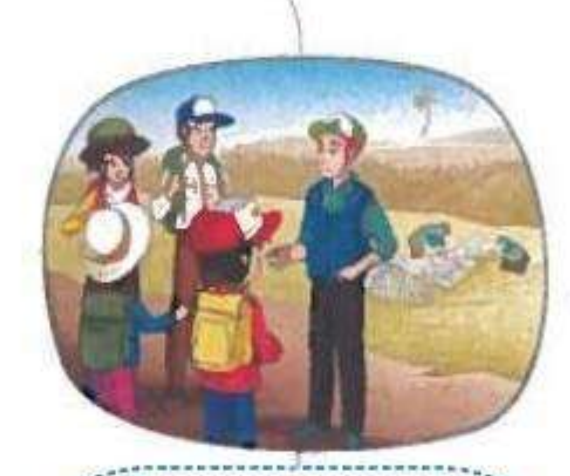
Uncle Youssef
العم يوسف











The family's house منزل العائلة	Grandparents' house منزل الأجداد	The nature trail متنزه طبيعى (ممر مخصص للمشى)	The area of the dinosaur skeleton المنطقة المحيطة بهيكل الديناصور









The Beginning

Dad tells Ramy and Malak that a group of archaeologists found a dinosaur skeleton near their grandparents' village. The children want to go there to see the skeleton.

يخبر الوالد رامى وملك أن مجموعة من علماء الآثار وجدوا هيكل ديناصور بالقرب من قرية أجدادهم. يريد الولدان الذهاب إلى هناك لرؤية الهيكل.

The Middle

The family starts their adventure. The family goes along a nature trail to reach the skeleton area. They see many animals, plants, and birds. They also find bones of an ancient ibex in the desert.

تبدأ العائلة مغامرتها. تسير العائلة على طول المتنزه الطبيعى للوصول إلى منطقة الهيكل العظمى. يرون العديد من الحيوانات، النباتات والطيور. يرون عظام حيوان الوعل الأثرى (ماعز يعيش فى جبال الألب) فى الصحراء.

The End

Finally, the family reaches the area of the skeleton with Uncle Youssef. Uncle Youssef tells them about how archaeologists find ancient things.

فى النهاية، تصل العائلة إلى المنطقة المحيطة بالهيكل مع العم يوسف. يخبر العم يوسف العائلة عن عمل علماء الآثار ودورهم فى إيجاد الأشياء الأثرية.





3. Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:

The Beginning

Ramy and Malak are playing in the yard. Suddenly Dad calls them from the house. "Hey kids, come and see this story in the newspaper!"

The children run inside to see. Dad says, "Look. They found something amazing near Grandma and Grandpa's village."

"What is it, Dad?" asks Ramy. "It looks scary!"

Dad says, "No Ramy, it's not scary at all. It's the skeleton of a dinosaur. A group of archaeologists found it. And your uncle Youssef is one of those archaeologists!"

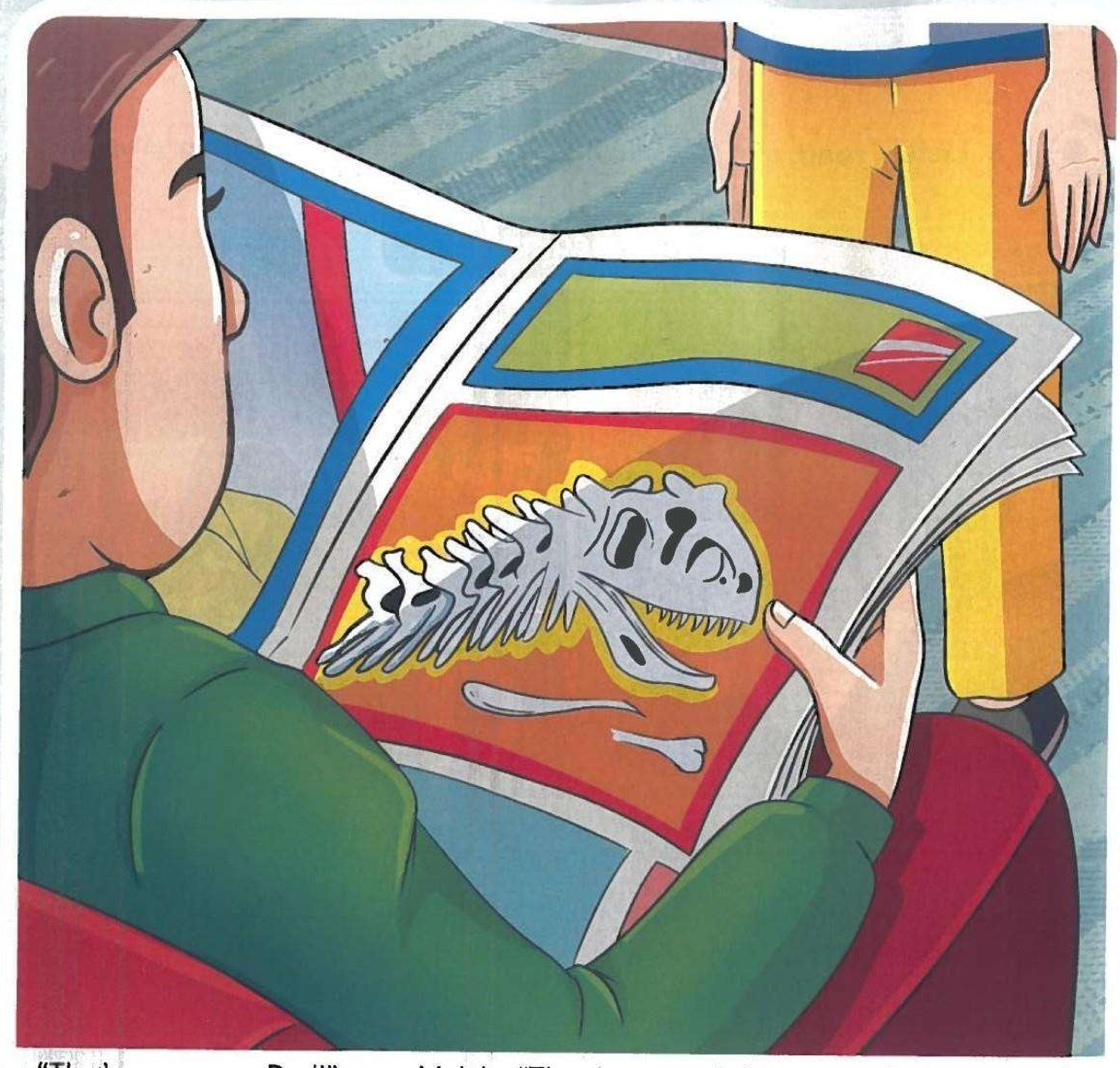
يلعب رامى ومَلَك فى حديقة المنزل. ينادى الأب عليهما من الداخل فجأة: «يا أطفال، تعالوا إلى هنا وانظروا إلى تلك القصة فى الجريدة».
يجرى الأولاد إلى الداخل. يقول الأب «لقد وجدوا شيئًا مذهلًا بالقرب من قرية أجدادكم».

يسأل رامى «ما هذا يا أبى؟» «يبدو مخيفًا!».

يقول الأب: «لا يا رامى، إنه ليس مخيفًا على الإطلاق. إنه هيكل عظمى لديناصور. وجده مجموعة من علماء الآثار. عمكم يوسف واحد من هؤلاء العلماء».

vocabulary

kids	أطفال	amazing (adj.)	مذهل	at all	على الإطلاق



"That's awesome, Dad!" says Malak. "The dinosaur skeleton is really old, isn't it?"
"Yes, that's right, Malak." says Dad. "It's about 98 million years old!"
"Wow! Uncle Youssef has got a really interesting job, hasn't he?" says Ramy.
"Yes, he has. And his work is important too. It helps us learn about the past." says Dad.

تقول ملك «هذا شيء رائع يا أبي، الهيكل العظمي الخاص بالديناصور قديم للغاية. أليس كذلك؟». يقول الأب: «نعم، هذا صحيح يا ملك، عمره يرجع إلى حوالي 98 مليون عام!». يقول رامي «واو، لدى العم يوسف وظيفة ممتعة. أليس كذلك؟». يقول الأب: «نعم، إنه كذلك وعمله مهم أيضًا. يساعدنا عمله في التعرف على الماضي».

vocabulary

interesting (adj.) ممتعة	important (adj.) مهم	the past الماضي



Later that evening Ramy and his family are having dinner.
Dad says, "Do you want to go there the next time we go to Grandma's house?"
Ramy says, "That's a great idea, Dad. It would be an adventure to go into the desert!"
Mom says, "There's a beautiful nature trail there." Why don't we walk that together?"
"Oh yes please, Mom! I love nature." says Malak.

يتناول رامى وعائلته وجبة العشاء لاحقًا هذا المساء. يقول الأب: «هل ترغبون فى الذهاب إلى هناك عندما نذهب إلى منزل جدتكم؟». يقول رامى: «إنها فكرة رائعة يا أبى. ستكون بمثابة مغامرة فى الصحراء». تقول الأم: «يوجد متنزه طبيعى هناك (ممر مخصص للمشى). لماذا لا نسير هناك معًا؟». تقول ملك: «أووه نعم، من فضلك يا أمى، أنا أحب الطبيعة.»

vocabulary

great idea	فكرة رائعة	beautiful (adj.)	جميل	together	معًا



"Ramy! Malak!" Grandma calls. She is so excited to see her grandchildren. "I have prepared your favorite things - *feteer* and mint tea! Come inside and eat."

"Hello," says Grandpa to Mom and Dad. "It's so good to see you."

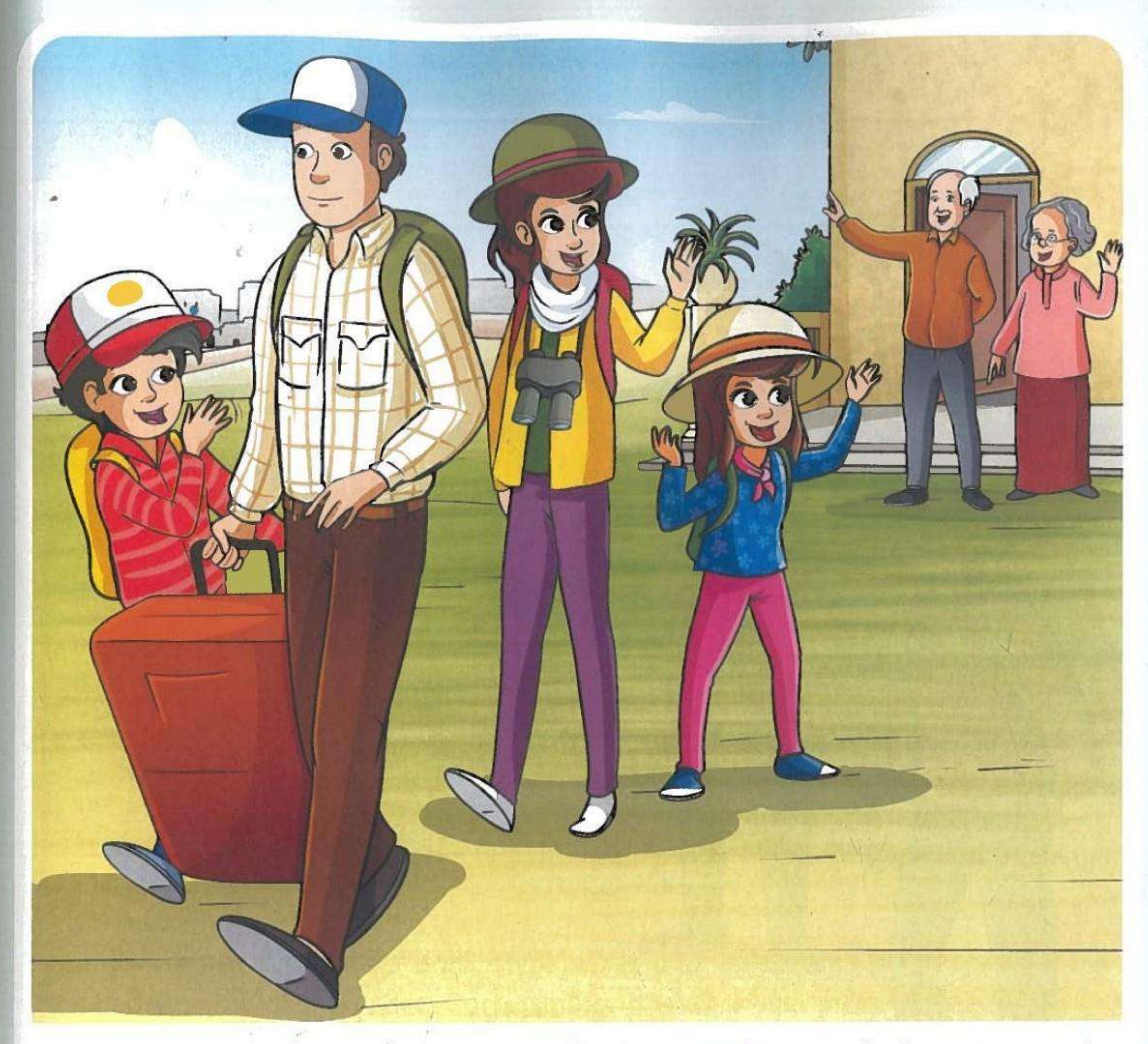
"It's lovely to be here," says Dad. "Tomorrow we want to take the children on a nature trail."

"Excellent," says Grandpa. "There's lots to see in our area. It's a beautiful place."

تنادى الجدة: «رامى! ملك!». هى متحمسة للغاية لرؤية أحفادها. «قمت بتجهيز طعامكما المفضل: فطير وشاى بالنعناع. تعاليا إلى الداخل وتناولا الطعام». يقول الجد: «مرحبًا» إلى الأم والأب «من الجيد رؤيتكما يقول الأب: «من الجيد التواجد هنا، سنأخذ الأولاد غدًا إلى الممر الطبيعى». يقول الجد: «ممتاز. يوجد الكثير من الأشياء لتروها فى منطقتنا. إنه مكان رائع».

vocabulary

excited (adj.) متحمس	grandchildren أحفاد	excellent (adj.) ممتاز



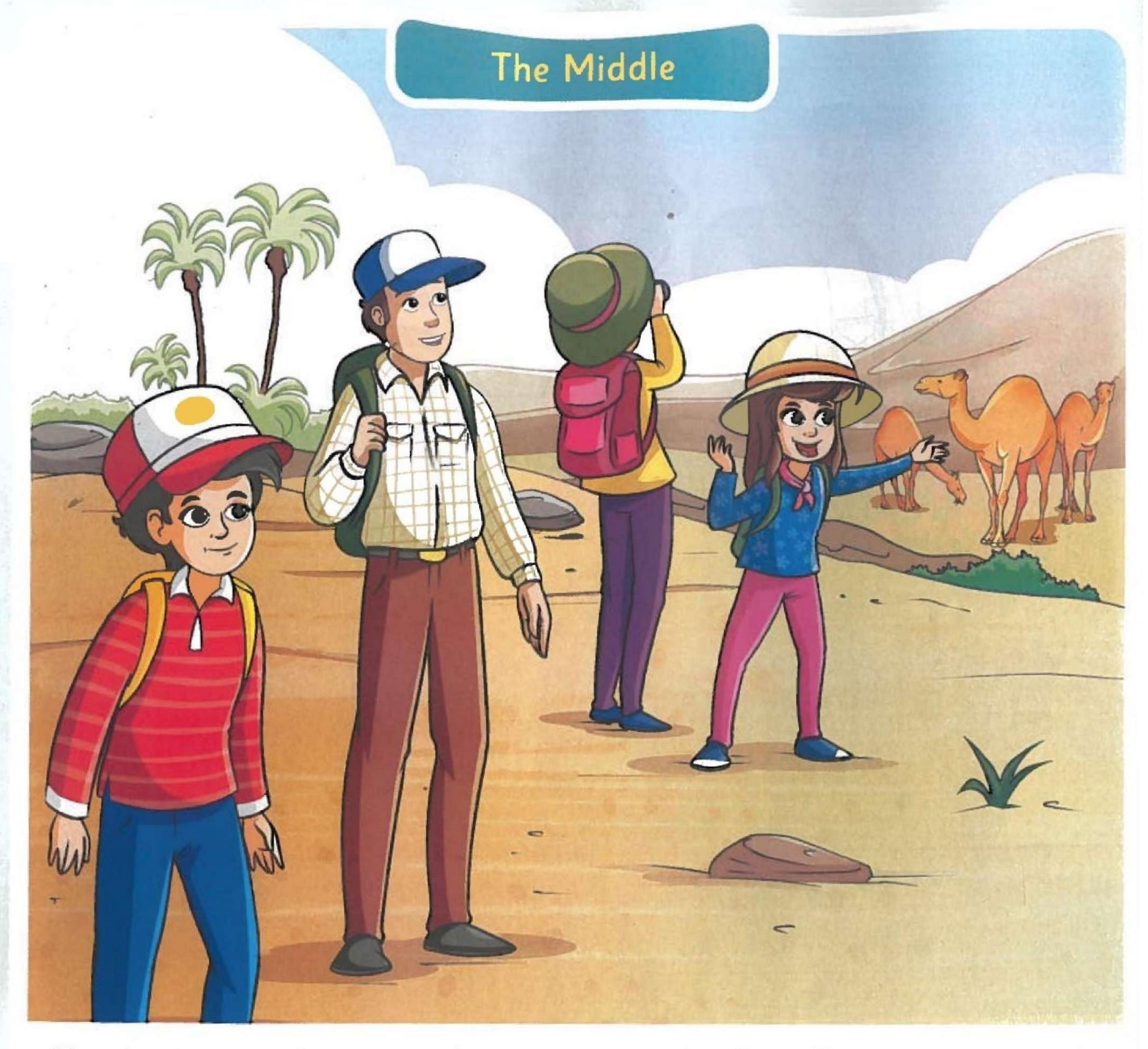
The next morning everyone is happy. They are ready to walk the nature trail. They are wearing hats, scarves, and sunglasses. They have snacks and water in their backpacks. Mom has some binoculars too. She wants to look at the amazing birds that live here. They are in a beautiful part of Egypt with many types of rare animals.

الجميع سعداء فى الصباح التالى. الجميع جاهز للسير فى المتنزه الطبيعى. يرتدون قبعات، أوشحة ونظارات شمسية. لديهم وجبات خفيفة ومياه فى حقائب الظهر الخاصة بهم. الأم معها منظار (مجهر ذو عينين) أيضًا. تريد أن ترى الطيور التى تعيش هنا. هم الآن فى منطقة جميلة فى مصر تتواجد بها أنواع مختلفة من الحيوانات النادرة.

vocabulary

ready (adj.) مستعد	wear يرتدى	types أنواع

The Middle



It's a lovely warm day, not too hot. It's a perfect day for walking. There are cactus plants and palm trees, and they see sheep and some camels.

Malak is very pleased because she loves animals. "Please walk quietly and carefully everyone," she says. "If we are quiet, we could see a fennec fox, or a dorcas gazelle, or maybe a sand cat."

The family continue along the trail. Ramy sees animals tracks in the sand. Dad takes a photo of a fennec fox. Mom sees many beautiful birds. Everyone is enjoying the trail.

إنه يوم دافئ وجميل، ليس حارًا جدًّا. إنه يوم مثالى للتنزه. توجد نباتات صبار وأشجار نخيل. ويرون الأغنام وبعض الجمال. ملك سعيدة جدًّا؛ لأنها تحب الحيوانات. تقول ملك «رجاء من الجميع أن يسيروا بهدوء وبحرص». «إذا حافظنا على هدوئنا، فمن الممكن أن نرى الفَنَك (ثعلب الصحراء) أو غزال دوركاس (غزال يعيش فى الصحراء) أو ربما قط الرمال (قط يعيش فى الصحراء)». واصلت العائلة السير بطول المتنزه. يرى رامى آثار أقدام حيوانات على الرمال. يلتقط الأب صورة الفَنَك (ثعلب الصحراء). ترى الأم العديد من الطيور الجميلة. الجميع يستمتع بالمتنزه.

vocabulary

quiet (adj.)	هادِئ	sand	رمال	photo	صورة



Then Mom says, "Hey everyone, I have something in my shoe. Can we stop for a minute?"
She sits down. The others drink some water and wait. Ramy looks down at the rocks near the path. He sees some strange shapes inside them.
"Look!" he says. "What are these things in the rocks, Dad?"
"I don't know," says Dad. "They look like bones ..."
"We are very near the place they found the dinosaur skeleton," says Mom. "Maybe they are dinosaur bones!"
Ramy is very excited. "Let's ask Uncle Youssef!" he says. "Dad, can we call him?"
"Yes, of course." says Dad.
Uncle Youssef is very interested in the rocks Ramy found. He tells Dad to take some photographs of them and meet him at Grandma's house for dinner.

تقول الأم: «انظروا جميعًا! لدى شىء ما فى حذائى، هل يمكننا التوقف لدقيقة؟».
تجلس الأم. يشرب الآخرون بعض الماء وينتظرون. ينظر رامى إلى الأسفل عند الصخور بالقرب من الممر. يرى بعض الأشكال الغريبة بداخل الصخور. يقول رامى: «انظروا. ما هذه الأشياء بداخل الصخور يا أبى؟» يقول الأب: «لا أعلم إنها تشبه العظام...» تقول الأم: «نحن بالقرب من المكان الذى وجدوا فيه الهيكل العظمى للديناصور. ربما هى عظام ديناصور». رامى متحمس للغاية. يقول رامى: «لنسأل العم يوسف. هل يمكن أن نتصل به يا أبى؟». يقول الأب: «نعم، بالطبع».
العم يوسف مهتم جدًا بالصخور التى وجدها رامى. يخبر الأب أن يلتقط بعض الصور للصخور وأن يقابله فى منزل الجدة على العشاء.

vocabulary

shapes	أشكال	look like	يشبه / يبدو كأنه	interested in	مهتم بـ

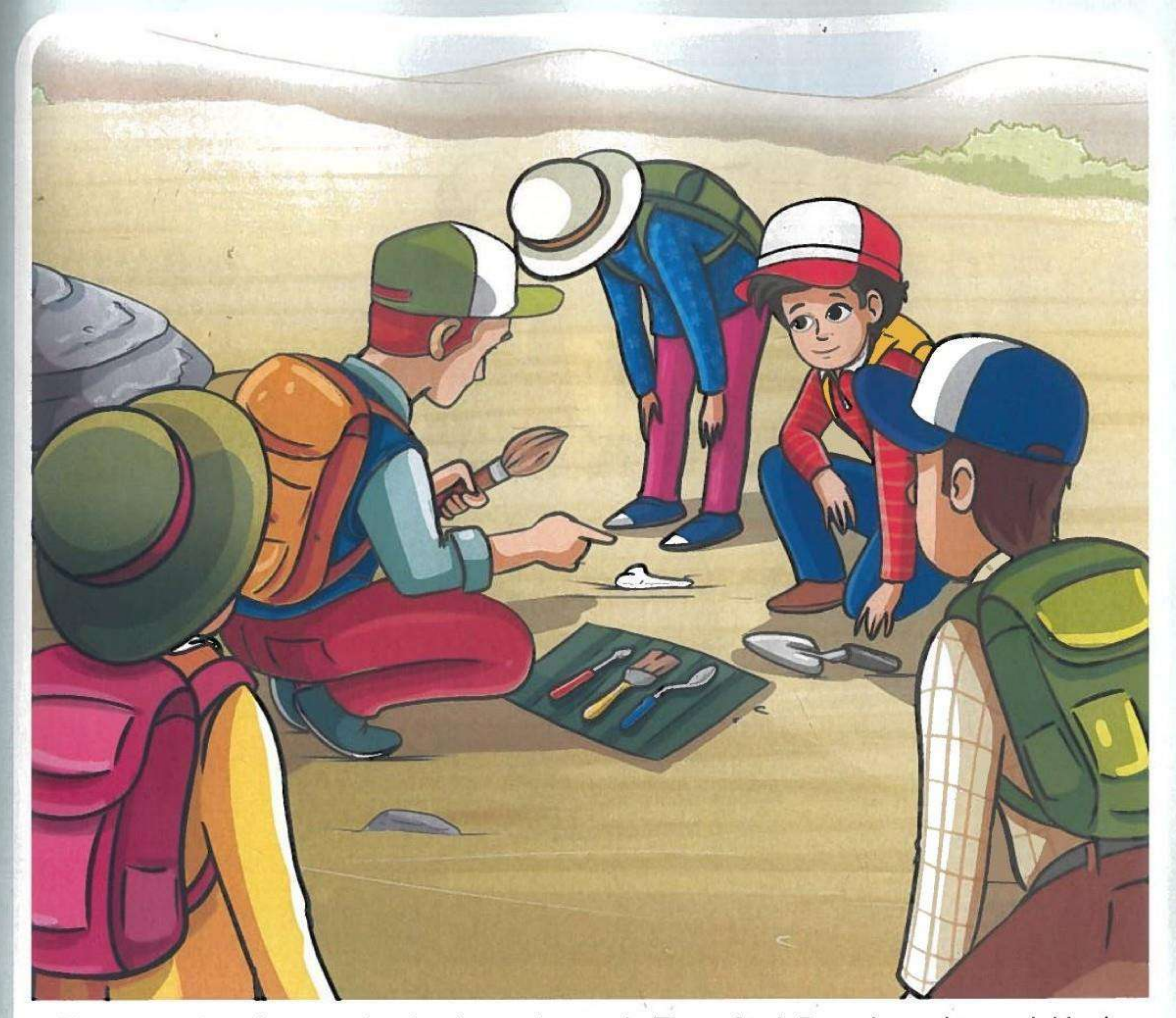


Later that evening Dad shows Uncle Youssef the photos and Ramy shows him the place on the map. Uncle Youssef asks the family to go back there with him the next day.

عرض الأب الصور على العم يوسف لاحقًا فى المساء وعرض رامى له مكان الصخور على الخريطة. يطلب العم يوسف من العائلة أن يعودوا معه فى اليوم التالى إلى المكان.

vocabulary

evening مساء	show يعرض	place مكان



The next day they go back along the trail. They find Ramy's rocks and Uncle Youssef looks at them carefully.
"They are not dinosaur bones in the rocks," says Uncle Youssef. "But they are certainly very old. They are probably from a type of ancient ibex that doesn't exist now."
Ramy is disappointed because the bones are not from a dinosaur. But Uncle Youssef says, "Well done Ramy for finding them! It is important to take time to look at the world around us and watch things - just like an archaeologist! Now, would you all like to come to the dig and see my dinosaur skeleton?"
"Yes please, Uncle Youssef!" say Ramy and Malak.

يعود الجميع إلى المتنزه فى اليوم التالى. يجدوا صخور رامى ويقوم العم يوسف بفحصها بحرص. يقول العم يوسف: «العظام الموجودة فى الصخور ليست عظام ديناصور. لكنها بالتأكيد قديمة جدًّا. من المحتمل أن تكون لحيوان الوعل الأثرى (ماعز جبلى يعيش فى جبال الألب) الذى لم يعد موجودًا الآن». يشعر رامى بالإحباط لأن العظام لا تعود لديناصور. لكن العم يوسف يقول «أحسنت صنعًا يا رامى بإيجادك لها. من المهم النظر من حولنا ومشاهدة الأشياء تمامًا مثلما يفعل عالم الآثار. هل ترغبون جميعًا فى أن تأتوا إلى موقع الحفر وتروا الهيكل العظمى للديناصور؟» يقول رامى وملك: «نعم، من فضلك يا عم يوسف».

vocabulary

the world	العالم	just like	تمامًا مثل	the dig	موقع الحفر



"Here it is," says Uncle Youssef. "What do you think?"
"Wow!" says Ramy. "It's amazing to think it lived millions of years ago."
"And that its bones were under the ground for such a long time." says Malak.
"In fact, we found the skeleton because of climate change." says Uncle Youssef. "Now there is less rain and fewer plants. This means the ground is dry and the wind can blow away the sand. Things that were under the ground come to the surface. That's good for archaeologists but bad for the planet."

يقول العم يوسف: «هذا هو الهيكل، ما رأيكم؟» يقول رامى: «رائع! من المدهش مجرد التفكير أنه عاش منذ ملايين السنين». تقول ملك: «وأن عظامه ظلت تحت الأرض لوقت طويل كهذا».

يقول العم يوسف: «فى الحقيقة لقد وجدنا الهيكل بسبب تغير المناخ، توجد أمطار أقل ونباتات أقل الآن. هذا يعنى أن الأرض جافة ويمكن للرياح أن تعصف الرمال بعيدًا. تظهر الأشياء الموجودة تحت الأرض على السطح. هذا شىء جيد لعلماء الآثار ولكنه شىء سيئ للكوكب».

vocabulary

Wow!	رائع!	because of	بسبب	less rain	مطر أقل
fewer plants	نباتات أقل	good for	جيد لـ	bad for	سيئ لـ

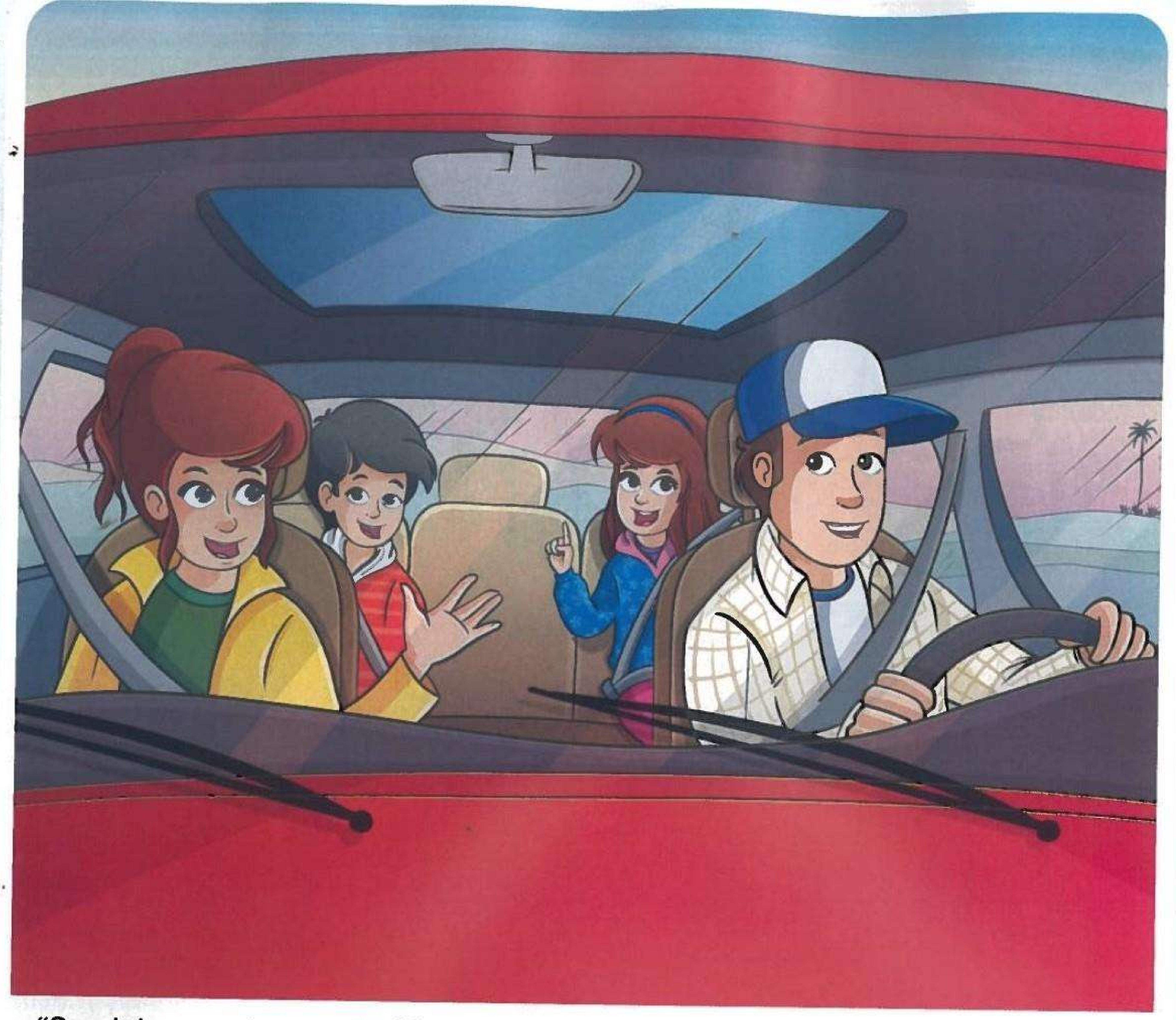


Later everyone is getting ready to go home.
"Thanks for showing us the dinosaur, Uncle Youssef," says Ramy. "It was so interesting. I would love to be an archaeologist. It's such a cool job!"
"It's fascinating work, but it's hard," says Uncle Youssef, "Sometimes we look for years and don't find anything."
"We can help if you're looking for other dinosaurs!" says Malak.
"Thanks for all the delicious food," says Mom. "It was lovely to see you both again."
"Thank you dear. Come back and see us soon." Grandma.

لاحقًا يستعد الجميع للعودة إلى المنزل. يقول رامى: «شكرًا لسماحك لنا برؤية الديناصور يا عم يوسف. كان الأمر ممتع جدًّا. أريد أن أكون عالم آثار. إنها وظيفة رائعة!». يقول العم يوسف: «إنه عمل مذهل ولكنه صعب، أحيانًا نبحث لسنوات ولا نجد أى شىء». تقول ملك: «يمكن أن نساعد إذا كنت تبحث عن ديناصورات أخرى». تقول الأم: «شكرًا على كل الطعام اللذيذ، من الجيد رؤيتكما مجددًا». تقول الجدة : «شكرًا يا عزيزتى. تعالوا مجددًا لترونا قريبًا».

vocabulary

get ready	يستعد	would love to	أحب أن	come back	يعود



"So, did you enjoy our trip?" asks Mom in the car.

"Yes, I thought it was fantastic," says Ramy. "Me too!" says Malak.

"What do you think you learned from it?" asks Dad.

Ramy says, "I learned it's important to look around us carefully and notice things in our environment."

"Yes, that is how you can discover interesting things." adds Malak.

"You're right, kids" says Dad. "Well done!"

تسأل الأم فى السيارة: «هل استمتعتم بالرحلة؟». يقول رامى: «نعم، لقد كانت رائعة». تقول ملك: «وأنا أيضًا». يقول الأب: «ماذا تعتقدون أنكم تعلمتموه من هذه الرحلة؟». يقول رامى: «تعلمت أنه من المهم أن ننظر حولنا بحرص وأن نلاحظ الأشياء فى البيئة من حولنا». تضيف ملك: «صحيح. هذا ما يجعلنا نكتشف أشياء مثيرة للاهتمام». يقول الأب: «أنتم على حق يا أولاد. أحسنتم».

vocabulary

trip	رحلة	Me too	وأنا أيضًا	add	يضيف

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The next morning everyone is ....
a) sad b) busy c) happy d) sleepy

2 They are wearing ...., scarves, and sunglasses.
a) hats b) T-shirts c) dresses d) shorts

3 They have snacks and water in their ....
a) handbags b) pockets c) suitcases d) backpacks

4 Mom has some .... to look at the amazing birds.
a) binoculars b) glasses c) telescope d) microscope

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Our body has many .... to help us stand up.
a) arms b) legs c) bones d) hands

2 Your bones make up your ....
a) blood b) skin c) skeleton d) hair

3 You use .... to make things that are far away look bigger and closer.
a) glasses b) scissors c) flash d) binoculars

4 A/An .... digs in the ground to look for ancient objects.
a) teacher b) doctor c) archaeologist d) firefighter

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Dad reads a newspaper story about a dinosaur skeleton. He's very excited because Uncle Youssef is working on the archaeological dig. He suggests to the family that they see the skeleton when they visit their Grandma. Grandma and Grandpa are very happy to see them. The family go on a nature trail and see lots of beautiful animals and birds. Ramy sees some bones in the rocks and thinks they are dinosaur bones, but Uncle Youssef says they are probably from an ibex. He invites them to go to his archaeological dig, which they think is a lot of fun.

suggest يقترح

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Dad reads a newspaper story about a dinosaur ....
a) life b) family c) skeleton d) place

2 Uncle Youssef says the bones are probably from a/an ....
a) dinosaur b) ibex c) whale d) bird

B Answer the following questions:

3 Why is dad very excited?

....

4 What does dad suggest?

....

5 Where does Uncle Youssef invite the family to go?

....

4 Read and match to make sentences:

1 Ramy is disappointed because ...	a) scarves, and sunglasses.
2 We found the skeleton because of ...	b) and they see sheep and some camels.
3 They are in a beautiful part of Egypt ...	c) the bones are not from a dinosaur.
4 They are wearing hats, ...	d) with many types of rare animals.
	e) climate change.

5 Read the sentences and correct the mistake:

1 An ibex is a type of sea animal like a gazelle. (..............................)

2 Elephants were very big animals which lived millions of years ago. (..............................)

3 Uncle Youssef is a farmer. (..............................)

4 An archaeological dig is when people work together to find something above the ground. (..............................)

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 nature – There's – beautiful – a – there – trail.

....

2 day – walking – It's – perfect – a – for.

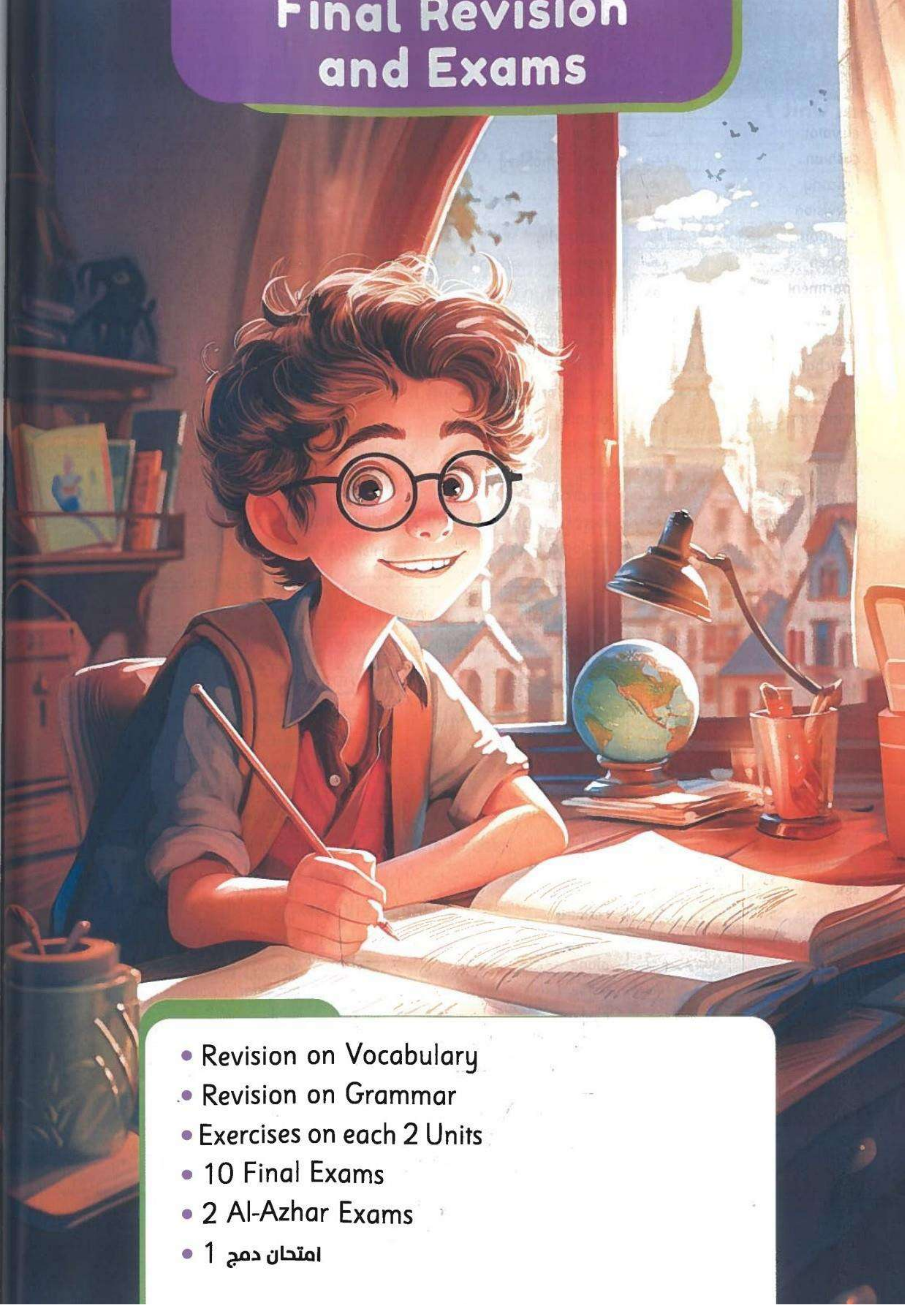
....

3 sees – sand – Ramy – tracks – animals – the – in.

....

4 photo – Dad – fox – a – takes – a fennec – of.

....


Final Revision
and Exams
Revision on Vocabulary
Revision on Grammar
Exercises on each 2 Units
10 Final Exams
2 Al-Azhar Exams
امتحان دمج 1

Units 7 & 8 A) Revision on Vocabulary

Unit 7

elevator	مصعد	poster	ملصق	mud bricks	الطوب الطيني
cushion	وسادة	howler monkey	قرد العواء (قرد أمريكى)	pot	إناء (حلة)
balcony	بلكونة	deep	على عمق / عميق	sleeping area	منطقة للنوم
television	تلفاز	jungle	أدغال	flat	مسطح / مستو
bedroom	غرفة النوم	unfriendly	غير ودود	papyrus	ورق البردى
kitchen	مطبخ	unlucky	غير محظوظ	floor	طابق (دور)
apartment	شقة	unhappy	غير سعيد	spoon	ملعقة
closet	خزانة	scientist	عالم	gate	بوابة
oven	فرن	local villager	قروى محلى	roof	سطح
armchair	كرسى ذو ذراعين	path	ممر	reed mat	حصيرة مصنوعة من القصب
living room	غرفة المعيشة	uncomfortable	غير مريح	furniture	أثاث
bathroom	حمام	unsafe	غير آمن	wooden boxes	صناديق خشبية
gift	هدية	unfair	غير عادل	style	طراز
brilliant	رائع	blog	مدونة	wool	صوف
awesome	مذهل	landscape	منظر طبيعى	online	عبر الإنترنت
the Netherlands	هولندا	topic	موضوع	upside down	رأسًا على عقب
local	محلى	ecological	بيئى	fields	حقول
farmhouse	منزل ريفى	architect	مهندس معمارى	interesting	مثير / شيق

Unit 8

earache	ألم الأذن	unwell	مريض	hospital	مستشفى
toothache	ألم الأسنان	staff	فريق العمل	Southern India	جنوب الهند
cold	إنفلونزا (نزلة برد)	bandage	ضمادة	sick	مريض
cough	كحة	relatives	أقارب	classes	فصول / حصص
sore throat	التهاب الحلق	injection	حقنة	useful	مفيد
backache	ألم بالظهر	patient	مريض	honey	عسل
headache	صداع	crowded	مزدحم	injuries	إصابات
ankle	كاحل	corridor	ممر	illnesses	أمراض
back	ظهر	well	بصحة جيدة	recently	(حديثًا) مؤخرًا
shoulder	كتف	playground	ملعب	cupboard	(دولاب) خزانة
club	نادى	throat	حلق	substance	مادة
problems	مشاكل	country	دولة	medical care	رعاية طبية
practice	تمرين / تدريب	family members	أفراد العائلة	treatment	علاج
cousin	ابن العم أو الخال	alone	بمفرده	wound	جرح
aunt	خالة / عمة	nurse	ممرضة	bacteria	بكتيريا
dentist	طبيب أسنان	illness	مرض	heal	يشفى
coach	مدرب/ كابتن	cut	جرح	a cut knee	جرح بالركبة
honey	عسل	special	خاص / مميز	sunburn	حرق شمسى
stomach	معدة	Bangalore	بنغالور (مدينة فى الهند)	pills	أقراص / حبوب
busy	مشغول	unusual	غير عادى / مختلف	sunscreen	كريم واق من الشمس
helpful	متعاون	cleansing wipes	مناديل للتطهير	ferry	عبارة
scissors	مقص	soap	صابون	scarf	وشاح
insect bite cream	كريم لدغة الحشرات	stomachache	ألم فى المعدة	medical gloves	قفازات طبية
medicine	دواء	arm	ذراع	rubber bands	أربطة مطاطية





1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 We have a big .... with a great view. الدقهلية – إدارة نبروه التعليمية 2024
a) oven b) balcony c) closet d) bed

2 I went to the .... as I had a toothache. الدقهلية – إدارة نبروه التعليمية 2024
a) vet b) dentist c) author d) artist

3 "......................" means something that doesn't feel nice to sit or wear. الدقهلية – إدارة نبروه التعليمية 2024
a) Unlucky b) Uncomfortable c) Unhappy d) Unfair

4 I have a/an .... My head hurts. الدقهلية – إدارة بلقاس التعليمية 2024
a) earache b) cold c) fever d) headache

5 When something uses the sun, it is .... الدقهلية – إدارة بلقاس التعليمية 2024
a) musical b) flat c) mental d) ecological

6 "......................" are very small things that can make you ill. الدقهلية – إدارة طلخا التعليمية 2024
a) Treatment b) Bacteria c) Food d) Wound

7 I put my clothes in the .... الدقهلية – إدارة ميت سلسيل التعليمية 2024
a) oven b) living room c) closet d) kitchen

8 Sally has a/an .... Her ears hurt. الدقهلية – إدارة ميت سلسيل التعليمية 2024
a) backache b) earache c) toothache d) sore throat

9 It's important to have a/an .... diet. الدقهلية – إدارة ميت سلسيل التعليمية 2024
a) unhealthy b) happy c) kind d) balanced

10 You can put .... on your cut knee. القاهرة – إدارة المنزلة التعليمية 2024
a) lemon b) sunscreen c) pills d) bandages

11 We have put a new .... in the kitchen. محافظة بني سويف – إدارة الواسطى 2024
a) bed b) oven c) car d) shower

12 Mud bricks helped to keep the homes .... الدقهلية – إدارة بني عبيد 2024
a) thin b) cool c) useless d) unsafe

13 I .... a cough. القاهرة – إدارة الجمالية التعليمية 2024
a) eat b) have c) walk d) see

14 My town was .... with people. الدقهلية – إدارة ميت غمر 2024
a) interested b) crowded c) annoyed d) bored

15 This .... is very uncomfortable. I can't sit on it. الدقهلية – إدارة شرق المنصورة 2024
a) armchair b) closet c) shower d) oven

16 Ramy takes care of animals, he is a .... الدقهلية – إدارة شرق المنصورة 2024
a) doctor b) dentist c) vet d) nurse

17 I can speak French .... الدقهلية – إدارة السنبلاوين 2024

a) well b) bright c) fit d) bad

18 Ahmed .... his ankle at a basketball practice. الدقهلية – إدارة السنبلاوين 2024

a) swam b) told c) hurt d) came

19 Some types of honey .... bacteria. الدقهلية – إدارة غرب المنصورة 2024

a) heal b) kill c) make d) use

20 She is very .... because she lost her bag. الدقهلية – إدارة غرب المنصورة 2024

a) unsafe b) unhappy c) unfair d) unfriendly

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A)

posters – desk – middle – cushions الدقهلية - إدارة بلقاس التعليمية 2024

I love my bedroom. I share it with my sister. On the right, there is my bed with a desk next to it. In the ....(1)......... of the room, there is an armchair with two ....(2)......... on it and a big closet. On the wall, there are lots of ....(3)......... of animals.

B)

pots – roofs – reed – cover الدقهلية - إدارة السنبلاوين 2024

The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes is very different from today. There were ....(1)......... mats to sit and sleep on. They used papyrus to ....(2)......... the windows and doors. In every home, there were large ....(3)......... and baskets for storing crops and wooden boxes for clothes.

C)

relatives – treats – cakes – medicine الدقهلية - إدارة غرب المنصورة 2024

Omar is from Mansoura. He moved to New York. He works in a special hospital. He ....(1)......... patients. He gives them ....(2)......... . He helps the families to care for their ....(3)......... when they go home. He teaches them how to change bandages and give injections. He loves his job.

D)

sleep – water – spend – diet الغردقة 2024

There are many things we should do to stay healthy. It's important to drink ....(1)......... to keep your body working well. You should ....(2)......... early. Experts think that the best way to stay healthy is to ....(3)......... time with your friends and family. At that time, you focus on being happy.





B) Revision on Grammar

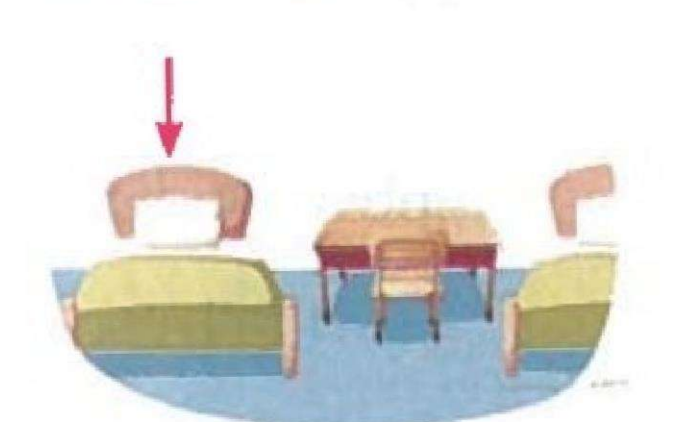
Unit 7

1. Telling where things are الإخبار عن أماكن الأشياء



On the right, ...

على اليمين، ...



On the left, ...

على اليسار، ...



In the middle of the room, ...

فى منتصف الحجرة، ...



On the wall, ...

على الحائط، ...

2. The prefix "un-" البادئة "-un"

friendly →	unfriendly	comfortable →	uncomfortable	lucky →	unlucky
safe →	unsafe	happy →	unhappy	fair →	unfair

3. The past simple tense زمن الماضى البسيط

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات

Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثانى للفعل + ...

e.g. 1. He traveled all over Egypt. 2. He ate Om Ali in Tanta.

Negative Form: صيغة النفى

Subject (الفاعل) + didn't + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + ...

e.g. I didn't know the answer to the teacher's question.

Yes/No Question: السؤال بـ (هل)

Question السؤال A: Did + subject (الفاعل) + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + ...?



Answer الإجابة B: Yes, / B: No, | subject (الفاعل) | did. / didn't.



e.g.
A: Did you travel all over Egypt?
B: Yes, I did.

Wh- Question: السؤال باستخدام أدوات الاستفهام

A: Wh- word (كلمة الاستفهام)	did	subject (الفاعل)	(inf.) الفعل فى المصدر...?

B: Subject + التصريف الثانى للفعل + ...

e.g.
A: When did it rain?
B: It rained yesterday.



We use "have" to talk about illness: نستخدم الفعل «have» للتحدث عن المرض :

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات :

I/ You/ We/ They + have + a/an + illness (اسم المرض).

e.g. I have a cold.

He/ She/ It + has + a/an + illness (اسم المرض).

e.g. Kady has a sore throat.

Negative Form: صيغة النفى :

I/ You/ We/ They	don't	have + a/an + illness (اسم المرض).
He/ She/ It	doesn't	

e.g. 1. We don't have a headache. 2. He doesn't have a backache.

Yes/ No Question: السؤال بـ (هل):

Question السؤال			
	Do	I/ we/ they/ you	have + illness (اسم المرض)?
	Does	he/ she/ it	

Answer الإجابة			
	Yes,	subject (الفاعل)	do / does.
	No,		don't / doesn't.

e.g.
A: Do you have an earache?
B: Yes, I do.

A: Does Noha have a toothache?
B: No, she doesn't.

Practice on Grammar (Units 7 & 8)



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 What .... the matter? القاهرة - إدارة الجمالية التعليمية 2024

a) is b) am c) to d) of

2 We .... football yesterday. بني سويف - إدارة إهناسيا التعليمية 2024

a) played b) plays c) play d) playing

3 Do you .... a headache? أسيوط - إدارة البداري 2024

a) have b) has c) is d) are

4 My brother .... a bear an hour ago.

a) seeing b) saw c) sees d) see

5 .... Adel visit his grandmother last night?

a) Did b) Are c) Does d) Do

6 Samy did not .... last weekend.

a) working b) worked c) work d) works

7 A: Does she have an earache? B: No, she ....

a) does b) doesn't c) do d) don't

8 They .... headaches.

a) has b) to have c) having d) have

9 I .... English for two hours yesterday.

a) studying b) study c) studied d) studies

10 Do the children .... a cold?

a) has b) to have c) having d) have

11 Where .... you go yesterday?

a) do b) does c) did d) doing

12 Nawal didn't .... to go to the trip.

a) wants b) wanted c) wanting d) want

13 It .... heavily when I was in the jungle.

a) rain b) rains c) rained d) raining

14 She didn't .... to school last week.

a) come b) came c) to come d) comes

15 My dad traveled a lot .... he was younger.

a) yesterday b) last c) when d) ago

16 .... the right, there is an armchair with two cushions.

a) In b) On c) At d) Of

17 The jeans are very .... I can't wear them.

a) comfortable b) comfort c) uncomfortable d) comforted

18 There is a TV .... the middle of the living room.

a) in b) on c) at d) of

19 .... the wall, there are lots of posters of animals.

a) In b) On c) At d) Of

20 He .... at home yesterday.

a) is b) were c) was d) are

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 In the past, they .... (uses) papyrus for writing. الدقهلية – إدارة نبروه التعليمية 2024

2 My parents .... (travel) to Mansoura last week. الدقهلية – إدارة نبروه التعليمية 2024

3 What .... (do) you study yesterday? الدقهلية – إدارة ميت سلسيل التعليمية 2024

4 I .... (go) to school yesterday. القاهرة – إدارة الجمالية التعليمية 2024

5 We .... (has) a modern oven last year. القاهرة – إدارة الجمالية التعليمية 2024

6 Did Mona .... (watched) a football match yesterday? القاهرة – إدارة المنزلة التعليمية 2024

7 Adel was .... (lucky). He lost the game yesterday. الدقهلية – إدارة شرق المنصورة 2024

8 Laila .... (doesn't) have a sore throat yesterday. الدقهلية – إدارة السنبلاوين 2024

9 The waiter is .... (friendly). He doesn't smile at the guests. الدقهلية – إدارة شرق المنصورة 2024

10 Last week, my parents .... (buy) a new apartment. الدقهلية – إدارة السنبلاوين 2024

11 Yesterday, my cousin .... (come) to visit us. الدقهلية – إدارة غرب المنصورة 2024

12 It was .... (polite) of him to throw the ball at his teacher. الدقهلية – إدارة غرب المنصورة 2024

13 Last year, we .... (visit) the Cairo Tower. القليوبية – إدارة قها 2024

14 He .... (has) a birthday party last week. بني سويف – إدارة ناصر 2024

15 My sister .... (is) a stomachache. أسيوط – إدارة أسيوط التعليمية 2024

16 He .... (have) an earache now. بني سويف – توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية 2024

17 No, she .... (not have) a sore throat. بني سويف – توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية 2024

18 I .... (visit) her house when I was six. بني سويف – توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية 2024

19 Emad didn't .... (went) to work yesterday. أسيوط – إدارة القوصية 2024

20 She doesn't .... (has) an earache. أسيوط – إدارة أبنوب 2024

Units 9 & 10 A) Revision on Vocabulary

Unit 9

kangaroo	كنغر	climber	متسلق	nickname	لقب
bat	خفاش	teacher	مُدرسة	sea bed	قاع البحر
penguin	بطريق	annoyed	منزعج	cute	لطيف
snail	حلزون	interesting	مثير للاهتمام	habitat	مكان معيشة
wildlife	الحياة البرية	amazing	مدهش	land surface	سطح الأرض
rainforest	الغابة الاستوائية	surprised	متفاجئ	bison	البيسون (الثور الأمريكى)
bamboo	نبات الخيزران	tiring	مُتعِب	dugong	الأطوم
panda	باندا	reader	قارئ	sea cow	بقرة البحر
lion	أسد	footballer	لاعب كرة القدم	email	رسالة إلكترونية - (إيميل)
dolphin	دلفين	traveler	مسافر	grasslands	أراضٍ عشبية
parrot	ببغاء	annoying	مزعج	percent	نسبة مئوية
shell	صَدفة	interested	مهتم	eagles	نسور
ocean	محيط	amazed	مندهش	polar	قطبى
pouch	جراب	surprising	مدهش / مفاجئ	travelers	مسافرون
breeze	نسيم	tired	تعبان	fable	قصة خرافية (أسطورة)
ungrateful	جاحد (غير شكور)	branch of a tree	غصن شجرة	useless	عديم الفائدة
meeting point	نقطة التقاء	exhausted	مرهق	unusual	عادى
trunk of a tree	جذع شجرة	dictionary	قاموس	nuts	فول سودانى
shade	ظل	shelter	ملجأ / مأوى	Australia	أستراليا
friendly	ودود	Africa	إفريقيا	China	الصين

Unit 10

bank	بنك	Alexandria Library	مكتبة الإسكندرية	stange-looking	غريب المنظر
monument	أثر	button	زر	jerboa	الجربوع
shopping mall	مركز للتسوق	villager	قروى	station	محطة
librarian	أمين المكتبة	branches	فروع	Germany	ألمانيا
loudly	بصوت عالٍ	funny-looking	مضحك المنظر	mint tea	شاى بالنعناع
directions	اتجاهات	rudely	بطريقة وقحة / بقسوة	cuisine	مأكولات
instructions	تعليمات	land	أرض (اليابسة)	factory	مصنع
elevator	مصعد (أسانسير)	ibis	طائر أبو منجل	library	مكتبة
Children's Library	مكتبة الأطفال	creature	مخلوق	square	ميدان
cell phone	هاتف محمول	foolish	أحمق	stores	متاجر (محلات)
trash can	سلة القمامة	sack	شوال	tourist	سائح
environment	البيئة	crowds	الجماهير	traditional	تقليدى
post office	مكتب البريد	stranger	غريب	roof garden	حديقة السطح
road	طريق	truth	الحقيقة	tourist attractions	أماكن جذب سياحى
Archaeological Center	المركز الأثرى	market traders	تجار السوق	relaxing	مريح
boat trip	جولة بالقارب	open	مفتوح	British Museum	المتحف البريطانى
waterpark	ملاهى مائية	theater	مسرح	International Park	الحديقة الدولية
fascinating	ساحر / جذاب	Buckingham Palace	قصر باكينجهام	treasures	كنوز
River Thames	نهر التايمز	show	يعرض	perfect	رائع
ache	ألم	lost	تائه / مفقود	originally	فى الأصل
enormous	ضخم	bite	قضمة / عضة	ingredients	مكونات
history	تاريخ	coin	عملة معدنية	beans	فول



on Vocabulary (Units 9 & 10)



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. .... don't have legs or arms. الدقهلية – إدارة نبروه التعليمية 2024
   a) Pandas b) Lions c) Snails d) Giraffes
2. A .... lives on ice and snow. It's black and white. الدقهلية – إدارة طلخا التعليمية 2024
   a) monkey b) parrot c) kangaroo d) penguin
3. When we do something wrong, we should .... الدقهلية – إدارة ميت سلسيل التعليمية 2024
   a) offer b) apologize c) recognize d) play
4. The .... has no legs. القاهرة – إدارة الجمالية التعليمية 2024
   a) snake b) bird c) panda d) cat
5. Be honest and .... the truth. القاهرة – إدارة الجمالية التعليمية 2024
   a) play b) tell c) drink d) watch
6. Snails have .... on their backs. الدقهلية – إدارة بني عبيد 2024
   a) wings b) leather c) shells d) beaks
7. We can borrow books from the .... الدقهلية – إدارة بني عبيد 2024
   a) bank b) station c) hospital d) library
8. He feels tired. He is .... القاهرة – إدارة المطرية التعليمية 2024
   a) happy b) excited c) cool d) exhausted
9. The .... can sleep upside down. القاهرة – إدارة المنزلة التعليمية 2024
   a) parrot b) kangaroo c) dolphin d) bat
10. He is a .... He works at school. الدقهلية – إدارة ميت غمر 2024
    a) nurse b) teacher c) farmer d) traveler
11. Penguins can swim, but they can't .... الدقهلية – إدارة ميت غمر 2024
    a) walk b) run c) fly d) see
12. .... are colorful birds, and they can talk. الدقهلية – إدارة شرق المنصورة 2024
    a) Bats b) Parrots c) Snails d) Penguins
13. .... are very big cats. الدقهلية – إدارة شرق المنصورة 2024
    a) Pandas b) Lions c) Bats d) Dogs
14. We catch the train at the .... الدقهلية – إدارة السنبلاوين 2024
    a) station b) factory c) library d) post office
15. We buy our ingredients from the .... القاهرة – إدارة المرج 2024
    a) bank b) market c) factory d) museum
16. Go .... ahead onto North Road. الدقهلية – إدارة السنبلاوين 2024
    a) street b) straight c) stay d) stairs

17 New Alamein is a city on the .... الدقهلية - إدارة السنبلاوين 2024

a) desert b) grassland c) snow d) beach

18 You are .... when you help and respect old people. الدقهلية - إدارة تمى الأمديد 2024

a) polite b) immoral c) impossible d) impolite

19 They'd love to eat traditional .... at local markets of the city.

a) mint tea b) cuisine c) ingredients d) theaters

20 The pyramids are one of the amazing .... in Egypt. الدقهلية - إدارة تمى الأمديد 2024

a) foods b) monuments c) festivals d) homes

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A)

fruits – grass – friendly – cow

الدقهلية - إدارة ميت سلسيل التعليمية 2024

The dugong is an unusual and interesting animal. The dugong has a lovely ....(1)......... face. It's very cute. The dugong's nickname is the sea ....(2).......... The dugong spends many hours eating ....(3).............. from the sea bed every day. The dugong can live up to 70 years.

B)

cuisine – roof – cool – museums

الدقهلية - إدارة المنزلة التعليمية 2024

Sarah is German. She is visiting Alexandria. She thinks it's really ....(1)......... here. She thinks there are some good ....(2)........., but she hasn't been to any yet. She loves just sitting in the ....(3)......... garden of the hotel, drinking sweet Egyptian mint tea and chatting to other people. It's very relaxing.

C)

free – waterpark – classes – market

الدقهلية - إدارة ميت غمر 2024

In my town, there is a big zoo next to the school. We can go there after ....(1)......... . It is really hot in our town, so there is a ....(2)......... that is always open. There is a wonderful ....(3)......... that sells all kinds of delicious food. There is a big park with lots of trees, so we can go for family picnics.

D)

nuts – trunk – shelter – breeze

القليوبية - إدارة القناطر التعليمية 2024

Once, there was a very old tree in a hot, dry land. It had lived for many years. Its ....(1)......... was very wide and it had many green branches. It gave ....(2)......... and rest to hundreds of travelers as they traveled across the county. It gave shade and cold ....(3)......... to travelers. People used it as a meeting point.





Unit 9

can / can't

Expressing ability and inability in the present: التعبير عن القدرة وعدم القدرة فى المضارع:

Form

Subject الفاعل + can/cannot (can't) + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ... .

e.g. 1. I can run fast. 2. Penguins can't fly.

Question

To make questions, we change the order of the words (to start with Can).
لتكوين الأسئلة، نقوم بتغيير ترتيب الكلمات وتكون البداية بـ «Can».

A: Can + subject (الفاعل) + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ... ?

B: Yes,	subject (الفاعل)	can.
B: No,		can't.

e.g. A: Can you speak English?
B: Yes, we can.

A: Can she draw pictures?
B: No, she can't.

could / couldn't

Expressing ability and inability in the past: التعبير عن القدرة وعدم القدرة فى زمن الماضى:

Form

Subject (الفاعل) + could/could not (couldn't) + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ... .

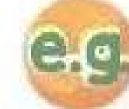
e.g. 1. Hana could play the piano when she was young.
2. I couldn't read when I was one.

Question

To make questions, we change the order of the words to start with (Could):
لتكوين الأسئلة، نقوم بتغيير ترتيب الكلمات وتكون البداية بـ «Could».

A: Could + subject (الفاعل) + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ... ?

B: Yes,	subject (الفاعل)	could.
B: No,		couldn't.



e.g. A: Could you swim when you were four?
B: Yes, I could.

A: Could she speak when she was six months old?
B: No, she couldn't.



1. Imperatives صيغة الأمر

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات :

Use the "infinitive" without "to": نستخدم الفعل فى المصدر من غير "to":

Infinitive (مصدر الفعل) ... .

e.g. Stand up!

Negative Form: صيغة النفى :

Use "Don't + infinitive" without "to": نستخدم "Don't + infinitive" بدون "to":

Don't + infinitive (مصدر الفعل) ... .

e.g. Don't be late!

2. Asking for and giving directions

السؤال والإجابة عن الاتجاهات

When we ask for directions, we say:
عندما نسأل عن الاتجاهات، نقول:

- Excuse me, how do I get to + place (المكان)?
- Where is the + place (المكان), please?
- Is there + a/an place (المكان) + near here?

We use the imperative to give instructions:
نستخدم الأمر لإعطاء التعليمات:

e.g. Go straight. / Cross the road. / Turn right/left.

e.g.
1. Excuse me, how do I get to the station?
2. Where is the post office, please?
3. Is there a library near here?

A: Excuse me, how do I get to the library, please?
B: Go straight, turn right. It's on your left.



on Grammar (Units 9 & 10)



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 She .... drive a car. She takes the bus. أسيوط 2024

a) can b) can't c) couldn't d) are

2 I .... watch the movie last night. My TV was broken.

a) could b) can't c) couldn't d) can

3 .... you hear that storm yesterday?

a) Can b) Can't c) Could d) Haven't

4 I .... speak a little French when I was in Paris.

a) could b) couldn't c) can d) can't

5 A: Can you ride a bike? B: No, I ....

a) do b) can c) can't d) don't

6 Both my sisters .... sing really well. I think they'll be famous!

a) has b) couldn't c) can d) can't

7 .... you swim when you were ten?

a) Can b) Don't c) Could d) Can't

8 Last night, I read the book three times, but I .... understand it.

a) could b) couldn't c) can d) can't

9 He's amazing; he .... speak five languages.

a) could b) couldn't c) can d) can't

10 I watched an .... programme on TV.

a) interested b) interesting c) interest d) interestingly

11 I was really .... to hear from you.

a) surprisingly b) surprise c) surprising d) surprised

12 I'm ....! Let's go out.

a) boring b) bores c) bore d) bored

13 Some of their stories are very ....

a) bored b) boring c) bore d) boringly

14 .... waste your time, Hana.

a) Do b) Don't c) Didn't d) Doesn't

15 Please, ... careful when you cross the street.

a) being b) be c) is d) was

16 Don't .... your homework.

a) to forgetting b) forgot c) forget d) forgetting

17 .... make a mess!

a) Do b) Don't c) Didn't d) Doesn't

18 .... your teeth every day.

a) Brushed b) Brushes c) Brushing d) Brush

19 How do I .... to the station, please?

a) got b) get c) gets d) getting

20 .... there a park near here?

a) Is b) Are c) Do d) Does

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 The door is .... (in) the right. الدقهلية – إدارة نبروه التعليمية 2024

2 Don't .... (closing) the window. الدقهلية – إدارة طلخا التعليمية 2024

3 When she .... (be) two, she could use a tablet. الدقهلية – إدارة نبروه التعليمية 2024

4 When I was one, I .... (can't) use the computer. الدقهلية – إدارة ميت سلسيل التعليمية 2024

5 Manal .... (can) swim when she was five. الدقهلية – إدارة ميت غمر 2024

6 They .... (can) go to the club today because they're sick. الدقهلية – إدارة شرق المنصورة 2024

7 That movie was so .... (bored). الدقهلية – إدارة غرب المنصورة 2024

8 Don't .... (runs) in the library. الدقهلية – إدارة تمى الأمديد 2024

9 Last year! I .... (can) play tennis. القاهرة – إدارة المرج 2024

10 .... (Didn't) sit on the bench. It's wet. القاهرة – روض الفرج 2024

11 The picture is so .... (interested). بني سويف 2024

12 Don't .... (playing) in the street. بني سويف – إدارة الواسطى 2024

13 .... (not run) and walk slowly. بني سويف – إدارة الواسطى 2024

14 I can .... (reading) English well. بني سويف – توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية 2024

15 .... (Opens) the door, please. بني سويف – توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية 2024

16 When they .... (be) five, they couldn't ride a bike. بني سويف – إدارة الواسطى 2024

17 Last year, I couldn't .... (ran) very quickly. الوادي الجديد – إدارة الداخلة 2024

18 .... (not waste) your time. أسيوط – إدارة ديروط 2024

19 Maryam .... (can't) take the bus, so she had to walk. أسيوط – إدارة القوصية 2024

20 Always .... (was) honest and tell the truth. أسيوط – إدارة البداري 2024

Units 11 & 12 — A) Revision on Vocabulary

Unit 11

ticket	تذكرة	special	مميز	Al-Azhar Park	حديقة الأزهر
hotel	فندق	Amman Citadel	قلعة عمان	beach	شاطئ
passport	جواز سفر	Archaeological Museum	المتحف الأثرى	a bit low	مُحبط / حزين
trip	رحلة	Dead Sea	البحر الميت	bench	مقعد
business	عمل	tour	جولة	leather	جلد
Singapore	سنغافورة	tour guide	مرشد سياحى	dangerous	خطير
view	منظر	art	فن	famous	مشهور
suitcase	حقيبة سفر	crafts	مصنوعات (مشغولات)	creative	مبدع
tourist	سائح	Roman Amphitheater	المدرج الرومانى	vacation	إجازة
swimming pool	حمام سباحة	Abu Jaber Museum	متحف أبو جابر	job	وظيفة
husband	زوج	Jordanian	أردنى	picnic	نزهة خلوية
flight	رحلة جوية	handicrafts	مشغولات يدوية	show	عرض
floor	دور/ طابق	mud	طين	author	مؤلف
airport	مطار	culture	ثقافة	enormous	ضخم
sights	معالم المدينة	rug	سجادة صغيرة	expensive	غالى
market stalls	أكشاك السوق	France	فرنسا	active	نشيط
Morocco	المغرب	beach buggies	عربات الشاطئ	cultural	ثقافى
Paris	باريس	metal	معدن	diary	مفكرة
sand dunes	كثبان رملية	turtles	سلاحف بحرية	Marrakech	مراكش
paintings	لوحات	smells	روائح	Eiffel Tower	برج إيفل

Unit 12 (Story)

dinosaur	ديناصور	village	قرية	snacks	وجبات خفيفة
bones	عظام	desert	صحراء	backpacks	حقائب ظهر
skeleton	هيكل عظمى	nature trail	متنزه طبيعى (ممر مخصص للمشى)	cactus plants	نباتات الصبار
tracks	آثار أقدام	feteer	فطير	palm trees	أشجار النخيل
binoculars	منظار (مجهر ذو عينين)	mint tea	شاى بالنعناع	camels	جمال
ibex	حيوان الوعل (ماعز جبلى يعيش فى جبال الألب)	hats	قبعات	sheep	أغنام
archaeologist	عالم آثار	scarves	أوشحة	fennec fox	الفَنَك (ثعلب الصحراء)
archaeological dig	حفر أثرى	sunglasses	نظارات شمسية	dorcas gazelle	غزال دوركاس (غزال يعيش فى الصحراء)
yard	حديقة منزل	suddenly	فجأة	part	جزء
sand cat	قط الرمال (قط يعيش فى الصحراء)	inside	بالداخل	warm	دافئ
rocks	صخور	scary	مخيف	map	خريطة
adventure	مغامرة	pleased	مسرور	rain	مطر
prepare	يعد / يجهز	quietly	بهدوء	wind	رياح
area	منطقة	carefully	بحرص	planet	كوكب
photographs	صور	continue	يستمر	ancient	قديم / أثرى
certainly	بالتأكيد	path	ممر	exist	يتواجد
probably	من المحتمل	nature	الطبيعة	disappointed	محبط
type	نوع	surface	سطح	dry	جاف
notice	يلاحظ	rare	نادر	discover	يكتشف
fascinating	مذهل	newspaper	جريدة	climate change	تغير مناخى

Practice on Vocabulary (Units 11 & 12)



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Animals' feet leave .... on the ground where they walk. الدقهلية - إدارة بلقاس التعليمية 2024
a) trucks b) tricks c) tracks d) boxes

2 There is so much .... in the Dead Sea that makes you float. القاهرة - إدارة المنزلة التعليمية 2024
a) sugar b) salt c) flour d) fish

3 Hanan keeps a/an .... to write down things that happen each day. الدقهلية - إدارة المنزلة التعليمية 2024
a) book b) email c) diary d) ticket

4 I can't .... to go back there tomorrow! الدقهلية - إدارة بنى عبيد 2024
a) spend b) wait c) race d) look

5 Dad needs to pack his .... الدقهلية - إدارة شرق المنصورة 2024
a) ticket b) theme park c) passport d) suitcase

6 You need a .... to travel to different countries. الدقهلية - إدارة السنبلاوين 2024
a) message b) letter c) diary d) passport

7 Our body has many .... to help us stand up. الدقهلية - إدارة شرق المنصورة 2024
a) eyes b) ears c) fingers d) bones

8 Egypt is a big ....
a) town b) village c) country d) city

9 That phone is very ...., I want to buy a cheaper one. بنى سويف 2024
a) active b) expensive c) careful d) boring

10 Last week we .... to Cairo. بنى سويف 2024
a) swam b) read c) traveled d) cooked

11 I take .... with my phone. بنى سويف - إدارة الواسطى 2024
a) keys b) photos c) meals d) trips

12 A lot of .... visit Egypt from all over the world. أسيوط - إدارة أبنوب 2024
a) towns b) tourists c) squares d) factories

13 When you travel abroad, you usually need a .... أسيوط - إدارة أبنوب 2024
a) passport b) diary c) ticket d) book

14 The .... help tourists know more information about Egypt. القاهرة - إدارة السلام 2024
a) doctors b) tour guides c) teachers d) dentists

15 We have dinner at the .... القاهرة - إدارة السلام 2024
a) bank b) hospital c) museum d) restaurant

16 I visited some .... places with my family. It's really cool.
a) awful b) boring c) wonderful d) bad

17 .... and passports are things we take on vacation.
a) Cameras b) Cities c) Beaches d) Museums

18 Ali swims and runs. He's very ....
a) poisonous b) expensive c) active d) enormous

19 Today, Dad .... an email from his sister.
a) relaxed b) traveled c) wandered d) received

20 It is great to go to the .... and swim when it is hot.
a) beach b) station c) bank d) office

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A)

to – vacation – beach – possible

Hani was feeling sad. It was summer and school was over. He wanted to go on ....(1)......... . His cousin Sherif was away at the ....(2)......... . Hani wanted to be there, too. That year it was not ....(3)......... to travel with Sherif's family. Hani's father had to stay in Cairo because he had a new job.

B)

restaurant – market – Museum – Citadel

Yesterday, we enjoyed a tour of Cairo. We visited the Egyptian ....(1)......... . We visited Giza Zoo and watched a lot of animals. We explored Salah El-Din ....(2)......... . We had lunch in a local ....(3)......... . We came back home in the evening.

C)

colored – restaurant – snorkeling – unsafe

I had a perfect vacation with my friends on the Red Sea. In the morning, we went to the beach to go ....(1)......... . We swam with the turtles and brightly ....(2)......... fish. In the evening, we went to a traditional ....(3)......... where you can see the chef making the local dishes.

D)

high – park – relax – pool

Mona is on a business trip in Singapore. She's got a lovely hotel room on the fourth floor. The view is beautiful and she can see the beach. There's a huge swimming ....(1)......... on the roof of the hotel. Singapore is a wonderful city. There are lots of ....(2)......... buildings. There are many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and ....(3)......... .



B) Revision on Grammar



Prepositions of Time (on / at / in)

حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت (on / at / in)

on	days of the week	special days	specific dates	the weekend



1. I go swimming on Mondays.
2. I give my mother a present on Mother's Day.
3. My birthday is on June 1st.
4. We go shopping on the weekend.

at	times	at night	lunchtime



1. Our flight lands at 8 pm.
2. I go to bed at night.
3. We play basketball at lunchtime.

in	months	seasons	years	times of day



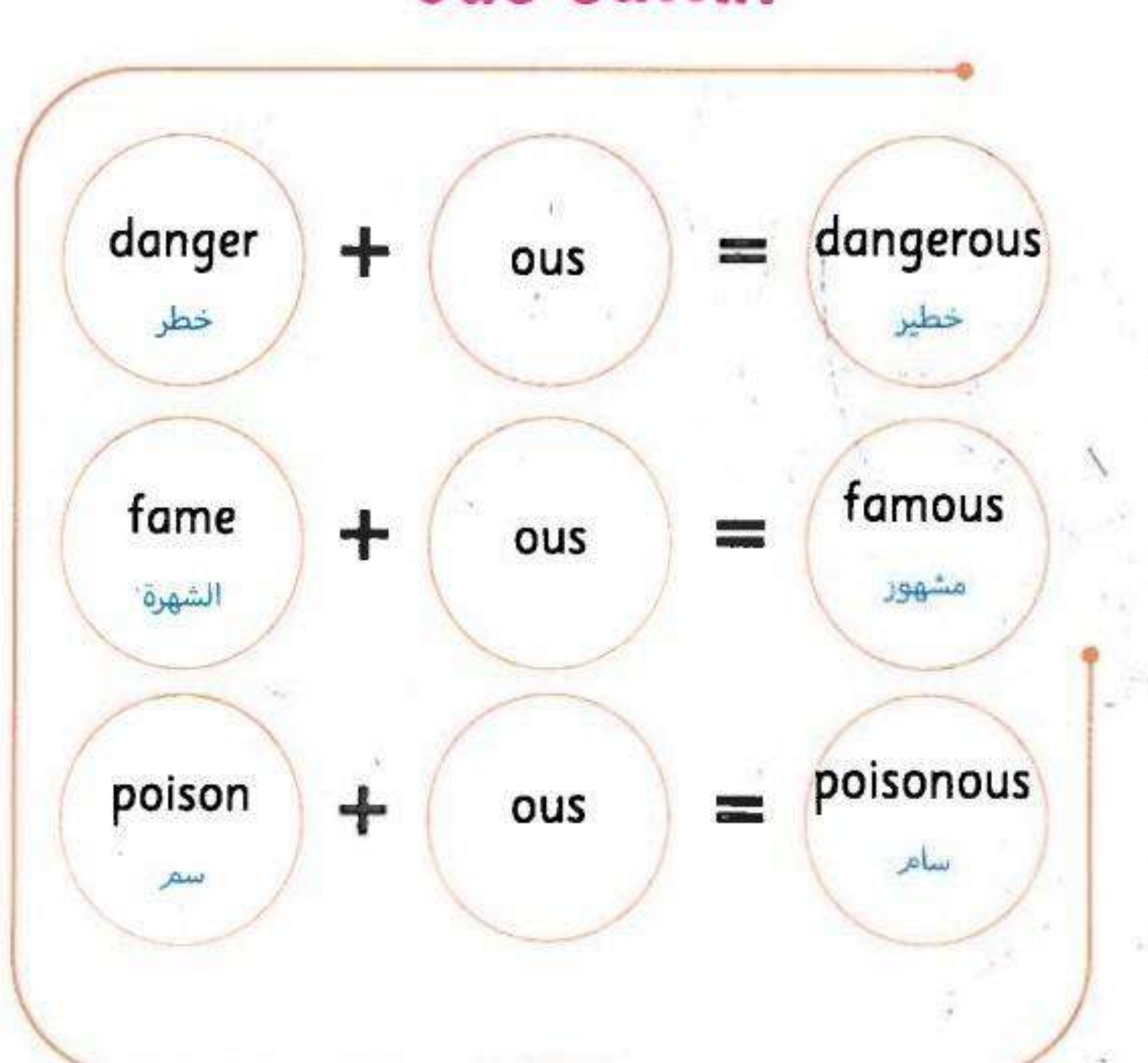
1. We visit our cousins in June.
2. We went on vacation in the summer.
3. I was born in 2010.
4. They arrived in the morning.

Some adjectives have common suffixes:

بعض الصفات لها لواحق مشتركة:



- ous suffix



- ive suffix

create (يخلق) + ive = creative (مبدع)

act (يمثل) + ive = active (نشيط)

expense (مصروف) + ive = expensive (غالى الثمن)



on Grammar Unit 11



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 I go to the club .... Friday.

a) in b) on c) at d) with

2 Class starts .... 7:00 am today.

a) at b) in c) on d) for

3 They go swimming .... Mondays, Wednesdays, and Fridays.

a) at b) in c) of d) on

4 There are no classes .... summer.

a) in b) on c) at d) with

5 Every year, I go on vacation .... August.

a) at b) in c) on d) for

6 He will be 21 years old .... September 4, 2017.

a) at b) in c) of d) on

7 We like to ski .... winter.

a) at b) in c) of d) on

8 Today the sun sets .... 8:15 pm.

a) at b) in c) of d) on

9 She plants vegetable seeds .... April.

a) at b) in c) of d) on

10 The course begins .... January 7th.

a) at b) in c) of d) on

11 Grandpa was born in Zagazig .... 1970.

a) at b) in c) of d) on

12 Are you doing anything special .... the weekend?

a) off b) in c) of d) on

13 My parents always give me presents .... my birthday.

a) at b) in c) of d) on

14 I love to meet my friends .... lunchtime.

a) at b) in c) of d) on

15 Is your town quiet .... night?

a) at b) in c) of d) on

16 My birthday is .... the 10th of January.

a) at b) in c) of d) on

17 This town is .... for its beautiful buildings.

a) fame b) famed c) famous d) famously

18 Some mushrooms are good to eat, but some are ....

a) poison b) poisonous c) poisoned d) poisonously

19 She was wearing an .... new dress.

a) expensive b) expenses c) expensed d) expensively

20 She's very .... and always has new ideas.

a) act b) create c) creative d) acts

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 Be careful! Snakes are .... (danger). الجيزة – إدارة الدقى 2024

2 We played basketball .... (on) lunchtime. الدقهليه -- إدارة نبروه التعليميه 2024

3 Mohammad Salah is a very .... (fame) footballer. الدقهلية -- إدارة السنبلاوين 2024

4 Our plane lands .... (to) 8 o'clock. الدقهلية – إدارة تمى الأمديد 2024

5 ....(On) the evening, we do our homework. القاهره -- إداره القاهرة الجديدة 2024

6 Sarah goes to the library .... (in) Sunday. القليوبية – إدارة القناطر 2024

7 She gets up .... (on) 7 o'clock in the morning. بنى سويف 2024

8 We go to the club .... (in) Friday. بنى سويف 2024

9 They open the shop .... (on) 9 o'clock. بنى سويف -- إدارة سمسطا 2024

10 We play chess .... (at) Saturday. بنى سويف -- إدارة ببا 2024

11 Don't touch the snake. It is .... (poison). أسيوط -- إدارة البدارى 2024

12 My birthday party is .... (at) May 21st. أسيوط -- إدارة أبنوب 2024

13 The first lesson starts .... (on) eight o'clock. القاهرة 2024

14 Our school day finishes .... (on) 3 o'clock. القاهرة -- إدارة الزاوية 2024

15 We had English lessons .... (in) Sundays. الجيزة -- إدارة الدقى 2024

16 They will visit us .... (in) midday. الجيزة -- إدارة 6 أكتوبر 2024

17 My mother was born .... (on) 1975. الجيزة – توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية 2024

18 We go to school .... (on) the morning. الشرقيه -- إداره كفر صقر 2024

19 I watch television .... (on) 7 o'clock. الشرقيه – إدارة القرين التعليمية 2024

20 Samy swims and runs. He's very .... (act). الشرقية -- إدارة غرب الزقازيق التعليمية 2024

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
move	ينتقل	moved	change	يغير	changed
share	يتشارك	shared	heat	يسخن	heated
use	يستخدم	used	stay	يبقى	stayed
relax	يسترخى (يستريح)	relaxed	hope	يأمل	hoped
store	يخزن	stored	enjoy	يستمتع بـ	enjoyed
cook	يطهو	cooked	heal	يشفى	healed
cover	يغطى	covered	mix	يخلط	mixed
join	يلتحق بـ	joined	treat	يعالج	treated
contain	يحتوى على	contained	repeat	يكرر	repeated
rest	يستريح	rested	check	يفحص	checked
save	ينقذ	saved	remind	يُذكر	reminded
chat	يتحادث	chatted	recognize	يتعرف على	recognized
own	يملك	owned	entertain	يسلى	entertained
serve	يقدم (الطعام)	served	pretend	يتظاهر	pretended
rain	يمطر	rained	apologize	يعتذر	apologized
worry	يقلق	worried	receive	يستقبل	received
pack	يحزم أمتعة	packed	describe	يصف	described
explore	يستكشف	explored	wander	يتجول	wandered
discover	يكتشف	discovered	phone	يتصل	phoned
agree	يوافق	agreed	race	يتسابق	raced

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
see	يرى	saw	find	يجد	found
say	يقول	said	get	يحصل على	got
build	يبنى	built	hurt	يؤذى/ يؤلم	hurt
sleep	ينام	slept	tell	يخبر	told
blow	تهب	blew	think	يعتقد	thought
make	يصنع/ يجعل	made	feel	يشعر	felt
keep	يحافظ على	kept	cut	يقطع/ يجرح	cut
fall	يسقط	fell	know	يعرف	knew
can	يستطيع	could	feed	يطعم	fed
sit	يجلس	sat	hide	يختبئ	hid
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up	let	يدع	let
hear	يسمع	heard	drink	يشرب	drank
give	يعطى	gave	buy	يشترى	bought
begin	يبدأ	began	choose	يختار	chose
forget	ينسى	forgot	spend	يقضى	spent
leave	يغادر	left	come	يأتى	came
understand	يفهم	understood	do	يفعل	did
am / is	يكون (للمفرد)	was	meet	يقابل	met
are	يكون (للجمع)	were	eat	يأكل	ate
take	يأخذ	took	have	يملك	had



Exam 1 محافظة القاهرة - إدارة السلام

30





Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 The hospital is in ....
a) Egypt b) India c) France d) Japan

2 Family usually goes with their .... relative.
a) sad b) angry c) unwell d) well

3 The hospital is often very .... and busy.
a) dirty b) bad c) empty d) crowded

4 The staff at this hospital have .... to teach the family.
a) classes b) games c) toys d) dolls



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 1.5

1 Put the trash in the trash ....
a) packet b) can c) slice d) bar

2 Laila wrote about her trip in her ....
a) wall b) bag c) ticket d) diary

3 The .... will check my teeth.
a) vet b) dentist c) engineer d) mechanic

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 1.5

water – vegetables – exercise – park

My presentation today is about staying healthy. It is really important to eat ......(1)...... and fruit. You should do some ......(2)...... every day. It's very important to drink plenty of ......(3)...... . This keeps your body working well. Another thing you can do is to go to bed early.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 7

My family and I traveled to my grandparents' house to see the new archaeological dig. Grandma and Grandpa were very happy to see us. We went on a nature trial and saw lots of beautiful animals and birds. Dany saw some bones in the rocks, and he thought that they were dinosaur's bones. Aunt Sarah checked the rocks and said that they are probably some bones of old animals. It may be an ibex. It was an awesome adventure.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Grandma and Grandpa were very ....

a) bad b) happy c) tired d) sad

2 They saw a lot of ....

a) trees b) fish c) animals d) rocks

B Answer the following questions:

3 Why did they travel to their grandparents' house? ....

4 What did Dany see in the rocks? ....

5 Who checked the rocks? ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (1)

1 travels – Paris – He – by – plane – to.

....

2 Do – have – an – earache – you?

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4)

1 I get up .... (in) six o'clock.

2 He .... (play) games yesterday.

7 Punctuate the following: (4)

1 what did people use to build their homes

....

2 i have an earache

....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: (7)

"My favorite animal"

What does it look like? – Where does it live?

....

....

....

....

....





Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Last summer, I went with my family to ....
a) Luxor b) Aswan c) Alexandria d) Cairo

2 We went there by ....
a) taxi b) train c) plane d) ship

3 We had .... at a nice restaurant.
a) lunch b) snack c) dinner d) breakfast

4 We visited the Alexandria Library and Qaitbay ....
a) Pyramids b) Zoo c) Museum d) Citadel



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 1.5

1 Mona has a strong .... Her head hurts.
a) stomachache b) headache c) backache d) earache

2 Ancient Egyptians used mud .... to make strong walls.
a) ovens b) bricks c) pots d) doors

3 You can see the most amazing .... at the museum.
a) shopping mall b) squares c) monuments d) banks

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:



clever – does – lazy – library

Ali is my classmate in my school. He is ....(1)....... . He works very hard. He likes to read books in the ....(2)....... . He also likes to help his friends in the class. He always ....(3)....... his homework. The teachers think Ali is a wonderful student.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:



My name is Reda. I'm eleven years old. I want to spend my next weekend in the Orman Garden. It is one of the most important *botanical gardens in Egypt. It is located in Giza. The garden has a lot of beautiful trees and flowers. It has a spring festival every year. The spring festival usually starts in March, and it is an important Egyptian cultural event in spring. The festival usually lasts for a month. It will be a good vacation.

* نباتية



A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The underlined word "starts" means ....

a) finishes b) ends c) begins d) travels

2 Reda will have a .... vacation.

a) bad b) useless c) boring d) good

B Answer the following questions:

3 How old is Reda? ....

4 What does Reda want? ....

5 When does the spring start? ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: 1

1 have – We – bedrooms – three.

....

2 he – throat – Does – have – a sore?

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 4

1 She .... (have) two brothers.

2 This lesson is very .... (interested).

7 Punctuate the following: 4

1 i go to the beach every summer

....

2 I'm from a small town in england

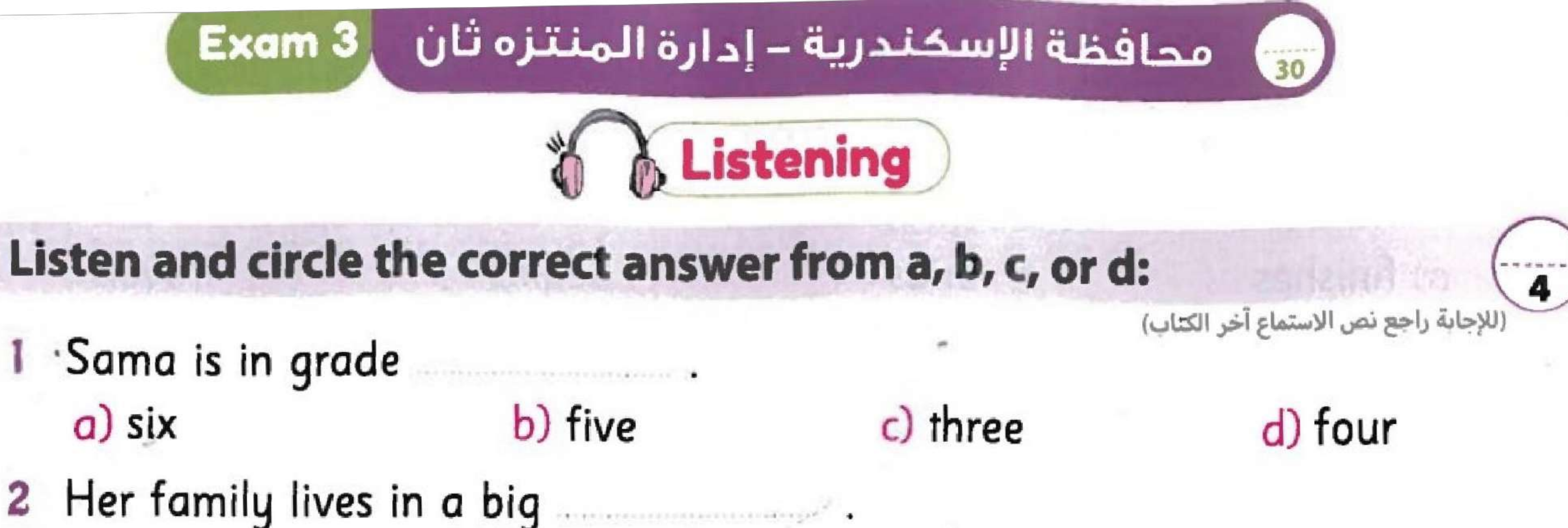
....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: 7

"My favorite room"

bedroom – relax

....



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Sama is in grade ....
a) six b) five c) three d) four

2 Her family lives in a big ....
a) house b) farm c) ship d) apartment

3 They watch television in the ....
a) bedroom b) dining room c) living room d) kitchen

4 She likes to play .... in her bedroom.
a) games b) music c) sports d) exercise

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 1.5

1 She runs on the road. It's really ....
a) unfair b) unsafe c) unlucky d) unhappy

2 I cut my knee last week. My grandma put a .... on it.
a) sunscreen b) pills c) bacteria d) bandage

3 I love .... I play basketball once a week.
a) sports b) toys c) reading d) music

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 1.5

insects – people – windows – sit

The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today. There were reed mats to ....(1)....... and sleep on. They used papyrus to cover the ....(2)....... and doors. This kept the ....(3)....... outside. In every home, there were large pots and baskets for storing crops and wooden boxes for clothes.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 7

My name is Maged. My grandfather could do many things when he was young. He went to the library once a week. It was his favorite place. He was a good reader. He read about 30 books every year. He could also climb very high mountains. He was a great traveler. He traveled to many places around the world. When I grow up, I want to be like my grandfather. I really love him.



A **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1 My grandfather read about .... books every year.

a) thirteen b) thirty c) sixty d) ten

2 My grandfather could climb high ....

a) mountains b) trees c) walls d) desks

B **Answer the following questions:**

3 What was Grandfather favorite place when he was young? ....

4 Where did Grandfather travel? ....

5 What does Maged want to be when he grows up? ....

Writing

5 **Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:** 1

1 factory – works – My – in – uncle – a big.

....

2 city – theme park – a – in – There – is – my.

....

6 **Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:** 4

1 .... (Not run), and walk slowly.

2 Yesterday, we .... (drive) to the city.

7 **Punctuate the following:** 4

1 she has a cold ....

2 where is the post office please? ....

8 **Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:** 7

"Staying healthy"

play sports – sleep

....

....

....

....

....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Ashraf went to the ....

a) bank b) station c) hospital d) park

2 Ashraf fell over in the ....

a) street b) class c) playground d) bedroom

3 Ashraf had a cut on his ....

a) leg b) arm c) nose d) head

4 The nurse put a .... on the cut.

a) sunscreen b) pills c) bandage d) medicine

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 1.5

1 I .... a room with my sister.

a) cook b) make c) share d) live

2 .... are so beautiful birds. They can talk.

a) Bats b) Parrots c) Snails d) Penguins

3 When something is ...., we can't use it.

a) unhappy b) useless c) useful d) exciting

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 1.5

delicious – restaurants – attractions – Palace

London is one of the most exciting cities in the world. You can go on a big red bus and visit amazing tourist ....(1).......... . You will see famous places like Buckingham ....(2).......... . All the walking around will make you hungry! But don't worry, there are plenty of different ....(3).......... to choose from.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 7

There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein. The city is on the beach, so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. This beautiful beach is 14 km long. There is also a large, green lake right in the middle of the city. You can also visit the beautiful International Park. If you want to learn about the fascinating history of the area, then visit the Archaeological Center. There are some amazing treasures there. I can't wait to visit New Alamein.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The beach is 14 .... long.

a) meters b) kilometers c) centimeters d) kilograms

2 The word "fascinating" means ....

a) boring b) ugly c) useless d) beautiful

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where can you go when it's hot? ....

4 What can you find in the Archaeological Center? ....

5 What can we visit in New Alamein? ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (1)

1 have – Do – a – stomachache, – Omar – you?

....

2 had – We – a – dinner – Egyptian – traditional.

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4)

1 I get up .... (at) the morning.

2 When I was six, I could .... (rides) a bike.

7 Punctuate the following: (4)

1 omar has a sore throat

....

2 it's really hot in our town

....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: (7)

"Spending a happy day"

Friday – my friend

....

....

....

....

....

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 . We made a .... at Al-Azhar Park.
a) trip b) journey c) picnic d) shopping

2 We sat under a .... tree.
a) small b) big c) short d) tall

3 It was such a .... day.
a) bad b) boring c) windy d) beautiful

4 We enjoyed all the .... in the park.
a) birds b) animals c) donkeys d) cats



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 1.5

1 The smoke from the fire makes me ....
a) cold b) excited c) heal d) cough

2 A: Does Ali have a ....? B: Yes, he is sick.
a) car b) bike c) cold d) house

3 There is a/an .... in the bathroom.
a) shower b) elevator c) bed d) television

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:



trip – husband – happy – cold

Today, my sister received an email. It is from her ......(1)......, Alaa. He is on a business ......(2)...... traveling around the Arab world. She was very ......(3)...... to know Alaa's news. This week he is in Oman. Next week, he will travel to Qatar to complete his business there and then return to Egypt.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:



My name is Saad, and I've got two brothers, Eid and Maher. Our favorite day of the week is Friday. We all get up at about 10 o'clock and have breakfast. Then we watch TV at about 1 o'clock. We go to the park near our house. We ride our bikes there. After that, we all go home and have lunch. In the evening, I often play football at the club with my friends. I like football, but Eid and Maher like basketball.



A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The underlined word "there" refers to the ....

a) school b) street c) house d) park

2 Eid and Maher's favorite sport is ....

a) football b) handball c) volleyball d) basketball

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where do they have lunch on Friday? ....

4 When does Saad play football? ....

5 Summarize the text in two sentences. ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (1)

1 Gamal – go – school – How – does – to?

....

2 eat – to – It's – important – food – healthy.

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4)

1 The loud music is very .... (annoyed).

2 Don't .... (sleeps) late.

7 Punctuate the following: (4)

1 Ali and i are friends ....

2 thank you ....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: (7)

"Alexandria"

beach – exciting place

....

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1. Last week, my friends and I were in ....
   a) Egypt b) Rome c) China d) New York
2. It was a/an .... visit.
   a) messy b) bad c) exciting d) boring
3. We ate .... pasta.
   a) American b) Egyptian c) French d) Italian
4. We arrived at our .... at night.
   a) hotel b) home c) park d) apartment

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 1.5

1. A meeting point is somewhere where people ....
   a) travel b) meet c) leave d) save
2. He is a foolish boy. He speaks ....
   a) rudely b) politely c) nicely d) quietly
3. I went to the .... to buy new clothes yesterday.
   a) club b) school c) library d) shopping mall

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 1.5

cell phones – meet – lose – library

There are many rules we should follow in the library. We shouldn't eat in the ......(1)...... . We shouldn't use our ......(2)...... in the library. We shouldn't ......(3)...... our books. We shouldn't drink water inside the library.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 7

Alexandria is a big city with lots of amazing restaurants, stores, markets, and museums. My friend Jens is visiting Alexandria from Germany. He loves sitting on the roof garden of his hotel, drinking sweet Egyptian mint tea, and chatting to other people. It's very relaxing.

My friend Hana has lived in Alexandria all her life. She owns a restaurant here. They serve traditional Egyptian food using lovely fresh local ingredients. They have excellent supermarkets, but she prefers to buy her ingredients at the market in the old town.



A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 My friend Jens likes drinking tea on the .... garden of the hotel.
a) beaches b) shop c) museum d) roof

2 My friend Hana buys her ingredients from the ....
a) hotel b) market c) supermarket d) park

B Answer the following questions:

3 Why does Jens like to visit Alexandria? ....

4 Where does Hana live? ....

5 Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence. ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: 1

1 armchair – is – This – uncomfortable – very – blue.

....

2 couldn't – Maha – when – a baby – was – swim – she.

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 4

1 They .... (don't) travel to Aswan last year.

2 This house is upside down. It's an .... (usual) house.

7 Punctuate the following: 4

1 is there a station near here ....

2 Today we enjoy a tour of amman ....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: 7

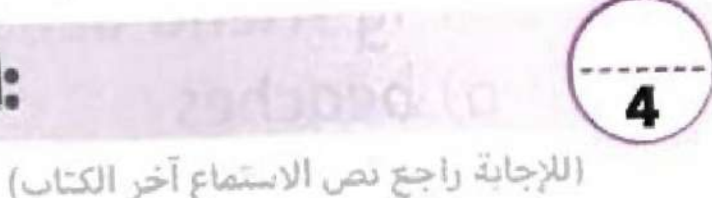
"Honey and its uses"

- Do you like eating honey?
- How can you use honey as a medicine?

....




Listening



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Noha is interested in ....
a) animals b) places c) fruits d) history

2 She likes .... and penguins.
a) bears b) horses c) kangaroos d) lions

3 Kangaroos live in ....
a) Africa b) Australia c) America d) Brazil

4 Penguins eat ....
a) insects b) fruits c) grass d) fish



Reading



2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 .... means related to living things and their environments.
a) Ecological b) Blogging c) Farmhouse d) Exciting

2 The .... helps the players practice well at the club.
a) dentist b) coach c) vet d) farmer

3 We go into the .... to go upstairs.
a) elevator b) oven c) television d) closet



3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

market – local – eat – restaurant

I've lived in Giza all my life. I have a ......(1)...... here, so I have to say that you must visit my restaurant to try some of the ......(2)...... cuisine. we serve traditional Egyptian food using lovely fresh local ingredients. We have excellent supermarkets, but I prefer to buy my ingredients at the ......(3)...... in the old town.



4 Read the text and answer the questions:

I'm Sara. I'm eleven years old. I like playing sports at the club. I play tennis with my friends. On Friday, I went to the club, but I couldn't see my friend Amal because she hurt her knee at tennis practice last night. I worried about my friend. I hope she will feel better tomorrow. Two of my friends had a cold, so the coach told us to be careful. When we have a cough or a sore throat, we should stay home.



A **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1 Sara is .... years old.

a) 10 b) 15 c) 11 d) 9

2 The underlined pronoun "she" refers to ....

a) Amal b) Sara c) the coach d) tennis

B **Answer the following questions:**

3 Who does Sara play tennis with? ....

4 Why couldn't Sara see her friend Amal? ....

5 What did the coach tell them? ....

Writing

5 **Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:** (1)

1 borrow – I – books – to – want – some.

....

2 is – matter – What – the – with – you?

....

6 **Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:** (4)

1 .... (Do) you play yesterday?

2 He is .... (interesting) in planting trees.

7 **Punctuate the following:** (4)

1 thank you for helping me ....

2 hany didn't come to the school yesterday ....

8 **Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:** (7)

"My vacation"

go snorkeling – sand dunes

....

....

....

....



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Huda has lived in .... all her life.
a) Luxor b) Aswan c) Giza d) Alexandria

2 Huda owns a .... in Alexandria.
a) shop b) restaurant c) home d) park

3 They serve traditional .... food.
a) American b) Chinese c) Egyptian d) English

4 Huda prefers to buy her ingredients at the market in the old ....
a) village b) town c) country d) city





2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 1.5

1 Saleh needed his .... to travel to Italy.
a) passport b) tourist c) hotel d) swimming pool

2 We went to the .... to find out how cotton is turned into clothes.
a) museum b) mall c) factory d) library

3 Tourists like to visit the .... places in Egypt.
a) bad b) brilliant c) boring d) messy



3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 1.5

fields – cool – unfair – shade

Trees are important in our life. They give us food and ..... (1) ..... . When we sit under the tree on hot days, we feel ..... (2) ..... . Farmers plant more trees in their ..... (3) ..... . They get a lot of fruit from these trees and sell them at the market.



4 Read the text and answer the questions: 7

Dalia didn't come to school yesterday. She was sick. She had a cough and a sore throat. She was very hot and didn't feel well. Her mom took her to the doctor. The doctor gave her some medicine to feel better. He asked her to drink a lot of water and stay in bed. I went to visit her. She was happy to see me. She is feeling much better today. She can go out and play.



A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The underlined word "sick" means ....

a) happy b) ill c) mad d) sad

2 The doctor gave Dalia some ....

a) food b) water c) milk d) medicine

B Answer the following questions:

3 What did Dalia have? ....

4 What did the doctor ask Dalia to do? ....

5 How is Dalia feeling today? ....



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:



1 helped – Sally – her mom – the – in – kitchen.

....

2 we – museum – get to – do – How – the?

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:



1 Last year, I .... (can't) ride a bike.

2 .... (Doesn't) eat in the library.

7 Punctuate the following:



1 That s a great idea, dad ....

2 did you know that honey isn't only a food ....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"Panda"

food	bamboo
color	black and white

....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

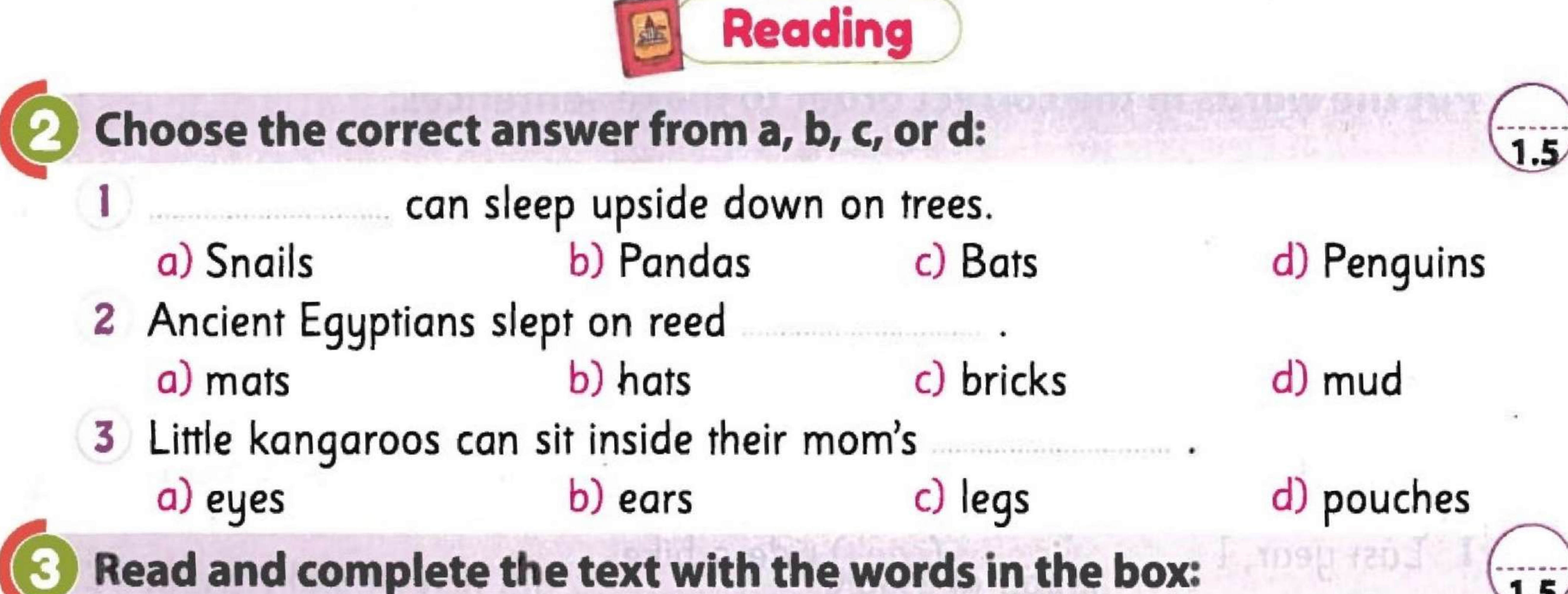
(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Rahma is in primary ....
a) three b) four c) six d) five

2 Rahma has a big .... in her new apartment.
a) bathroom b) bedroom c) living room d) kitchen

3 There are posters of .... in Rahma's bedroom.
a) animals b) birds c) flowers d) shapes

4 There's a big .... to study on.
a) bed b) closet c) cushion d) desk



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 1.5

1 .... can sleep upside down on trees.
a) Snails b) Pandas c) Bats d) Penguins

2 Ancient Egyptians slept on reed ....
a) mats b) hats c) bricks d) mud

3 Little kangaroos can sit inside their mom's ....
a) eyes b) ears c) legs d) pouches

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 1.5

fun – vacation – restaurant – beach

Alexandria is a big city near the sea. I like spending my ....(1).... there. My favorite place is the ....(2).... . I can swim and dive under the water. I can spend a relaxed day shopping and wandering through the markets. It's great to go there and have ....(3).... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 7

Dear diary

I had such a cool day today. I went on the river. We saw some sights from the boat, like the Louver, a beautiful museum with fantastic paintings, and the Eiffel Tower. The Eiffel Tower is really tall and made of metal. I tried to speak French, but I couldn't. But the French people were kind and when I spoke English, they understood me. At the end of the day, we went to a French restaurant and had a wonderful meal. It was a special day.

Reem

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Reem had a cool day in ....

a) France b) England c) Alexandria d) Cairo

2 French people could understand Reem when she spoke ....

a) Arabic b) Italian c) English d) France

B Answer the following questions:

3 What famous sights did Reem see? ....

4 How were the French people? ....

5 What did Reem do at the end of the day? ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: 1

1 Look! – going – a photo – I'm – take – to.

....

2 have – Do – toothache – you – a?

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 4

1 Can I .... (having) some medicine, please?

2 She's crying. She is .... (happy).

7 Punctuate the following: 4

1 what's the matter, Dina ....

2 i have a cold ....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: 7

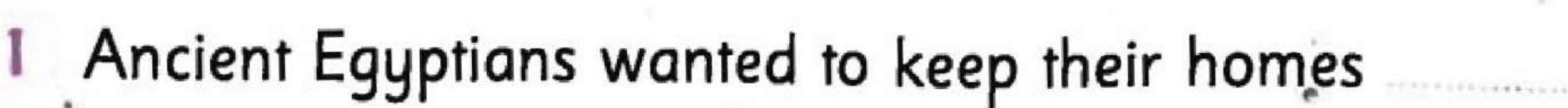
"Homes in Ancient Egypt"

What were they made of? – How did they keep their homes cool?

....



Listening



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes ....
a) snowy b) hot c) cool d) warm

2 The .... bricks helped keep their homes cool.
a) mud b) clay c) pen d) wood

3 Some people painted their homes .... to make them cooler.
a) green b) white c) black d) yellow

4 Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat ....
a) rooms b) floors c) walls d) roofs



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 1.5

1 Beds, chairs, and tables are ....
a) furniture b) fruits c) vegetables d) subjects

2 My father always drinks his tea with .... on the balcony.
a) garlic b) oil c) mint d) salt

3 There are many clever players in our football ....
a) hospital b) team c) week d) house



3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 1.5

treatment – cupboard – special – healing

Did you know that honey isn't only a food? It is also used as a ....(1).... for some injuries and illnesses. The honey that doctors use is a ....(2).... honey only that is safe to use as a treatment. So, if you have a jar of honey in your ....(3)...., you can mix it with milk to make your cough better, but don't put it on your cut knee.



4 Read the text and answer the questions: 7

Last week, we went on a school trip to the zoo. We walked all around the zoo. There were so many animals. We saw two giraffes. They were yellow and black. The giraffes were from Africa. They eat grass and leaves. We saw four bears. They were brown. They could run, jump, and hide near the tree. We saw a tiger. It was black and orange. It was from India. It likes to eat meat. It was a wonderful trip. We had a nice time there.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....

a) a trip to the museum
b) a birthday party
c) a trip to the zoo
d) social media

2 The underlined word "wonderful" means ....

a) nice
b) bad
c) boring
d) ugly

B Answer the following questions:

3 When did they go on a school trip? ....

4 Where are the giraffes from? ....

5 How many bears did they see? ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (1)

1 jump – Kangaroos – two – legs – on – can.

....

2 Soha – When – her – friends – meet – did?

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4)

1 Mona doesn't .... (has) any grapes in her dish.

2 Dad .... (not come) early last night.

7 Punctuate the following: (4)

1 i'm doing a project at school ....

2 what must I do ....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: (7)

"Unusual house"

upside down – farmhouse

....




Exam 1

Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: 6

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1. Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their .... cool.
   (fields – schools – homes)
2. The .... bricks helped to keep them cool.
   (mud – clay – wood)
3. Some people painted their homes .... to make them cooler.
   (green – white – yellow)

Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue: 8

trees – wildlife – Could – yesterday

Ayman : Where did you go (1) .... ?
Ramez : I went to the new (2) .... park.
Ayman : (3) .... you go near the lions?
Ramez : No, we stayed in the car. But we could see them through the (4) ....



Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the questions: 10

Libraries are important places to visit. We go to the library to read and learn a lot of useful information. There are many rules to respect and follow in the library. We shouldn't eat or drink in the library. We should keep it clean and put the books we use on the shelves. We should be quiet, too. We shouldn't eat or use our mobile phones inside the library. If we need any help, we can ask the librarian to help us.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the ....
   (information – library – book – librarian)
2. We should be .... in the library.
   (noisy – amazed – quiet – bored)
3. We .... eat or use our mobile phones inside the library.
   (can – should – must – shouldn't)



B Answer the following questions:

4 Why do we go to the library?

....

5 Who should we ask for help in the library?

....

Vocabulary and Structures



4 Choose the correct answer:



1 I love visiting Alexandria because it .... me of my grandparents.
(chats – visits – reminds – plays)

2 Do you .... a headache?
(have – has – is – are)

3 She .... drive a car. She takes the bus.
(can – can't – couldn't – are)

4 We had lunch at an Italian ....
(museum – store – market – restaurant)

5 We can't travel to a different country without a ....
(camera – passport – phone – computer)

6 If you have a .... , put a bandage on it.
(sore throat – sunburn – cut knee – headache)

7 My father didn't .... to work because he was sick.
(goes – went – go – going)

8 .... there a bank near here?
(Is – Are – Do – Does)

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (8)

1 want – to – What – eat – you – do?

....

2 rested – under – They – tree – the.

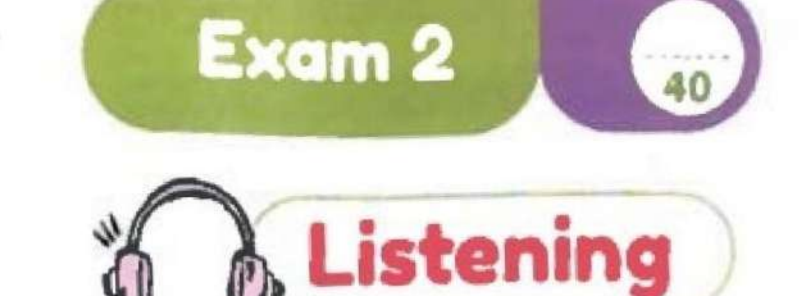
....

3 city – a – is – Alexandria – big.

....

4 on – love – I – sitting – balcony – the.

....



Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

6

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Ramez went to the wildlife park with his ....
(family – friends – teachers)

2 They saw lots of different animals like ....
(cats – dogs – lions)

3 Ramez is doing a project on the .... at school.
(bats – parrots – kangaroos)

Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

8

like – was – welcome – long

Fareeda : Hi! Dina, (1) .... to my new apartment!
Dina : Thanks! Do you (2) .... living here?
Fareeda : I love it! It's a great apartment!
Dina : How (3) .... did you live in your old apartment?
Fareeda : Twelve years, since I (4) .... born.



Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the questions:



It's Tuesday, and Baher is at home. He can't go to school because he has to stay in bed. He has a cough and a sore throat, so he can't talk. The doctor says he mustn't run or play. He must have a rest and drink a lot of water with lemon. All his family members are worried about him. They hope he will get better soon.

A Choose the correct answer:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....
(Nader – the doctor – Baher – the family)

2 Today is ....
(Tuesday – Monday – Saturday – Sunday)

3 Baher has a ....
(cold – cough – headache – toothache)

B Answer the following questions:

4 Why can't Baher talk?

....

5 What must Baher drink?

....

Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer:

1 Last year, he .... run very quickly.
(can – could – can't)

2 My dad went to the .... to get some money.
(bank – library – school)

3 I go swimming .... Mondays.
(on – in – at)

4 There is a .... park in my town.
(same – theme – boat)

5 I .... an email from my aunt last week.
(received – packed – wrote)

6 Don't .... loudly, please.
(talking – talk – talks)

7 A .... is a little wind.
(storm – trunk – breeze)

8 He .... at home yesterday.
(is – were – was)

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

8

1 we – Can – inside – go?

....

2 from – They – flew – Cairo.

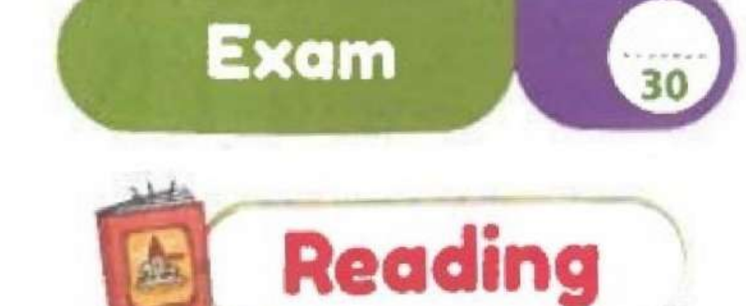
....

3 rained – It – yesterday.

....

4 the – What – matter – is?





Reading

1 Read and choose the correct answer to complete the text: (8)

balcony – oven – bedrooms – TV – car

My new apartment is very big. There are three ......(1)...... to sleep in. The ......(2)...... in the kitchen is more modern. There is a ......(3)...... in the living room. The ......(4)...... is fantastic with a great view.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (6)

1 There are two .... on the bed.
a) lamps b) cushions c) chairs d) tables

2 I like to live in a big ....
a) hole b) wall c) apartment d) kitchen

3 When something is ...., it's nice to sit on.
a) comfortable b) hard c) difficult d) uncomfortable

4 She buys her things at the ....
a) school b) market c) zoo d) museum

3 Read the text and answer the questions: (6)

Honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years. It was first used to treat wounds by Egyptian doctors around 5,000 years ago. Honey is used as a treatment for some injuries. Some types of honey contain things that can help kill bacteria. The honey that doctors use is a special kind of honey that is safe to use as a treatment. If you have honey in your cupboard, you can mix it with milk to make your cough better.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....
a) Egyptian papyrus b) tea c) honey d) howler monkeys

2 Honey has been used by doctors for thousands of .... ago.
a) days b) weeks c) months d) years

3 Some types of honey can kill ....
a) cats b) bacteria c) mice d) lions

4 You can mix honey with milk to make your .... better.
a) cough b) life c) family d) time





Writing

4 Choose the correct form of the following sentences from a, b, or c:



1 yesterday – a bad – Adel – day – had.

a) had a bad Adel day yesterday.

b) a bad day yesterday had Adel.

c) Adel had a bad day yesterday.

2 your – Does – hurt – stomach?

a) Does your stomach hurt?

b) your stomach Does hurt?

c) hurt stomach your Does?

5 Choose the correct order of the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c, or d:



A) - There's even a beach.
- There's a lot to see and do here.
- Alexandria is an exciting place.
- It's a big city with stores.

B) - It's a big city with stores.
- There's even a beach.
- There's a lot to see and do here.
- Alexandria is an exciting city.

C) - Alexandria is an exciting city.
- There's a lot to see and do here.
- It's a big city with stores.
- There's even a beach.

D) - There's even a beach.
- It's a big city with stores.
- There's a lot to see and do here.
- Alexandria is an exciting city.

UNIT 7

Practice on Lesson 1

Fareeda's parents had a new job. They had to move to a new apartment. It is very big. They have three bedrooms now. There are two bathrooms and a fantastic balcony. Fareeda's favorite room is the living room. She also likes the bedroom. She relaxes and studies in it.

Practice on Lesson 3

Salma is doing research about Ancient Egyptian homes. In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the Nile. They used its water for drinking, cooking, and washing. They also used mud from the Nile to make bricks for their houses. The mud bricks made very strong walls.

Test Yourself on Unit 7

Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes cool. The mud bricks helped do this. Some people also painted their homes white to make them cooler. Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat roofs, which were the coolest part of the house. Families often cooked, ate, relaxed, and slept there on hot nights.

UNIT 8

Practice on Lesson 1

Five people didn't come to the club last night. My friend Amr has an earache from swimming. My friend Lama has a toothache. She went to the dentist. My friend Tarek hurt his ankle at football practice last night. I have a sore throat. I can't talk.

Practice on Lessons 4 & 5

Mazen has a presentation at school today. The presentation is about being healthy. He thinks it's really important to have a balanced diet to be healthy. He also thinks that playing sports, getting enough sleep, and drinking water are important too.

Test Yourself on Unit 8

Mai didn't go to school today. She felt very sick. The nurse asked her if she had a stomachache. But she didn't have a stomachache. The nurse asked her if she had a sore throat. She said she had a sore throat. Mai drank honey and lemon.

Al-Azhar Corner

Nahla was very ill yesterday. She went to the hospital. The nurse asked Nahla what the matter was. Nahla said that she fell over in the playground. She had a cut on her arm. The nurse cleaned the cut and put a bandage on it. Nahla became fine and thanked the nurse.

UNIT 9

Practice on Lesson 1

Snails have a shell. They don't have legs or arms. Kangaroos live in Australia. They jump on two legs. When they are little, they can sit inside their mom's pouch. Bats fly at night. They sleep upside down in trees. Lions live in Africa. It's a very big cat. It's very strong.

Practice on Lesson 3

Last winter, Waleed decided to travel west in his boat wearing his vest. He was looking for a volcano. He met some whales and they turned over his boat. He had to sit on his violin to stay afloat. He ate watermelon to stay healthy and he came to shore.

Test Yourself on Unit 9

I'm Hana. I'm Egyptian. I like animals. My favorite animal is the lion. It's a very strong animal. I like unusual animals, too. My favorite unusual animal is the dugong. The dugong is from Egypt. The dugong has got a lovely, friendly face. It's very cute. The dugong's nickname is the sea cow.



UNIT 10

Practice on Lesson 1

Kira and Lena are visiting Alexandria this week. They are from a small town in England. The stores aren't very good there. That's what they love most about Alexandria. There are many stores and shopping malls. They spend a lot of time walking around them. They like the people. They are so friendly.

Practice on Lesson 3

Gabi, the camel, was lost. He met the jerboa. The jerboa has such enormous ears that he can hear the sounds of the market traders. Gabi refused any help. Soon, it was completely dark, and Gabi understood he needed the animal's help. He knew he was foolish and he was sorry.

Test Yourself on Unit 10

In our perfect town, there is a big zoo right next to the school. We can go there every afternoon after classes. We can help to feed the animals. It s really hot in our town, so there is a waterpark t at is always open. It's free to go in!

Al-Azhar Corner

I m ack. I'm visiting Alexandria from England. I th nk it's really cool here. I think there are some good museums, but I haven't been to any yet. I love j st sitting in the roof garden of my hotel.

UNIT 11

Practice on Lesson 3

A i was feeling sad. It was a hot summer, and school was over. He wanted to go on vacation. H s cousin Hossam was away at the beach, and A i wanted to be there too. His family usually went on vacation with Hossam's family, but this year that wasn't possible – Ali's dad had a new job, and they had to stay in Cairo.

Practice on Lessons 4 & 5

I'm Rana. I'm from Egypt. I'm on vacation in France with my family. We saw some famous sights. The Eiffel Tower is really tall and made of metal. I tried to speak French, but I couldn't. But when I spoke English, French people understood me! We went to a French restaurant and had a wonderful meal with potatoes.

Test Yourself on Unit 11

My name is Sami. Last week, I enjoyed a tour of Amman. I visited the famous Amman Citadel before exploring the Roman Amphitheater and the Archaeological Museum. After a late lunch in a local restaurant, I spent the afternoon and evening walking through Amman's many colorful markets. It was a cool tour.

Al-Azhar Corner

I'm Nada. On Monday, we arrived in Amman. The flight landed at 4 o'clock in the afternoon. I was surprised that it was so warm in October. We went to our hotel and checked in. Our room was very comfortable.

UNIT 12 STORY

Practice on Story

The next morning everyone is happy. They are ready to walk the nature trail. They are wearing hats, scarves, and sunglasses. They have snacks and water in their backpacks. Mom has some binoculars too. She wants to look at the amazing birds that live here.

نصوص استماع الامتحانات النهائية

Exam 1

In a hospital in India, there are many patients. A family usually goes with their unwell relative. This means that the hospital is often very crowded and busy. The staff at this hospital have classes to teach the family to look after the sick person.

Exam 2

Last summer, I went with my family to Alexandria. We saw cool boats in the sea and amazing fish swimming in the water. We went there by train. We had lunch at a nice restaurant. We visited Alexandria Library and Qaitbay Citadel.

Exam 3

My name is Sama. I'm in grade five. I live with my family in a big apartment. I love the living room. I love watching television at night with my family in the living room. I share my bedroom with my sister. I like to play music in my bedroom.

Exam 4

Ashraf went to the hospital. The nurse asked Ashraf what the matter was. Ashraf said that he fell over in the playground. He had a cut on his arm. The nurse cleaned the cut and put a bandage on it. Ashraf became fine and thanked the nurse.

Exam 5

We went to Al-Azhar Park yesterday. We were excited. We had a picnic, so when we arrived there, we sat under a big tree on the cool green grass and enjoyed our food. It was such a beautiful day. We enjoyed all the birds in the park.

Exam 6

I traveled last week. My friends and I were in Rome. It was amazing. It was an exciting visit. We ate Italian pasta. We visited a lot of places. We arrived at our hotel at night. We enjoyed our visit.

Exam 7

Noha is interested in animals. She likes kangaroos and penguins. Kangaroos live in Australia. They jump on two legs. When they are little, they can sit inside their mom's pouch. Penguins live on ice and snow. They eat fish.

Exam 8

I'm Huda. I've lived in Alexandria all my life. I own a restaurant here. We serve traditional Egyptian food using lovely, fresh local ingredients. We have excellent supermarkets, but I prefer to buy my ingredients at the market in the old town.

Exam 9

My name is Rahma. I'm in grade five. We have a new apartment. I have a big bedroom in the new apartment. I spend most of my time here in the bedroom. There are posters of birds in my bedroom. There's a big desk to study on.

Exam 10

Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes cool. The mud bricks helped do this. Some people also painted their homes white to make them cooler. Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat roofs, which were the coolest part of the house.

امتحانات الأزهر الشريف

Exam 1

Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes cool. The mud bricks helped do this. Some people also painted their homes white to make them cooler.

Exam 2

Ramez went to the wildlife park with his family. They saw lots of different animals like lions. Ramez wanted to see the bats because he was doing a project on them.

Writing Answers

يحتوى هذا الجزء على إجابات أسئلة الكتابة (براجراف) الخاصة بجميع الوحدات.

UNIT 7 Lessons 4 & 5

Sarah (BLOG HOME ABOUT ME LINKS ARCHIVE)

Monday, 8th July

Unusual homes

There is an unusual house in the Netherlands – it's upside down! This works very well because all the windows are at the top, so you get a lot of light. It is also very ecological because they use air, water, and sun to heat and make energy for the house. That's so cool! 😊

What do you think of it? Do you like it?

Test Yourself on Unit 7

"My new apartment"

I moved to a new apartment last week. It's much bigger than our old apartment. We have three bedrooms now. I share a room with my sister. We have a big balcony with a great view. I can see the whole street.

UNIT 8 Lesson 2

"A special hospital in India"

There's a special hospital in India. People usually travel to the hospital with many relatives, so this means the hospital is always very crowded. At the hospital, the staff teach the family members how to do useful things, like changing a bandage or giving an injection.

UNIT 8 Lesson 3

"The power of honey"

Honey is very useful. It was first used to treat wounds by Egyptian doctors around 5,000 years ago. Honey contains things that can help to kill bacteria. Doctors use a special kind of honey that is safe to use as a treatment.

UNIT 8 Lessons 4 & 5

"What do you do to stay healthy?"

It is important to eat healthy foods like fruit and vegetables and to have a balanced diet. You should do some exercise every day. It's important to get enough sleep. Experts think you should get between eight and nine hours of sleep every night.

Test Yourself on Unit 8

"Health problems and the solutions"

If a person has a sore throat, make them some honey and lemon. If a person has a cut knee, put a bandage on the cut. If a person has a sunburn, they should use sunscreen. If someone has a headache, they should take some pills.

UNIT 9 Lesson 2

"What could you do when you were younger?"

When I was young, I could do a lot of things. I could run fast. I could build sandcastles. I could speak Arabic, but I couldn't speak German. When I was five, I couldn't jump high.

UNIT 9 Lessons 4 & 5

New message

From ali@school.com

To said@school.com

Subject My favorite unusual animal

Hi Said,

How are things? This week we're talking a lot about unusual animals at school. My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the dugong. It's got a lovely, friendly face and it's very cute! Its nickname is the sea cow and it spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day.

Hope to hear from you soon!

Ali

Send

Test Yourself on Unit 9

"A visit to a wildlife park"

I went to the new wildlife park yesterday. My favorite animals were the kangaroos. When they are little, they can sit inside their mom's pouch. Parrots were so beautiful, and they could talk! The penguins were in a special place inside. It was cold, like a fridge.

UNIT 10 Lesson 2

"The Alexandria Library"

Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. There is a lot to see and do here! You can visit the Alexandria Library, too. It's amazing. I think it's the biggest library in the world. There are thousands of books there to read and borrow.

UNIT 10 Lesson 3

"Asking for help"

I was tired yesterday after school. I decided to go home in a new way. I went right, then left, then right, and then left. Finally, I got lost. I asked a stranger for the correct road. He helped me arrive home. I was happy and thanked him.

UNIT 10 Lessons 4 & 5

"My perfect town"

In our perfect town, there is a big zoo next to the school. We can help to feed the animals. It's really hot in our town, so there is a waterpark that is always open. It's free to go in. There is a wonderful market that sells all kinds of delicious food.

Test Yourself on Unit 10

"Alexandria"

Last summer, I went to Alexandria with my family. In the morning, we went to the beach, where I swam and played with the sand. In the afternoon, we went to a nice restaurant and had lunch. We had fish, rice, and salad. We had a nice day.

UNIT 11 Lesson 1

"My trip to Singapore"

I'm on a business trip in Singapore. I've got a lovely hotel room on the fourth floor. The view is beautiful and I can see the beach. There's a huge swimming pool on the roof of the hotel. There are lots of high buildings. Singapore is a wonderful city.

UNIT 11 Lesson 3

"Al-Azhar Park"

Yesterday, I was on vacation. I went to Al-Azhar Park. Then, I saw trees and flowers. My friends made a picnic. We sat on a bench under the trees in the shade. After that, I went back home at 4 o'clock.

UNIT 11 Lessons 4 & 5

"A day when I did something special"

I had a perfect vacation in Dahab, Egypt. On the first day, I went to the beach to go snorkeling. On the second day, I went on safari in beach buggies! On the third day, we walked through the bazaars and bought some traditional handicrafts to take home.

Test Yourself on Unit 11

"My perfect vacation"

We went to Jordan on vacation. We had a traditional Jordanian dinner at the Memphis restaurant. The next day, we visited the famous Amman Citadel, explored the Roman Amphitheater and the Archaeological Museum.

We bought traditional Jordanian handicrafts from the stalls.



رقم الإيداع: 2024/20151
خدمة العملاء: 16766


AL ADWAA
Gem
CONNECT
Dictation Grade 5
كراسة تسميع الكلمات
الصف 5 الابتدائى
الفصل الدراسى الثانى
2024
2025

Unit 7 DICTATION



Lesson 1

كرسى ذو ذراعين	....	مصعد	....
تلفاز	....	خزانة	....
دش	....	وسادة	....
سرير	....	فرن	....
حجرة النوم	....	بلكونة	....
حجرة المعيشة	....	شقة	....
مطبخ	....	حديث	....
حمام	....	جزء	....
تقليدى	....	أقرب	....
رائع	....	مساحة	....
أسهل	....	لطيف / جميل	....
يشارك	....	هدية	....
منزل	....	ينتقل	....
قديم	....	أفضل	....
منظر	....	يعيش	....
يفضل	....	يرى	....
يقول	....	خريطة ذهنية	....

Lesson 2

....	عالم	....	مثالى
....	قردة العواء (قرود أمريكية)	....	سبب
....	قروى محلى	....	مخيف
....	على عمق / عميق	....	الأدغال
....	ممر	....	فجأة
....	مكتب	....	منحوتات
....	بمفرده	....	قمامة
....	بحث	....	ألعاب الفيديو
....	مطر غزير	....	أمريكا الجنوبية
....	حقًّا	....	قريب / مجاور
....	يجلس	....	حقيبة
....	يترك	....	يرتدى
....	يموت	....	يقابل
....	يفوت	....	يبتسم
....	على اليمين	....	يصرخ / يصيح
....	فى المنتصف	....	على اليسار
....	غير ودود	....	على الحائط
....	غير محظوظ	....	غير مريح
....	غير سعيد	....	غير آمن
....	ملصق	....	غير عادل

Lesson 3

قوى	....	الطوب الطينى	....
أكثر برودة	....	بوابة	....
ورق البردى	....	إناء (حلة)	....
أثاث	....	سطح	....
مسطح / مستو	....	منطقة للنوم	....
صناديق خشبية	....	حصيرة مصنوعة من القصب	....
كبير الحجم	....	بالخارج	....
طراز	....	ضفة النهر	....
يسترخى	....	طابق (دور)	....
مصر القديمة	....	طوب	....
يهب	....	الريف	....
طين	....	متميز / خاص	....
حشرات	....	يستخدم	....
يخزن	....	يدهن	....
يحافظ على	....	يسقط	....
ملكة	....	ثلاثة	....
مدرسة	....	جبنة	....
أداة	....	شجرة	....
ملعقة	....	خروف	....
حمام سباحة	....	بذرة	....
خشب	....	ناعم	....
صوف	....	حديقة حيوان	....
دم	....	فيضان	....
يغطى	....	طعام	....
مساء	....	كتاب	....
طباخ	....	جيد	....

Lessons 4 & 5

صفحة المدونة الرئيسية	....	مدونة	....
روابط	....	بيت ريفى	....
سجل	....	بيئى	....
غير عادى	....	منظر طبيعى	....
مهندس معمارى	....	موضوع	....
رأسًا على عقب	....	عبر الإنترنت	....
هواء	....	ضوء	....
يسخن	....	حقول	....
هولندا	....	محلى	....
بالفعل	....	مثير / شيق	....
يلائم	....	يغير	....
يأخذ	....	يكتب	....
يجد	....	يحصل على	....

Unit 8 DICTATION



Lesson 1

صداع	....	ألم الأسنان	....
كاحل	....	إنفلونزا (نزلة برد)	....
ظهر	....	كحة	....
كتف	....	التهاب الحلق	....
نادٍ	....	ألم بالظهر	....
ابن العم أو الخال	....	مشاكل	....
كابتن / مدرب	....	تمرين / تدريب	....
عسل	....	طبيب أسنان	....
خالة / عمة	....	معدة	....
يتمنى	....	يؤلم / يؤذى	....
يشعر	....	يخبر	....
يبقى	....	يعتقد	....
ألم الأذن	....		....

Lesson 2

طاقم العمل	....	غير لائق	....
حقنة	....	مرض	....
بمفرده	....	مريض	....
مزدحم	....	مشغول	....
يرعى	....	ضمادة	....
ممر	....	أفراد العائلة	....
غير محتمل	....	أقارب	....
غير أخلاقى	....	غير مسئول	....
بصحة جيدة	....	غير قانونى	....
ملعب	....	جرح / قطع	....
حلق	....	غير عادى / مختلف	....
دولة	....	متعاون	....
ممرضة	....	ذراع	....
جنوب الهند	....	مستشفى	....
فصول / حصص	....	يقلق	....
مفيد	....	يعالج	....
يقصد	....	يعود	....
يتعلم	....	غير منتظم	....
يُعلم	....	غير مؤدب	....
يصبح	....		



Lesson 3

مادة	....	إصابات	....
ربما / يمكن	....	دولاب (خزانة)	....
رعاية طبية	....	طريقة	....
يقتل	....	حديثًا (مؤخرًا)	....
يحتوى على	....	يشفى	....
يدمر	....	يخلط	....
كِريم واقٍ من الشمس	....	جرح / قطع بالركبة	....
جروح	....	بكتيريا	....
علاج	....	قوة	....
شفاء	....	بالتحديد	....
حريص	....	برطمان	....
يعرف	....	يقطع	....
أقراص / حبوب دواء	....	حرق شمس	....
حياة	....	ضفدع	....
مروحة	....	وشاح	....
ورقة شجر	....	فاكهة	....
أصدقاء	....	معدية	....
سريع	....	قليل	....
بخير	....	آمن	....
تلفاز	....	طبيب بيطرى	....
شاحنة صغيرة	....	خضراوات	....
منظر	....	يغادر	....
جميل	....	يوفر	....



Lessons 4 & 5

أربطة مطاطية	....	مقص	....
دبابيس أمان	....	كِريم لدغة الحشرات	....
صابون	....	مناديل للتطهير	....
خبير	....	قفازات طبية	....
عرض تقديمي	....	مبكرًا	....
تمرين	....	كريم واقٍ من أشعة الشمس	....

Unit 9 DICTATION



Lesson 1

الحياة البرية	....	باندا	....
صدفة	....	خفاش	....
الغابة الاستوائية	....	أسد	....
إفريقيا	....	بطريق	....
قوى	....	دولفين	....
ثلاجة	....	حلزون	....
محيط	....	ببغاء	....
زواحف	....	نبات الخيزران	....
جراب	....	يطعم	....
يختبئ	....	يكرر	....
ودود	....	أستراليا	....
جليد	....	ملون	....
صغير السن	....	الصين	....
مكان المعيشة	....	حديقة الحيوانات البرية	....
مشروع	....	يطير	....
ينام	....	يستطيع	....
يعوم	....	يأكل	....
الكنغر	....		

Lesson 2

غير طيب / غير عطوف	....	جذع شجرة	....
قاموس	....	غصن شجرة	....
عريض	....	فول سودانى	....
راحة	....	مرهق	....
ظل	....	مسافرون	....
على حق	....	قصة خرافية (أسطورة)	....
البشر	....	ملجأ / مأوى	....
يستيقظ	....	تجار	....
نقطة التقاء	....	يستريح	....
مريح	....	عديم الفائدة	....
نسيم هواء	....	جاحد (غير شكور)	....
ذات يوم	....	منطقة	....
عطشان	....	جاف	....
مشهور	....	الريف	....
بارد	....	قيمة	....
أرض	....	قرية	....
ممطر	....	رياح	....
يشكر	....	يعطى	....

Lesson 3

لاعب كرة قدم	....	مدُرسة	....
مُزارع	....	قارئ	....
مسافر	....	متسلق	....
مزعج	....	منزعج	....
مدهش	....	مندهش	....
مثير للاهتمام (شيق)	....	مهتم	....
متعب	....	تعبان	....
مدهش / مفاجئ	....	متفاجئ	....
زهرية	....	طبيب بيطرى	....
سترة	....	بركان	....
آلة الكمان	....	الشتاء	....
مبتل	....	عجلة	....
مياه	....	غرب	....
حوت	....	بطيخ	....

Lessons 4 & 5

عزيزى	....	قاع البحر	....
سطح الأرض	....	بقرة البحر	....
نسور	....	رسالة إلكترونية (إيميل)	....
ذئاب	....	أراضٍ عشبية	....
قطبى	....	دافئ	....
مخطط معلومات بيانى	....	نسبة مئوية	....
ساعات	....	كوكب الأرض	....
معلومات	....	يفحص	....
يدع / يسمح	....	يسمع	....
لقب	....	لطيف	....

Unit 10 DICTATION



Lesson 1

مكتبة	....	بنك	....
محطة	....	مصنع	....
متاجر (محلات)	....	أثر	....
أسواق	....	مركز للتسوق	....
متحف	....	ميدان	....
تقليدى	....	حلو (المذاق)	....
مكونات	....	شاى بالنعناع	....
حديقة السطح	....	مأكولات	....
محلي	....	فى الأصل	....
طازج	....	ثقافة	....
ودود	....	مريح	....
مزيج	....	يتحادث	....
يذُكّر	....	يقدم (الطعام)	....
شاطئ	....	سائح	....
مبانٍ	....	عادات	....
إجازة	....	مطعم	....
ألمانيا	....	يفضل	....
يملك	....	يستعير	....
يشرب	....	يشترى	....

Lesson 2

مكتبة الإسكندرية	....	سلة القمامة	....
مكتبة الأطفال	....	زر	....
أمين المكتبة	....	هاتف محمول	....
مصعد (أسانسير)	....	بهدوء	....
تعليمات	....	اتجاهات	....
فرن	....	مكتب البريد	....
بصوت عالٍ	....	البيئة	....
متأخر	....	يهدر / يضيع	....
طريق	....	يلتقط / يقطف	....
يدفع	....	يجرى	....
يختار	....	يُحضر	....
قمامة	....	يعود	....



Lesson 3

قروى	....	غريب المنظر	....
فروع	....	الجربوع	....
الجماهير	....	طائر أبو منجل	....
بطريقة وقحة / بقسوة	....	مخلوق	....
تجار السوق	....	أحمق	....
شوال / كيس	....	مضحك المنظر	....
يعتذر	....	مظلم	....
يرد	....	يتعرف على	....
وقت	....	يتظاهر	....
دراجة	....	يسلى	....
يكتب	....	يعرض	....
ولد	....	أسفل	....
لعبة	....	يزرع	....
عملة	....	كَتبَ	....
يشير إلى	....	قضمة / عضة	....
ألم	....	يمين	....
ثمانية	....	يستمتع	....
يخبز	....	يصنع	....
ضخم	....	يلعب	....
أصوات	....	يذهب	....
الحقيقة	....	فول	....
يتصرف	....	يصيح	....
تائه / مفقود	....	يبيع	....

Lessons 4 & 5

المركز الأثرى	....	مريح	....
مفتوح	....	مسرح	....
مذهل	....	ممتع	....
جولة بالقارب	....	المتحف البريطانى	....
كوبرى	....	الحديقة الدولية	....
ساحر / جذاب	....	نهر التايمز	....
منطقة	....	تاريخ	....
ظل	....	كنوز	....
يقلق	....	ملاهى مائية	....
لذيذ	....	يمطر	....
خروجات عائلية	....	موقع	....
يشمل / يتضمن	....	فن	....
يراجع / يفحص	....	يشجع	....
أماكن جذب سياحى	....	يصف	....

Unit 11 DICTATION



Lesson 1

رحلة	....	فندق	....
زوج	....	سائح	....
دور / طابق	....	جواز سفر	....
رحلة جوية	....	حمام سباحة	....
سنغافورة	....	عمل	....
اليابان	....	حجرة فندقية	....
منظر	....	سطح	....
مطار	....	مدينة الملاهي	....
يستقبل	....	الهند	....
يحزم أمتعة	....	ينسى	....
يصدق	....	يستريح	....
يصل	....	درجة الحرارة	....
ابنة	....	جزيرة	....
رحلة بالقارب	....	لحسن الحظ	....
تذكرة	....	فانليا	....
حقيبة سفر	....	ابن	....

Lesson 2

....	المدرج الرومانى	....	محلى
....	المتحف الأثرى	....	أردنى
....	متحف أبو جابر	....	رحلة نهارية
....	البحر الميت	....	يهبط (للطائرة)
....	تقليدى	....	يصل
....	وجهة سفر (المكان المقصود)	....	طين
....	أكشاك	....	خفيف (للوجبات)
....	سجادة صغيرة	....	الوطن (البلد الأم)
....	مرشد سياحى	....	مفكرة (مذكرات / يوميات)
....	يستكشف	....	مشغولات يدوية
....	يغادر	....	يكتشف
....	زامبيا	....	يتجول
....	جولة	....	يقضى
....	رحلة الحافلة	....	يتجه
....	جلد (بشرة)	....	يطفو
....	ملون / مبهج	....	العاصمة
....	فرصة	....	متأخر
....	يقود	....	موعد / مقابلة
....	دولة	....	قلعة عمان

Lesson 3

مذهل	....	نزهة	....
ممكن	....	بعيدًا	....
مقعد	....	يبدو	....
عرض	....	وجبة	....
يتصل	....	مجموعة كاملة	....
يوافق	....	فجأة	....
حديقة الأزهر	....	شيء	....
وظيفة	....	يوم الخميس	....
محبط / حزين	....	ثلاثة	....
مع	....	كوكب الأرض	....
أم	....	مؤلف	....
أب	....	حمام	....
هم	....	جنوب	....
آخر	....	عيد ميلاد	....
ملابس	....	ألف	....
جلد	....	فم	....
مشهور	....	خطير	....
سام	....	مبدع	....
غالى الثمن	....	نشيط	....
إجازة	....	ملعب	....

Lessons 4 & 5

معالم سياحية	....	المغرب	....
برج إيفل	....	باريس	....
فرنسا	....	كثبان رملية	....
عربات الشاطئ	....	أكلات محلية	....
متحف اللوفر	....	لوحات	....
معدن	....	خاص	....
سلاحف	....	روائح	....
مزدحم	....	يتسابق	....
رياضة الغطس	....	لغة رسمية	....
ساحة السوق	....	إلى حد ما	....
يتسوق	....	ثقافي	....

Unit 12 DICTATION



الكلمة	الكتابة	الكلمة	الكتابة
منظار (مجهر ذو عينين)	....	ديناصور	....
حيوان الوعل	....	عظام	....
عالم آثار	....	هيكل عظمى	....
حفر أثرى	....	آثار أقدام	....
نظارات شمسية	....	حديقة منزل	....
وجبات خفيفة	....	جريدة	....
حقائب ظهر	....	صحراء	....
نبات الصبار	....	ممر طبيعى	....
أشجار النخيل	....	فطير	....
أغنام	....	شاى بالنعناع	....
جمال	....	قبعات	....
الفنك (ثعلب الصحراء)	....	أوشحة	....
غزال دوركاس	....	قط الرمال	....
مطر	....	صخور	....
رياح	....	خريطة	....

مجموعة من	....	فجأة	....
يجهز	....	مرعب / مخيف	....
جزء	....	مغامرة	....
مثالى	....	منطقة	....
بهدوء	....	دافئ	....
يستمر	....	مسرور	....
غريب	....	بحرص	....
يعود	....	صور	....
قديم / أثرى	....	نوع	....
محبط	....	يتواجد	....
يعصف بعيدًا	....	جاف	....
صعب	....	يلاحظ	....
سطح	....	يبحث عن	....
داخل	....	بيئة	....
من المحتمل	....	ينظر حول	....